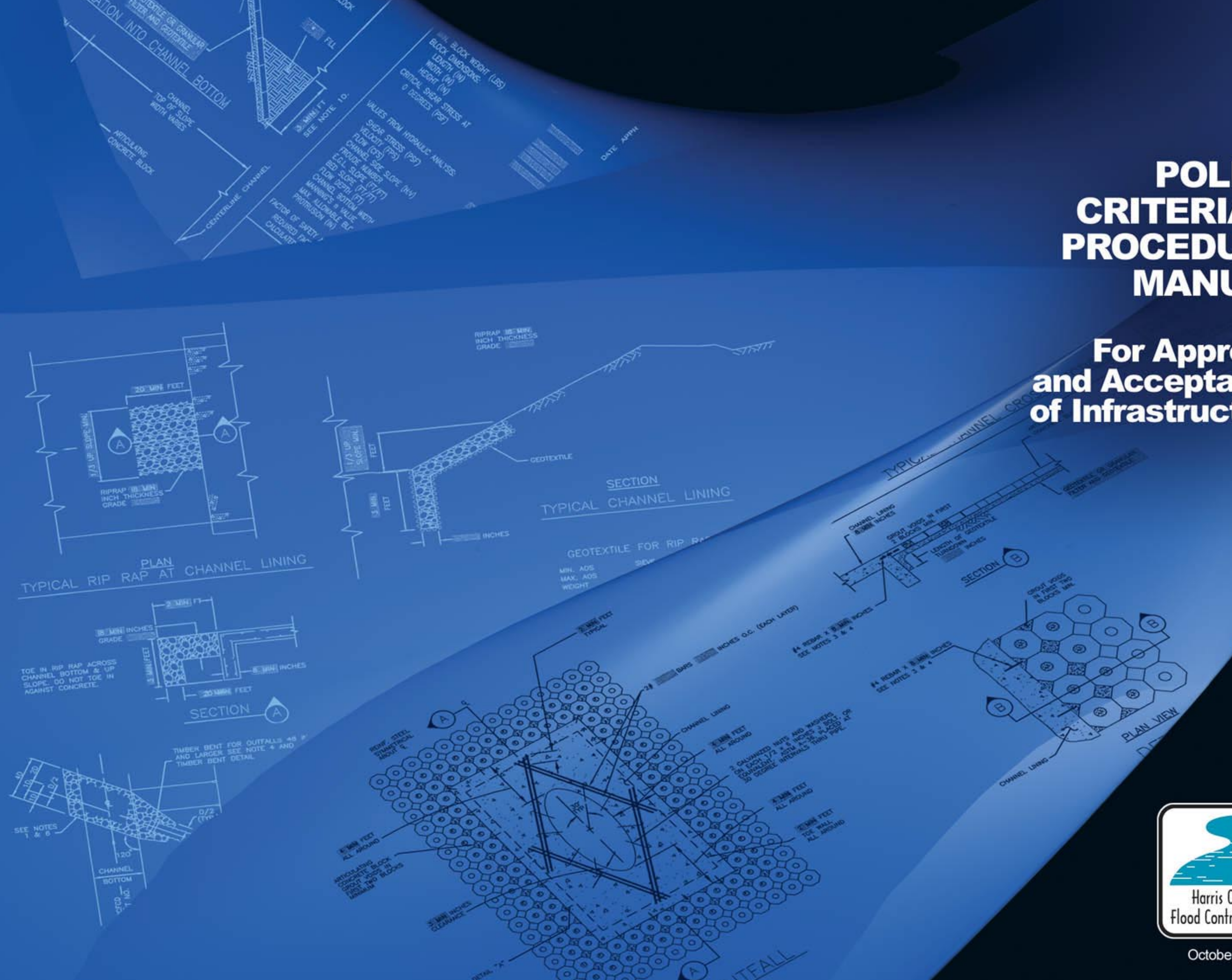
Policy Criteria Procedures

HARRIS COUNTY FLOOD CONTROL DISTRICT



POLICY CRITERIA & PROCEDURE MANUAL

For Approval and Acceptance of Infrastructure

Harris County Flood Control District

October 2004

POLICY, CRITERIA, AND PROCEDURE MANUAL FOR APPROVAL AND ACCEPTANCE OF INFRASTRUCTURE

Harris County
Flood Control District

Submitted by:

Arthur L. Storey, Jr., P.E.
Executive Director, PID

Michael D. Talbott, P.E.
Director

Steve Fitzgerald, P.E.
Chief Engineer

Adopted by Harris County Commissioners Court

Robert Eckels
County Judge

El Franco Lee
Commissioner, Precinct 1

Sylvia R. Garcia
Commissioner, Precinct 2

Steve Radack
Commissioner, Precinct 3

Jerry Eversole
Commissioner, Precinct 4

October 2004

TABLE OF CONTENTS
HARRIS COUNTY FLOOD CONTROL DISTRICT
POLICY, CRITERIA, AND PROCEDURE MANUAL

INTRODUCTION

I.1 PREFACE .... I - 1
- I.1.1 Introduction .... I - 1
- I.1.2 Goal .... I - 1
- I.1.3 Objectives .... I - 1
- I.1.4 Limitations .... I - 1
- I.1.5. Changes .... I - 2

I.2 TRANSITION PLAN .... I - 3
- I.2.1 Introduction .... I - 3
- I.2.2 Adoption .... I - 3
- I.2.3 Policy and Procedures .... I - 3
- I.2.4 Criteria .... I - 3
- I.2.5 Criteria Designations .... I - 3
- I.2.6 Criteria Definitions .... I - 4
- I.2.7 Master Planned Project Definition .... I - 4
- I.2.8 Master Planned Project Exception to Criteria Effective Dates .... I - 4
- I.2.9 Effective Dates for Criteria in Sections 3-19 of the Updated HCFCD Policy, Criteria, and Procedure Manual .... I - 5

I.3 ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS .... I - 6
- I.3.1 Community Review .... I - 6
- I.3.2 Thanks .... I - 6

1. POLICY

1.1 OVERVIEW .... 1 - 1
- 1.1.1 Authority .... 1 - 1
- 1.1.2 Associated Regulations .... 1 - 1
- 1.1.3 HCFCD Enabling Legislation .... 1 - 1
- 1.1.4 Area Covered by Policies, Design Criteria, and Procedures .... 1 - 1
- 1.1.5 Definitions .... 1 - 2

1.2 PURPOSE AND APPLICATION .... 1 - 3
- 1.2.1 Purpose of Policies, Design Criteria, and Procedures .... 1 - 3
- 1.2.2 Application of Policies, Design Criteria, and Procedures .... 1 - 3

1.3 POLICIES ... 1 - 4
1.3.1 Policy I: Primary Function of a HCFCD Facility ... 1 - 4
1.3.2 Policy II: Local Flood Plain Management ... 1 - 4
1.3.3 Policy III: Avoidance of Increasing Flood Risks ... 1 - 4
1.3.4 Policy IV: Harris County Regulations ... 1 - 4
1.3.5 Policy V: Acceptance Into the HCFCD Stormwater Management System ... 1 - 4
1.3.6 Policy VI: HCFCD Support of Multi-Use Functions ... 1 - 5
1.3.7 Policy VII: HCFCD Support of Regional Drainage ... 1 - 5
1.3.8 Policy VIII: Right-of-Way Dedication/Conveyance ... 1 - 5
1.3.9 Policy IX: HCFCD Right to Work on Main Stem ... 1 - 5
1.3.10 Policy X: HCFCD Border Bayous ... 1 - 6

2. REVIEW AND ACCEPTANCE PROCEDURES
2.1 INTRODUCTION ... 2 - 1
2.1.1 Purpose of Review and Coordination ... 2 - 1
2.1.2 Review Authority ... 2 - 1
2.1.3 In This Section ... 2 - 1

2.2 ACCEPTANCE CRITERIA ... 2 - 2
2.2.1 Overview ... 2 - 2
2.2.2 Purpose ... 2 - 2
2.2.3 Acceptance for HCFCD Maintenance ... 2 - 3
2.2.4 Unacceptable HCFCD Facilities ... 2 - 4
2.2.5 Typical Non-Flood Control Features ... 2 - 4
2.2.6 Sponsor for Recreation and Environmental Features ... 2 - 4
2.2.7 Non-Flood Control Features Allowed in a HCFCD Facility ... 2 - 5

2.3 PROJECTS AND DOCUMENTS ... 2 - 7
2.3.1 Projects Reviewed ... 2 - 7
2.3.2 Documents Reviewed ... 2 - 8
2.3.3 Document Submittal Requirements ... 2 - 8
2.3.4 Document Responses ... 2 - 9
2.3.5 Signature Expiration ... 2 - 9

2.4 REVIEW AND COORDINATION PROCESS OVERVIEW ... 2 - 10
2.4.1 Introduction ... 2 - 10
2.4.2 Departments and Responsibilities ... 2 - 10
2.4.3 Process Overview ... 2 - 11
2.4.4 Concurrent Activities ... 2 - 12

2.5 VARIANCES ... 2 - 13
2.5.1 Introduction ... 2 - 13
2.5.2 Submittal ... 2 - 13
2.5.3 HCFCD Response ... 2 - 13

2.6 NONCOMPLIANCE .... 2 - 14
2.6.1 Introduction .... 2 - 14
2.6.2 Possible Consequences .... 2 - 14
2.6.3 Before Construction Begins .... 2 - 14
2.6.4 After Construction Begins .... 2 - 14

2.7 TURF ESTABLISHMENT RESPONSIBILITY .... 2 - 15
2.7.1 Turf Establishment Responsibility .... 2 - 15

2.8 NEW OR MODIFIED HCFCD FACILITIES .... 2 - 16
2.8.1 Introduction .... 2 - 16
2.8.2 Responsible Departments .... 2 - 16
2.8.3 Federal Channels and Detention Basins .... 2 - 16

2.8.4 STAGE 1, INITIATION
NEW OR MODIFIED HCFCD FACILITIES .... 2 - 17
2.8.4.1 Preliminary Assessment .... 2 - 17
2.8.4.2 HCFCD Response .... 2 - 17

2.8.5 STAGE 2, DRAINAGE OR DESIGN REPORT
NEW OR MODIFIED HCFCD FACILITIES .... 2 - 18
2.8.5.1 Overview .... 2 - 18
2.8.5.2 Common Topics .... 2 - 18
2.8.5.3 Report Requirements .... 2 - 18
2.8.5.4 HCFCD Response .... 2 - 18

2.8.6 STAGE 3, CONSTRUCTION DRAWINGS
NEW OR MODIFIED HCFCD FACILITIES .... 2 - 19
2.8.6.1 Overview .... 2 - 19
2.8.6.2 Scale Drawings .... 2 - 19
2.8.6.3 Design Details .... 2 - 19
2.8.6.4 Standard Notes .... 2 - 19
2.8.6.5 Checklists .... 2 - 19
2.8.6.6 Review Procedure .... 2 - 20
2.8.6.7 Changes to Drawings .... 2 - 20

2.8.7 STAGE 4, CONSTRUCTION
NEW OR MODIFIED HCFCD FACILITIES .... 2 - 21
2.8.7.1 Overview .... 2 - 21
2.8.7.2 Pre-Construction .... 2 - 21
2.8.7.3 During Construction .... 2 - 21
2.8.7.4 Post Construction .... 2 - 22

2.8.8 STAGE 5, ACCEPTANCE FOR HCFCD MAINTENANCE
NEW OR MODIFIED HCFCD FACILITIES .... 2 - 23
2.8.8.1 Acceptance for HCFCD Maintenance .... 2 - 23
2.8.8.2 One Year Warranty Responsibilities .... 2 - 24

2.9 NON-FLOOD CONTROL FEATURES .... 2 - 25
2.9.1 Introduction .... 2 - 25
2.9.2 Responsible Departments .... 2 - 25
2.9.3 Water Quality Features .... 2 - 25
2.9.4 Federal Channels and Detention Basins .... 2 - 25

2.9.5 STAGE 1, INITIATION
NON-FLOOD CONTROL FEATURES .... 2 - 26
2.9.5.1 Preliminary Evaluation .... 2 - 26
2.9.5.2 HCFCD Response .... 2 - 26

2.9.6 STAGE 2, DRAINAGE OR DESIGN REPORT
NON-FLOOD CONTROL FEATURES .... 2 - 27
2.9.6.1 Overview .... 2 - 27
2.9.6.2 Common Topics .... 2 - 27
2.9.6.3 Report Requirements .... 2 - 27
2.9.6.4 HCFCD Response .... 2 - 27

2.9.7 STAGE 3, CONSTRUCTION DRAWINGS
NON-FLOOD CONTROL FEATURES .... 2 - 28
2.9.7.1 Overview .... 2 - 28
2.9.7.2 Scale Drawings .... 2 - 28
2.9.7.3 Design Details .... 2 - 28
2.9.7.4 Standard Notes .... 2 - 28
2.9.7.5 Checklists .... 2 - 28
2.9.7.6 Review Procedure .... 2 - 29
2.9.7.7 Changes to Drawings .... 2 - 29

2.9.8 STAGE 4, CONSTRUCTION
NON-FLOOD CONTROL FEATURES .... 2 - 30
2.9.8.1 Overview .... 2 - 30
2.9.8.2 Pre-Construction .... 2 - 30
2.9.8.3 During Construction .... 2 - 31
2.9.8.4 Post Construction .... 2 - 31

2.9.9 STAGE 5, ACKNOWLEDGMENT
NON-FLOOD CONTROL FEATURES .... 2 - 32
2.9.9.1 Overview .... 2 - 32
2.9.9.2 Acknowledging Features Allowed in a HCFCD Facility .... 2 - 32

2.10 CONCURRENT ACTIVITIES .... 2 - 33
2.10.1 Concurrent Activities .... 2 - 33

2.11 RIGHT-OF-WAY .... 2 - 34
2.11.1 HCFCD Right-of-Way Conveyance or Dedication .... 2 - 34
2.11.2 Right-of-Way for Non-Flood Control Features .... 2 - 34
2.11.3 Property Ownership Determination .... 2 - 34
2.11.4 HCFCD Fee Strip .... 2 - 34
2.11.5 HCFCD or Public Easement .... 2 - 34

2.12 PLATS .... 2 - 35
2.12.1 Overview .... 2 - 35
2.12.2 Plats Reviewed .... 2 - 35
2.12.3 Plat Reviews .... 2 - 35
2.12.4 Plat Release Letters .... 2 - 35

2.13 INTERLOCAL AGREEMENTS .... 2 - 36
2.13.1 Overview .... 2 - 36
2.13.2 Coordination .... 2 - 36
2.13.3 Guidelines .... 2 - 36

2.14 FEDERAL PROJECTS .... 2 - 37
2.14.1 Overview .... 2 - 37
2.14.2 Corps of Engineers' Projects .... 2 - 37
2.14.3 Buyouts .... 2 - 37
2.14.4 Projects Reviewed .... 2 - 38
2.14.5 Review Procedure for Corps of Engineers' Projects .... 2 - 39

2.15 REGIONAL FLOOD CONTROL PROJECTS .... 2 - 40
2.15.1 Introduction .... 2 - 40
2.15.2 Adopted Regional Projects .... 2 - 40
2.15.3 Previous Commissioner Court Actions .... 2 - 40
2.15.4 New Development .... 2 - 40
2.15.5 Detention Volume and Impact Fee Calculation .... 2 - 41
2.15.6 Impact Fee Collection Criteria .... 2 - 41
2.15.7 Impact Fee Payment .... 2 - 41
2.15.8 Alternative to Site-Specific Detention .... 2 - 42
2.15.9 Interim Site-Specific Detention .... 2 - 42
2.15.10 One Acre Limit .... 2 - 42
2.15.11 Compliance Summary .... 2 - 43

EXHIBIT 2-1: REVIEW & COORDINATION PROCESS FOR WORK IN A NEW OR EXISTING HCFCD FACILITY

3. HYDROLOGY

3.1 INTRODUCTION .... 3 - 1
3.1.1 Overview .... 3 - 1
3.1.2 When Analysis Is Required .... 3 - 1
3.1.3 Computer Models and Programs .... 3 - 1

3.2 METHODOLOGY .... 3 - 2
3.2.1 Overview .... 3 - 2
3.2.2 Discharge Methodologies .... 3 - 2
3.2.3 Simplified Hydrograph Methodology .... 3 - 2

3.3 SITE RUNOFF CURVES .... 3 - 3
3.3.1 Introduction .... 3 - 3
3.3.2 Applications .... 3 - 3
3.3.3 Limitations .... 3 - 3
3.3.4 Site Runoff Curves .... 3 - 3
3.3.5 Equations for Site Runoff Curves .... 3 - 4

3.4 WATERSHED MODELING METHOD .... 3 - 5
3.4.1 Introduction .... 3 - 5
3.4.2 Applications .... 3 - 5
3.4.3 Watershed Modeling Method for Harris County .... 3 - 5

3.5 IMPERVIOUS COVER .... 3 - 6
3.5.1 Relationship to Development .... 3 - 6
3.5.2 Detention Basins, Lakes, and Channels .... 3 - 6

3.6 SMALL WATERSHED HYDROGRAPH METHOD .... 3 - 7
3.6.1 Introduction .... 3 - 7
3.6.2 Applications .... 3 - 7
3.6.3 Caution .... 3 - 7
3.6.4 Hydrograph Computation Equations .... 3 - 7
3.6.5 Total Volume of Runoff, V .... 3 - 8
3.6.6 Direct Runoff, 1% Probability Event .... 3 - 8
3.6.7 Direct Runoff, 10% Probability Event .... 3 - 9

EXHIBIT 3-1: SITE RUNOFF CURVES FOR 10% EXCEEDENCE PROBABILITY (10-YEAR FREQUENCY) STORM
EXHIBIT 3-2: SITE RUNOFF CURVES FOR 1% EXCEEDENCE PROBABILITY (100-YEAR FREQUENCY) STORM

4. HYDRAULICS

4.1 INTRODUCTION .... 4 - 1
4.1.1 Overview .... 4 - 1
4.1.2 When Analysis Is Required .... 4 - 1

4.2 METHODS .... 4 - 2
4.2.1 Overview .... 4 - 2
4.2.2 Normal Depth .... 4 - 2
4.2.3 Standard Step Method and Computer Programs .... 4 - 2
4.2.4 Detention Basin Inflow/Outflow Design .... 4 - 2
4.2.5 Alternative Methods .... 4 - 2

4.3 MANNING'S EQUATION .... 4 - 3
4.3.1 Background .... 4 - 3
4.3.2 Manning's Equation .... 4 - 3
4.3.3 Subdividing Sections .... 4 - 3
4.3.4 Gradually Varied Flow .... 4 - 3
4.3.5 Manning's "n" Values .... 4 - 4
4.3.6 Adjustment to "n" for Trees in the Channel .... 4 - 4

4.4 VELOCITIES .... 4 - 5
4.4.1 Maximum Velocities .... 4 - 5
4.4.2 Continuity Equation .... 4 - 5

4.5 CROSS SECTIONS .... 4 - 6
4.5.1 Overview .... 4 - 6
4.5.2 Channels .... 4 - 6
4.5.3 Conduits .... 4 - 6
4.5.4 Detention Basins .... 4 - 6

4.6 STARTING WATER SURFACE ELEVATION .... 4 - 7
4.6.1 Design of Channels .... 4 - 7
4.6.2 Design of Conduits .... 4 - 7
4.6.3 Actual Flood Levels .... 4 - 7

5. CHANNELS

5.1 INTRODUCTION .... 5 - 1
5.1.1 Uses .... 5 - 1
5.1.2 Terminology .... 5 - 1
5.1.3 Review and Coordination .... 5 - 1
5.1.4 Analysis and Methodologies .... 5 - 1
5.1.5 In This Section .... 5 - 1

5.2 LOCATION AND ALIGNMENT .... 5 - 2
5.2.1 Overview .... 5 - 2
5.2.2 Considerations .... 5 - 2

5.3 GENERAL DESIGN CRITERIA .... 5 - 3
5.3.1 Design Frequencies .... 5 - 3
5.3.2 Flowline Slope .... 5 - 3
5.3.3 Existing Sections .... 5 - 3
5.3.4 Channel Linings .... 5 - 3
5.3.5 Hydraulic Structures .... 5 - 4
5.3.6 Geotechnical Investigations .... 5 - 4
5.3.7 Environmental Investigations .... 5 - 4
5.3.8 Maintenance Access Plan .... 5 - 4

5.4 TYPICAL CROSS SECTIONS .... 5 - 5
5.4.1 Overview .... 5 - 5
5.4.2 Trapezoidal Section .... 5 - 5
5.4.3 Bottom Configuration – Trapezoidal Grass-Lined .... 5 - 6
5.4.4 Grass-Lined Bench Section .... 5 - 6
5.4.5 Rectangular Concrete-Lined Section .... 5 - 7
5.4.6 Maintenance Access Alternatives .... 5 - 7

5.5 RIGHT-OF-WAY .... 5 - 8
5.5.1 Overview .... 5 - 8
5.5.2 Right-of-Way Widths .... 5 - 8
5.5.3 Minimum Berm Widths .... 5 - 8
5.5.4 New HCFCD Channels .... 5 - 9
5.5.5 Existing HCFCD Channels .... 5 - 9
5.5.6 Adjacent HCFCD Channel and HCFCD Detention Basin .... 5 - 9
5.5.7 Adjacent HCFCD Channel and Private Detention Basin .... 5 - 9
5.5.8 Roads Adjacent to HCFCD Maintained Facility .... 5 - 9
5.5.9 Bridges and Culverts .... 5 - 9
5.5.10 Ultimate Right-of-Way Determination .... 5 - 10

5.6 CONFLUENCES .... 5 - 11
5.6.1 Overview .... 5 - 11
5.6.2 Confluence Design Criteria .... 5 - 11
5.6.3 Angle of Intersection .... 5 - 11
5.6.4 Erosion Protection Criteria .... 5 - 11

5.7 HORIZONTAL TRANSITIONS .... 5 - 12
5.7.1 Overview .... 5 - 12
5.7.2 Criteria .... 5 - 12
5.7.3 Hydraulic Analysis .... 5 - 12
5.7.4 Head Loss Equation .... 5 - 12
5.7.5 Loss Coefficients .... 5 - 13
5.7.6 Computation Considerations .... 5 - 13

5.8 BENDS ..... 5 - 14
5.8.1 Overview ..... 5 - 14
5.8.2 Criteria ..... 5 - 14
5.8.3 Structural Erosion Protection ..... 5 - 14
5.8.4 Hydraulic Analysis ..... 5 - 14
5.8.5 Head Loss Equation ..... 5 - 15
5.8.6 Coefficient of Resistance ..... 5 - 15
5.8.7 Computation Considerations ..... 5 - 15

EXHIBIT 5-1: TYPICAL GRASS-LINED TRAPEZOIDAL CHANNEL SECTION
EXHIBIT 5-2: TYPICAL CONCRETE-LINED TRAPEZOIDAL CHANNEL SECTION
EXHIBIT 5-3: TYPICAL GRASS-LINED BENCHED CHANNEL SECTIONS
EXHIBIT 5-4: TYPICAL RECTANGULAR CONCRETE-LINED CHANNEL SECTION
EXHIBIT 5-5: GRASS-LINED CHANNEL SECTIONS - MAINTENANCE ACCESS ALTERNATIVES
EXHIBIT 5-6: MAINTENANCE BERM BETWEEN HCFCD CHANNEL AND HCFCD DETENTION BASIN
EXHIBIT 5-7: EROSION PROTECTION AT CHANNEL CONFLUENCES
EXHIBIT 5-8: EROSION PROTECTION AT CHANNEL BEND

6. STORMWATER DETENTION BASINS
6.1 INTRODUCTION ..... 6 - 1
6.1.1 When to Use ..... 6 - 1
6 1.2 Where Not Required ..... 6 - 1
6.1.3 Terminology ..... 6 - 1
6.1.4 In-Line Detention Storage ..... 6 - 1
6.1.5 Developments ≤ One Acre ..... 6 - 1

6.2 DESIGN PROCEDURE ..... 6 - 2
6.2.1 Design Procedure ..... 6 - 2

6.3 GENERAL DESIGN CRITERIA ..... 6 - 3
6.3.1 Overview ..... 6 - 3
6 3.2 Considerations ..... 6 - 3
6.3.3 Design Frequencies ..... 6 - 3
6.3.4 Outflow Rates ..... 6 - 3
6.3.5 Hydraulic Features ..... 6 - 4
6.3.6 Geotechnical Investigations ..... 6 - 4
6.3.7 Water Quality Features ..... 6 - 4
6.3.8 Environmental Investigations ..... 6 - 5
6.3.9 Maintenance Access Plan ..... 6 - 5

6.4 LAYOUT .... 6 - 6
6.4.1 Overview .... 6 - 6
6 4.2 Depth .... 6 - 6
6.4.3 Side Slopes .... 6 - 6
6.4.4 Bottom Design - Introduction .... 6 - 7
6.4.5 Dry Bottom Design .... 6 - 7
6.4.6 Wet Bottom Design - Introduction .... 6 - 8
6.4.7 Wetland .... 6 - 8
6.4.8 Deep Pool .... 6 - 8
6.4.9 Maintenance Shelf .... 6 - 8
6.4.10 Wet Bottom Design .... 6 - 9
6.4.11 Water Edge Walls .... 6 - 9

6.5 RIGHT-OF-WAY .... 6 - 10
6.5.1 Overview .... 6 - 10
6 5.2 Right-of-Way Limits .... 6 - 10
6.5.3 HCFCD Detention Basins Adjacent to Channels or Roads .... 6 - 10
6.5.4 Ultimate Right-of-Way Determination .... 6 - 11

6.6 INFLOW STRUCTURES .... 6 - 12
6.6.1 Inflow .... 6 - 12
6 6.2 Inflow Structures .... 6 - 12
6.6.3 Side-Weir .... 6 - 12
6.6.4 Erosion Control .... 6 - 13

6.7 OUTFLOW STRUCTURES .... 6 - 14
6.7.1 Common Structures .... 6 - 14
6 7.2 Pipe Equation .... 6 - 14
6.7.3 Box Culvert Equation .... 6 - 14
6.7.4 Entrance Loss Coefficients .... 6 - 15
6.7.5 Minimum Pipe Size .... 6 - 15
6.7.6 Orifice Equation .... 6 - 16
6.7.7 Outflow Structures .... 6 - 16
6.7.8 Backflow Preventers .... 6 - 16
6.7.9 Seepage .... 6 - 16
6.7.10 Weirs .... 6 - 17
6.7.11 Erosion Control .... 6 - 17
6.7.12 Multiple Frequency Outflow Structures .... 6 - 17

6.8 TAILWATER .... 6 - 18
6.8.1 Overview .... 6 - 18
6.8.2 Backwater .... 6 - 18

6.9 DETENTION VOLUME .... 6 - 19
6.9.1 Overview .... 6 - 19
6.9.2 Methods .... 6 - 19
6.9.3 Minimum Detention Volume .... 6 - 20
6.9.4 What to Include .... 6 - 20

6.10 METHOD 1 – SMALL PROJECT DRAINAGE AREAS .... 6 - 21
6.10.1 When to Use .... 6 - 21
6.10.2 Inflow .... 6 - 21
6.10.3 Maximum Outflow Rate .... 6 - 21
6.10.4 Tailwater .... 6 - 21
6.10.5 Detention Volume .... 6 - 21
6.10.6 Outflow Structure .... 6 - 21
6.10.7 Documentation .... 6 - 21

6.11 METHOD 2 – MODERATE PROJECT DRAINAGE AREAS .... 6 - 22
6.11.1 When to Use .... 6 - 22
6.11.2 Inflow .... 6 - 22
6.11.3 Maximum Allowable Outflow .... 6 - 22
6.11.4 Tailwater .... 6 - 22
6.11.5 Detention Volume – Preliminary Estimate .... 6 - 23
6.11.6 Outflow Structure – Preliminary Size Estimate .... 6 - 23
6.11.7 Detention Volume and Outflow Structure .... 6 - 23
6.11.8 Alternative Models .... 6 - 23
6.11.9 Documentation .... 6 - 23

6.12 METHOD 3 – LARGE PROJECT DRAINAGE AREAS .... 6 - 24
6.12.1 When to Use .... 6 - 24
6.12.2 Analysis .... 6 - 24
6.12.3 Alternative Models .... 6 - 24
6.12.4 Documentation .... 6 - 24

6.13 EMERGENCY OVERFLOW .... 6 - 25
6.13.1 Criteria .... 6 - 25
6.13.2 Consideration .... 6 - 25

6.14 EROSION CONTROL .... 6 - 26
6.14.1 Criteria .... 6 - 26
6.14.2 Backslope Swales .... 6 - 26

6.15 PUMPED DETENTION SYSTEMS .... 6 - 27
6.15.1 Overview .... 6 - 27
6.15.2 Public Pumped Detention Facilities .... 6 - 27
6.15.3 Design Procedure .... 6 - 27
6.15.4 Pumped Detention Criteria .... 6 - 27
6.15.5 Additional Criteria for HCFCD Maintained Facilities .... 6 - 29
6.15.6 Additional Criteria for Privately Maintained Facilities .... 6 - 29

EXHIBIT 6-1: TYPES OF DETENTION
EXHIBIT 6-2: WELL-GRADED, "DRY" DETENTION BASIN
EXHIBIT 6-3: "WET" BOTTOM DETENTION BASIN
EXHIBIT 6-4: DETENTION BASIN SECTIONS
EXHIBIT 6-5: DETENTION VOLUME ESTIMATE (METHOD 2)
EXHIBIT 6-6: PUMPED DETENTION FACILITY SCHEMATIC

7. BRIDGES
7.1 INTRODUCTION .... 7 - 1
7.1.1 Overview .... 7 - 1
7.1.2 Review and Coordination .... 7 - 1
7.1.3 Criteria .... 7 - 1
7.1.4 Easements .... 7 - 1

7.2 DESIGN CRITERIA .... 7 - 2
7.2.1 Hydraulic Criteria .... 7 - 2
7.2.2 Structural Criteria .... 7 - 3
7.2.3 Access to HCFCD Facilities at Bridges .... 7 - 3

7.3 HYDRAULIC ANALYSIS .... 7 - 4
7.3.1 Methodology .... 7 - 4
7.3.2 Submittal Requirements .... 7 - 4

8. CULVERTS
8.1 INTRODUCTION .... 8 - 1
8.1.1 Overview .... 8 - 1
8.1.2 Review and Coordination .... 8 - 1
8.1.3 Criteria .... 8 - 1
8.1.4 Easements .... 8 - 1

8.2 DESIGN CRITERIA .... 8 - 2
8.2.1 Hydraulic Criteria .... 8 - 2
8.2.2 Structural Criteria .... 8 - 2
8.2.3 Access to HCFCD Facilities at Culverts .... 8 - 3

8.3 HYDRAULIC ANALYSIS .... 8 - 4
8.3.1 Methodology .... 8 - 4
8.3.2 Flow Classification .... 8 - 4
8.3.3 Submittal Requirements .... 8 - 4

9. TRANSITION CONTROL STRUCTURES
9.1 INTRODUCTION .... 9 - 1
9.1.1 Overview .... 9 - 1
9.1.2 Drop Structures .... 9 - 1
9.1.3 Submittal Requirements .... 9 - 1

9.2 GENERAL DESIGN CRITERIA .... 9 - 2
9.2.1 General Design Criteria .... 9 - 2

9.3 STRAIGHT DROP SPILLWAYS .... 9 - 3
9.3.1 Overview .... 9 - 3
9.3.2 Design Criteria .... 9 - 3

9.4 SLOPED DROPS .... 9 - 4
9.4.1 Overview .... 9 - 4
9.4.2 Design Criteria .... 9 - 4

9.5 BAFFLED CHUTES .... 9 - 5
9.5.1 Overview .... 9 - 5
9.5.2 Design Criteria .... 9 - 5

EXHIBIT 9-1: TYPICAL STRAIGHT DROP
EXHIBIT 9-2: TYPICAL SLOPE DROP
EXHIBIT 9-3: BAFFLE BLOCK DROP

10. EROSION AND SEDIMENT CONTROL
10.1 INTRODUCTION .... 10 - 1
10.1.1 Overview .... 10 - 1
10.1.2 Causes of Erosion .... 10 - 1
10.1.3 Results of Erosion .... 10 - 1
10.1.4 Geotechnical Investigation .... 10 - 1
10.1.5 Specific Problem Areas .... 10 - 2

10.2 HYDRAULIC CONSIDERATIONS .... 10 - 3
10.2.1 Maximum Velocities .... 10 - 3
10.2.2 Turbulence .... 10 - 3

10.3 TURF ESTABLISHMENT .... 10 - 4
10.3.1 Introduction .... 10 - 4
10.3.2 Turf Grass Establishment Criteria .... 10 - 4
10.3.3 Conditions for HCFCD to Perform Turf Grass Establishment .... 10 - 4

10.4 CONCRETE LINING .... 10 - 5
10.4.1 Overview .... 10 - 5
10.4.2 Basis of Design .... 10 - 5
10.4.3 Concrete Lining Criteria .... 10 - 5
10.4.4 Concrete Lining Criteria Continued .... 10 - 6

10.5 RIPRAP .... 10 - 7
10.5.1 Overview .... 10 - 7
10.5.2 Basis of Design .... 10 - 7
10.5.3 Riprap Criteria .... 10 - 7
10.5.4 Riprap Criteria Continued .... 10 - 8

10.6 OTHER LININGS .... 10 - 9
10.6.1 Overview .... 10 - 9

10.7 SEDIMENT CONTROL DURING CONSTRUCTION .... 10 - 10
10.7.1 Criteria .... 10 - 10

11. BACKSLOPE DRAINAGE SYSTEMS AND PIPE OUTFALLS
11.1 BACKSLOPE DRAINAGE SYSTEMS .... 11 - 1
11.1.1 Introduction .... 11 - 1
11.1.2 Where to Use .... 11 - 1
11.1.3 Criteria .... 11 - 2

11.2 OFFSITE DITCH INTERCEPTOR STRUCTURE .... 11 - 4
11.2.1 Introduction .... 11 - 4
11.2.2 Criteria .... 11 - 4

11.3 PIPE OUTFALLS .... 11 - 5
11.3.1 Introduction .... 11 - 5
11.3.2 Considerations .... 11 - 5
11.3.3 Design Criteria .... 11 - 6

12. CHANNEL ENCLOSURES
12.1. INTRODUCTION .... 12 - 1
12.1.1 Overview .... 12 - 1
12.1.2 Analysis and Methodologies .... 12 - 1
12.1.3 Maintenance Responsibility .... 12 - 1

12.2. DESIGN CRITERIA .... 12 - 2
12.2.1 Application .... 12 - 2
12.2.2 Hydraulic Criteria .... 12 - 2
12.2.3 Structural Criteria .... 12 - 2
12.2.4 Manholes and Inlets .... 12 - 2
12.2.5 Right-of-Way .... 12 - 2

13. EXTREME EVENT OVERFLOW

13.1 INTRODUCTION .... 13 - 1
13.1.1 Overview .... 13 - 1

13.2 EXTREME EVENT OVERLAND FLOW SWALES .... 13 - 2
13.2.1 Criteria .... 13 - 2

EXHIBIT 13-1: TYPICAL EXTREME EVENT OVERFLOW - ARTICULATED CONCRETE BLOCK OR RIPRAP SWALE
EXHIBIT 13-2: TYPICAL EXTREME EVENT OVERFLOW - CONCRETE-LINED SWALE

14. PIPELINES, UTILITIES, AND ROADWAYS

14.1 INTRODUCTION .... 14 - 1
14.1.1 Overview .... 14 - 1
14.1.2 Review and Coordination .... 14 - 1
14.1.3 Criteria .... 14 - 1
14.1.4 Easements .... 14 - 1

14.2 CROSSINGS .... 14 - 2
14.2.1 Criteria and Conditions .... 14 - 2

14.3 PARALLEL PIPELINES AND UTILITIES IN HCFCD FACILITIES .... 14 - 3
14.3.1 Overview .... 14 - 3

EXHIBIT 14-1: PIPELINE AND UTILITY CROSSINGS

15. RIGHT-OF-WAY

15.1 INTRODUCTION .... 15 - 1
15.1.1 Overview .... 15 - 1
15.1.2 Definitions .... 15 - 1
15.1.3 Real Estate Interest Options .... 15 - 2

15.2 RIGHT-OF-WAY DETERMINATION .... 15 - 3
15.2.1 Existing Rights-of-Way .... 15 - 3
15.2.2 Channels .... 15 - 3
15.2.3 Detention Basins .... 15 - 3
15.2.4 Channel Enclosures .... 15 - 3

15.3 RIGHT-OF-WAY CONVEYANCE AND DEDICATION .... 15 - 4
15.3.1 Introduction .... 15 - 4
15.3.2 Separate Instrument Conveyance or Dedication .... 15 - 4
15.3.3 Dedication Process – Subdivision Plat .... 15 - 5

15.4 EASEMENTS FOR PIPELINES, UTILITIES, AND ROADWAYS .... 15 - 6
15.4.1 Requirement .... 15 - 6
15.4.2 Procedures .... 15 - 6
15.4.3 Easements in New Subdivisions.. 15 - 6
15.4.4 Right to Cross Paragraph.. 15 - 6
15.4.5 Obtaining an Easement from Underlying Fee Owner .... 15 - 6
15.4.6 Obtaining an Easement from HCFCD.................................... 15 - 7

16. WATER QUALITY FEATURES

16.1 INTRODUCTION.. 16 - 1
16.1.1 Overview .... 16 - 1
16.1.2 Review and Coordination Process.. 16 - 1
16.1.3 HCFCD Maintenance .... 16 - 1

16.2 ACCEPTANCE CRITERIA .... 16 - 2
16.2.1 Acceptance Criteria for HCFCD Maintenance .... 16 - 2

16.3 DESIGN CRITERIA... 16 - 3
16.3.1 Introduction .... 16 - 3
16.3.2 Floatable Collection Screen.. 16 - 3
16.3.3 Wet Bottom Features.. 16 - 3

EXHIBIT 16-1: FLOATABLES COLLECTION SCREEN - DESIGN GUIDE

17. ENVIRONMENTAL AND ARCHEOLOGICAL COMPLIANCE

17.1 ENVIRONMENTAL COMPLIANCE .... 17 - 1
17.1.1 Overview .... 17 - 1
17.1.2 Existing HCFCD Maintained Facilities .... 17 - 1
17.1.3 New HCFCD Facilities .... 17 - 1
17.1.4 Review and Coordination Process.. 17 - 2
17.1.5 Water Quality Features... 17 - 2
17.1.6 Mitigation .... 17 - 2

17.2 ARCHEOLOGICAL COMPLIANCE.. 17 - 3
17.2.1 Overview .... 17 - 3
17.2.2 New HCFCD Facilities .... 17 - 3
17.2.3 Review and Coordination Process.. 17 - 4

18. ENVIRONMENTAL, RECREATION, AND AESTHETIC FEATURES

18.1. INTRODUCTION... 18 - 1
18.1.1 Overview .... 18 - 1
18.1.2 Acceptance Criteria .... 18 - 1
18.1.3 Review and Coordination Process.. 18 - 1
18.1.4 Multi-Use Features/Right-of-Way .... 18 - 1

18.2. ENVIRONMENTAL FEATURES .... 18 - 2
18.2.1 Examples .... 18 - 2
18.2.2 Criteria .... 18 - 2
18.2.3 Preservation .... 18 - 2
18.2.4 Specific Criteria for Tree and Shrub Plantings .... 18 - 3
18.2.5 Trees .... 18 - 3
18.2.6 Shrubs .... 18 - 3

18.3. RECREATION FEATURES .... 18 - 4
18.3.1 Examples .... 18 - 4
18.3.2 Criteria .... 18 - 4
18.3.3 Specific Criteria for Trails .... 18 - 4

18.4. AESTHETIC FEATURES .... 18 - 5
18.4.1 Examples .... 18 - 5
18.4.2 Specific Criteria .... 18 - 5

19. REPORT REQUIREMENTS
19.1. INTRODUCTION .... 19 - 1
19.1.1 Overview .... 19 - 1
19.1.2 Purpose of Reports .... 19 - 1
19.1.3 Report Content .... 19 - 1
19.1.4 Texas State Board of Registration for Professional Engineers Requirement .... 19 - 1

19.2. REPORT OUTLINE .... 19 - 2
19.2.1 Report Outline .... 19 - 2

19.3. DETENTION SUMMARY .... 19 - 4
19.3.1 Detention Summary Table .... 19 - 4

EXHIBIT 19-1: CHANNEL CONVEYANCE IMPROVEMENT PLAN VIEW
EXHIBIT 19-2: CHANNEL CONVEYANCE IMPROVEMENT PROFILE VIEW

APPENDICES

APPENDIX A – DESIGN CRITERIA SUMMARY

A.1 General
A.2 Channels
A.3 Stormwater Detention Basins
A.4 Erosion Control
A.5 Backslope Drainage Systems
A.6 Pipe Outfalls
A.7 Pipeline, Utility, and Roadway Crossings

APPENDIX B – FORMS

1. Preliminary Assessment of HCFCD Requirements
2. Request for Variance from HCFCD
3. Application for Acceptance of Maintenance of a Drainage/Detention Facility by HCFCD
4. 48–Hour Pre-Construction Notification
5. Certification of Construction Completion

APPENDIX C – CHECKLISTS

C.1 Projects with Storm Sewer Outfalls
C.2 Channel Construction Drawings
C.3 Detention Basin Construction Drawings
C.4 Bridge and Culvert Construction Drawings
C.5 Wastewater Treatment Plant Construction Drawings
C.6 Pipeline/Utility Crossing Construction Drawings
C.7 Recreation (including trails), Environmental, and Aesthetic Feature Construction Drawings
C.8 Plat Checklist

APPENDIX D – STANDARDS AND DETAILS

1. HCFCD Standard Notes for Construction Drawings
2. HCFCD Standard Interceptor Structure Detail Sheet
3. HCFCD Standard Storm Sewer Outfall and Riprap Detail Sheet
4. HCFCD Standard Concrete Lining Detail Sheet
5. HCFCD Geotechnical Investigation Guidelines

APPENDIX E – TERMINOLGY

E.1 General Terminology
E.2 Channel Terminology
E.3 Detention Terminology
E.4 Project Review Terminology
E.5 Technical Terminology
E.6 Right-of-Way Terminology

APPENDIX F – MAIN STEM LIST

APPENDIX G - REFERENCES

INTRODUCTION

I.1 Preface

Introduction
I.1.1

This is the first major revision or update of the Harris County Flood Control District's (HCFCD) design criteria manual which was adopted by Harris County Commissioners Court on February 21, 1984 and entitled "Criteria Manual for the Design of Flood Control and Drainage Facilities". Since the original manual was published, experience with constructed facilities and changes in community preferences necessitated updating policy and criteria.

Goal
I.1.2

Plan, design and build stormwater management facilities in a consistent manner that will

- Work when needed
- Require only routine maintenance
- Be cost effective
- Respect community and natural values.

Objectives
I.1.3

Provide written policies and criteria for the engineering community and HCFCD staff to use for land development and infrastructure projects that are effective, consistent, and practical.

Provide a written procedure to efficiently coordinate land development and infrastructure projects with the HCFCD.

Limitations
I.1.4

This manual is intended to provide a guideline for the most commonly encountered flood control designs in Harris County. The manual was written for users with knowledge and experience in the applications of standard engineering principles and practices of stormwater design and management.

There will be situations not covered by this manual which merit variations to the criteria specified in this manual. Other methods of design or exceptions to criteria are permissible provided the variance procedure in this manual is followed. Close coordination with the HCFCD is recommended during the planning, design, and construction of all flood control facilities.

Continued on next page

I.1 Preface, Continued

Changes I.1.5

Changes to the Policy, Procedures, and Criteria in Sections 1-19 must be approved by Harris County Commissioners Court.

Changes to the Appendices which contain forms, checklists, standards, etc. must be approved by the HCFCD Director.

I.2 Transition Plan

Introduction I.2.1

This is the plan for transitioning from the current 1984 HCFCD manual to the updated "HCFCD Policy, Criteria, and Procedure Manual for Approval and Acceptance of Infrastructure." The objective is to apply the new manual as quickly as possible without causing undue hardships to ongoing projects.

Adoption I.2.2

This updated manual was adopted by Harris County Commissioners Court on October 5, 2004.

Policy and Procedures I.2.3

Effective immediately upon adoption by Harris County Commissioners Court for all projects are:

- Section 1, Policy
- Section 2, Review and Acceptance Procedures.

Criteria I.2.4

The HCFCD encourages using the "new and improved" criteria in this manual as soon as practical. The intent of this transition plan is to reduce hardships on active developments, not avoid applying criteria where appropriate.

The effective dates for criteria, Sections 3–19, are presented in the table in Section I.2.9.

Criteria Designations I.2.5

All criteria in this manual are important for the successful design, construction, and function of HCFCD facilities. However, some criteria impact the overall cost and schedule of a land development project more than other criteria. For that reason, the criteria that primarily affect the land needed for drainage infrastructure are identified and given longer to implement into an active land development project. All other criteria are expected to be incorporated as soon as practical, but no later than the dates given in the attached table.

Continued on next page

I.2 Transition Plan, Continued

Criteria Definitions I.2.6

Design Criteria: All criteria except land area criteria as defined below.

Land Area Criteria: Criteria that directly affect the surface area of land needed for a channel or detention basin, including the area for access and maintenance. Specific criteria are identified in the table below.

Land Area Criteria	Location in Manual
Minimum grass-lined channel side slope	Section 5.4.2
Minimum detention basin volume	Section 6.9.3
Elements in calculating detention volumes:	
Impervious Cover	Section 3.5
Direct Runoff	Sections 3.6.6 and 3.6.7
Tailwater	Section 6.8
Multi-frequency Outflow Rates	Section 6.3.4

Master Planned Project Definition I.2.7

For the purpose of this manual's transition plan, master planned projects:

- Have a channel and/or detention facilities that serve multiple tracts or properties,
- Are constructed in three or more phases,
- Conduct a full hydrological and hydraulic analysis utilizing the Watershed Modeling Method (see Section 3.4, Watershed Modeling Method), and
- Document the analysis results, proposed drainage plan, and phasing plan in a drainage plan report.

Master Planned Project Exception to Criteria Effective Dates I.2.8

An exception to the table in Section I.2.9 is that for master planned projects at Stage 2, Drainage Report Submitted, or later prior to adoption of this manual, land area criteria will not apply to channels and detention basins under construction within five years from the date of the approval of the master drainage plan.

Note that HCFCD approval of a drainage plan report for a master planned project is valid for five years from the date of the signature (see Section 2.3.5, Signature Expiration).

Continued on next page

Effective Dates for Criteria in Sections 3-19 of the HCFCD Policy, Criteria, and Procedure Manual [1]

I.2.9

Project Status on Day of Adoption[2]	Oct. 5, 2004 (Immediately)	Jan. 1, 2005 (Three Months)	April 1, 2005 (Six Months)	October 1, 2006 (Two Years)
Stage 1 – Initiation (New) *No evidence of project initiation such as a HCFCD response letter or a Stage 2 submittal*	All Criteria	--	--	--
Stage 2 - Drainage or Design Report (Feasibility or Planning Phase) Not Submitted *Stage 1 completed and report not submitted to HCFCD*	--	Design Criteria	Land Area Criteria	--
Submitted *Report submitted to HCFCD for approval as confirmed by the One Stop Shop submission records or a complete preliminary plat application as confirmed by a CP-101 form or equivalent*	--	--	--	All Criteria[3]
Stage 3 – Construction Drawings Not Submitted *Stage 2 completed and construction drawings not submitted as confirmed by One Stop Shop submission records*	--	Design Criteria	--	Land Area Criteria[3]
Submitted *Construction drawings submitted to HCFCD for 1st time or updated approval as confirmed by One Stop Shop submission records*	--	--	--	All Criteria[3]
Previously Approved but Construction Does Not Commence *Construction drawings approved but construction does not commence before HCFCD signature expires.*	--	Design Criteria	--	Land Area Criteria[3]
Previously Approved and Construction Commences *Construction drawings approved and construction commences before HCFCD signature expires.*	Not Applicable[4]	--	--	--
Stage 4 - Construction *Under construction[5] but not accepted*	Not Applicable[4]	--	--	--
Stage 5 – Acceptance *Constructed and accepted by HCFCD for maintenance*	Not Applicable[4]	--	--	--

1 - See Section I.2.8 for master planned project exceptions to this table. Policy and Review and Acceptance Procedures are effective immediately.
2 - See Section 2.4, Review and Coordination Process Overview for an explanation of the stages.
3 - Applies to channels and detention basins not under construction[5] by this date.
4 - Updated criteria in this manual not applicable.
5 - Confirmed by the 48-hour Preconstruction Notification.

I.3 Acknowledgements

Community Review I.3.1

The community was given an opportunity to review and comment on an initial draft and a final draft. The drafts were sent to 21 local organizations and 37 government entities. Over 300 comments and suggestions were provided which were carefully considered, with most being incorporated. The community feedback greatly improved the quality and clarity of the manual.

The HCFCD would like to particularly recognize the following organizations and agencies for their thorough and well thought out comments:

Houston Council of Engineering Companies
Greater Houston Builders Association
Houston Real Estate Council
American Society of Civil Engineers
North Houston Association
Brays Bayou Association
Cypress Creek Flood Control Coalition
Cypress Creek United Civic Associations

Thanks I.3.2

Many people contributed to the preparation of this manual, more than can even be recognized. There are a few HCFCD would like to thank for their valuable input, time and effort.

In particular, Steve Fitzgerald, HCFCD's Chief Engineer, was the driving force in producing the manual. His experience, expertise, and tireless dedication were invaluable in producing this high-quality document.

HCFCD employees who made significant contributions are Mike Talbott, Director; Gary Green, Director of Operations; Joe Myers, Infrastructure Division Manager; Tom Parker, Watershed Coordination Manager; David Saha, Watershed Coordinator; and Sarah Hewson, Graphics.

The Houston Council of Engineering Companies, Drainage Subcommittee was instrumental in the development of this manual. Members included Ranney McDonough, Ronnie Mullinax, Bob Jones, Steve Costello, and Al Flores.

Michael Schaffer and Teague Harris of the Greater Houston Builders Association also made valuable contributions.

HCFCD would also like to recognize our consultant Andy Yung, Dodson & Associates, Inc., for his assistance and contributions.

SECTION 1 – POLICY

1.1 Overview

Authority 1.1.1

These policies, design criteria, and procedures are adopted by the Commissioners Court of Harris County, Texas, acting in its capacity as the governing body of the Harris County Flood Control District (HCFCD) and Harris County.

Associated Regulations 1.1.2

Associated regulations may be found in:

- Regulations of Harris County, Texas for Flood Plain Management
- Regulations of Harris County, Texas for the Approval and Acceptance of Infrastructure
- Regulations of Harris County, Texas for Stormwater Quality Management.

HCFCD Enabling Legislation 1.1.3

Harris County Flood Control District was created by the 45th Texas Legislature under Article XVI §59 of the Texas Constitution. HCFCD was charged with "*the control, storing, preservation, and distribution of the storm and flood waters, and the waters of the rivers and streams in Harris County and their tributaries, for domestic, municipal, flood control, irrigation and other useful purposes, the reclamation and drainage of the overflow land of Harris County, the conservation of forests, and to aid in the protection of navigation on the navigable waters by regulating the flood and storm waters that flow into said navigable streams*."

As a political subdivision of state government, HCFCD can legally perform only those responsibilities specified by the State Legislature.

Area Covered by Policies, Design Criteria, and Procedures 1.1.4

These policies apply:

- To areas within the jurisdiction of HCFCD which generally conforms to the geographical boundaries of Harris County, Texas
- To areas where HCFCD owns and/or maintains the rights-of-way
- As required by Harris County regulations.

1.1 Overview, continued

Definitions 1.1.5

The following words and terms, when used in these policies, will have these meanings unless the context clearly indicates otherwise:

- Commissioners Court – Commissioners Court of Harris County, Texas.
- Harris County – Denotes the Harris County Public Infrastructure Department which is responsible for administration of the regulations of Harris County.
- HCFCD – Harris County Flood Control District.
- HCFCD Facility – Any infrastructure managed by HCFCD. These may include, but are not limited to, rivers, streams, bayous, creeks, tributaries, channels, detention basins, land, buildings, and associated infrastructure.
- HCFCD Stormwater Management System – A record of facilities accepted by Commissioners Court for management and maintenance by HCFCD.
- HCFCD Right-of-Way (ROW) – Implies HCFCD has property rights to manage the HCFCD facility. This includes:
    1. Property owned in fee by HCFCD.
    2. HCFCD drainage or flooding easement conveyed to and accepted by HCFCD through Commissioners Court.
    3. A public drainage easement accepted by HCFCD through Commissioners Court into the HCFCD Stormwater Management System.
    4. A channel's bed and banks as defined in the HCFCD's enabling legislation.
- Main Stem – The primary river, stream, bayou, creek, or channel within the watershed or sub-watershed as listed in Appendix F.
- Primary Drainage Facility – Generally an open conveyance system such as a river, stream, bayou, creek, detention basin, or channel serving area-wide drainage from infrastructure constructed upon public rights-of-way and eligible for acceptance by HCFCD through Commissioners Court into the HCFCD Stormwater Management System.
- Projects by Others – A general term to denote any construction within HCFCD ROW by someone other than HCFCD, or a primary drainage facility constructed by someone other than HCFCD eligible for acceptance into the HCFCD Stormwater Management System.

1.2 Purpose and Application

Purpose of Policies, Design Criteria, and Procedures 1.2.1

The purpose of these policies, design criteria, and procedures is to:

- Ensure the ability of the HCFCD facility to function as intended.
- Avoid increases in flood risks or flood hazards or create new flood hazard areas.
- Ensure the constructed infrastructure within HCFCD ROW performs its intended function with normal maintenance and repair.
- Ensure compliance with enabling legislation.
- Provide procedures for the review and approval of constructing infrastructure within HCFCD ROW.
- Provide procedures for acceptance by HCFCD through Commissioners Court of infrastructure into the HCFCD Stormwater Management System for management and maintenance.
- Provide procedures to address requests for variances.
- Minimize conflicts that may occur between a HCFCD flood damage reduction project, either on-going or proposed, and projects by others.
- Support continued participation in the National Flood Insurance Program by Harris County and the local communities.
- Ensure the opportunity to continue to modify and expand the primary drainage facilities as the area develops.

Application of Policies, Design Criteria, and Procedures 1.2.2

These policies, design criteria, and procedures apply when:

- Proposing to construct infrastructure within or adjacent to a HCFCD facility.
- Proposing an infrastructure to be accepted by HCFCD through Commissioners Court into the HCFCD Stormwater Management System.
- Required by Harris County regulations.

1.3 Policies

Policy I: Primary Function of a HCFCD Facility 1.3.1	The primary function of a HCFCD facility is to accomplish the responsibilities established by the State Legislature and authorized by Commissioners Court. Consequently, proposed projects by others must be compatible with the primary function of the HCFCD facility. HCFCD reserves the right to withhold approval of any proposed project that, in the opinion of HCFCD, is not compatible with the primary function of the HCFCD facility.
Policy II: Local Flood Plain Management 1.3.2	HCFCD acknowledges and supports participation by local communities in the National Flood Insurance Program. Consequently, projects by others shall comply with all local rules and regulations related to flood plain management.
Policy III: **Avoidance of Increasing Flood Risks 1.3.3**	Projects by others shall avoid increasing flood risks or flood hazards or creating new flood hazard areas.
Policy IV: Harris County Regulations 1.3.4	Projects by others shall comply with all Harris County regulations.
Policy V: Acceptance Into the HCFCD Stormwater Management System 1.3.5	Commissioners Court, on behalf of HCFCD, shall accept drainage infrastructure into the HCFCD Stormwater Management System that complies with HCFCD policies, design criteria, and procedures.

Continued on next page

1.3 Policies, Continued

Policy VI: HCFCD Support of Multi-Use Functions 1.3.6

HCFCD recognizes the opportunities presented by HCFCD facilities to enhance both community and natural values. Consequently, HCFCD supports such multi-use functions as trails, green space, parks, greenways or corridors, stormwater quality facilities, and other recreational and natural features provided they are compatible with the primary function of the HCFCD facility.

Policy VII: HCFCD Support of Regional Drainage 1.3.7

HCFCD believes an open conveyance system comprised of channels and detention facilities represent the best opportunity to meet the regional needs of area drainage, greenway facilities, and open space. HCFCD will work with the public, engineers, developers, and property owners to define regional drainage plans that work with appropriate regard for community and natural values. HCFCD will aid in the implementation of the regional plan; however, HCFCD cannot guarantee the required rights-of-way, implementation of the regional plan, or the needed system capacity.

Policy VIII: Right-of-Way Dedication/ Conveyance 1.3.8

Establishing adequate right-of-way for the long-term maintenance, operation, and expansion of HCFCD facilities is essential to the success of regional and watershed drainage. New land developments are requested to dedicate or convey ultimate right-of-way for channels within or adjacent to the boundary of the new development.

Policy IX: HCFCD Right to Work on Main Stem 1.3.9

HCFCD, and only HCFCD, is authorized to implement modifications or improvements along main stems for increasing conveyance, flood plain storage compensation, hydraulic mitigation, or other flood control purposes. HCFCD may enter into agreements or contracts with others to accomplish modifications or improvements.

Continued on next page

1.3 Policies, Continued

Policy X: HCFCD Border Bayous 1.3.10

Cedar Bayou, Clear Creek, and Spring Creek define part of the Harris County boundary. HCFCD jurisdiction over these bayous is limited to the watershed within Harris County. No change should occur on these bayous until a comprehensive master plan is adopted by all appropriate jurisdictions. This includes no modification of the main stem and no increase in flow from new developments in the watershed. Right-of-way requirements will be based on maintenance of the existing creek or bayou, or a comprehensive master plan as adopted by all appropriate jurisdictional entities.

SECTION 2 – REVIEW AND ACCEPTANCE PROCEDURES

2.1 Introduction

Purpose of Review and Coordination 2.1.1

The purpose of this Section is to define the procedure for coordinating projects with HCFCD, specify the responsibilities at each of the steps, and to facilitate successful completion of the project.

HCFCD reviews and coordinates developer and agency projects impacting HCFCD facilities:

- To help others plan, design, and build HCFCD facilities that comply with design and acceptance criteria.
- That propose placement of non-flood control features in HCFCD facilities.
- To assist local jurisdictions with flood plain management reviews.

Review Authority 2.1.2

The authority of HCFCD to control activities within HCFCD facilities and be involved in the management of stormwater in the watersheds comes from:

- Enabling legislation and subsequent amendments.
- Harris County Commissioners Court.
- Regulations of Harris County.
- Property rights.
- Interlocal Agreements with municipalities within Harris County and other agencies (such as TxDOT).

In This Section 2.1.3

This Section contains:

- Acceptance criteria.
- Types of projects and documents reviewed.
- Overview of the review and coordination process.
- Variance submittals.
- Specific process description for:
  - New or modified HCFCD facilities.
  - Non-flood control features.
- Review process for federal projects.
- Requirements for regional flood control project watersheds.

2.2 Acceptance Criteria

Overview 2.2.1

Acceptance of work or features in existing or proposed HCFCD maintained facilities is contingent upon completion of the review, approval, and acceptance procedures and satisfaction of the criteria presented in this manual.

Two types of projects are those:

1. **Accepted by HCFCD for maintenance** –
   HCFCD does maintain this infrastructure or feature.
2. **Allowed in a HCFCD maintained facility** –
   HCFCD does not maintain this infrastructure or feature.

Purpose 2.2.2

The purpose of the acceptance criteria is to ensure the public will have flood control facilities that are designed and built to work when needed, last a long time, and require only normal maintenance and repair. At the beginning of a project, the design engineer and owner know what is required for HCFCD to accept the infrastructure or feature.

Continued on next page

2.2 Acceptance Criteria, Continued

Acceptance for HCFCD Maintenance 2.2.3

HCFCD will accept a new HCFCD facility or modification to an existing HCFCD facility for HCFCD maintenance if all of the following are satisfied:

- The proposed channel or detention basin receives stormwater from a public street or public storm sewer system, and provides area-wide drainage.
- The project drainage or design report and construction drawings are:
  - Prepared using sound engineering practices.
  - In compliance with HCFCD policies and design criteria.
  - Signed and sealed by a licensed Texas professional engineer.
  - Reviewed and approved by HCFCD.
- The project is in compliance with local flood plain management requirements and Harris County regulations.
- All applicable local, state, and federal permits and approvals are obtained prior to construction.
- The project is constructed in accordance with the sealed and approved construction drawings, good construction practices, and applicable local, state, and federal permits and approvals.
- Changes that are necessary due to different field conditions are coordinated with HCFCD prior to making the change and documented on the record drawings.
- The construction is inspected under the supervision of a licensed Texas professional engineer and the professional engineer certifies the completed work was constructed in accordance with the sealed construction drawings.
- The appropriate turf establishment criteria are satisfied.
- The appropriate right-of-way interest is conveyed to HCFCD or dedicated to the public for both the proposed and ultimate facility and access to the facility for inspection, maintenance, and rehabilitation.
- Sealed record drawings are submitted and the project passes a final inspection by HCFCD.

Continued on next page

2.2 Acceptance Criteria, Continued

Unacceptable HCFCD Facilities 2.2.4

Some examples where HCFCD will not accept a new facility for maintenance are when the facility:

- Is not constructed in accordance with the sealed and approved construction drawings, good construction practices, and the applicable local, state, and federal permits and approvals.
- Only serves private streets or private development.
- Is a roadside ditch.
- Does not have well established turf or an executed agreement for HCFCD to perform turf establishment.
- Cannot be accessed for maintenance or rehabilitation.
- Is not within a HCFCD right-of-way.

Typical Non-Flood Control Features 2.2.5

Typical non-flood control features not maintained by HCFCD are:

- Public Infrastructure, Pipelines, and Utilities:
  - Storm sewer outfalls.
  - Bridges and culverts.
  - Water and sanitary sewer lines.
  - Utilities and pipelines.
- Recreation and Environmental Features:
  - Hike and bike trails.
  - Recreation equipment.
  - Landscape plantings.
  - Habitat plantings.
  - Water quality feature (see note).

Note: HCFCD will maintain water quality features in a HCFCD detention basin if the acceptance criteria in Section 16, Water Quality Features are satisfied.

Sponsor for Recreation and Environmental Features 2.2.6

A sponsor is required for recreation and environmental features in HCFCD facilities. Depending on the feature, the sponsor can be a city, county precinct, utility district, homeowners association, or other legal entity.

Continued on next page

2.2 Acceptance Criteria, Continued

Non-Flood Control Features Allowed in a HCFCD Facility 2.2.7

HCFCD will allow non-flood control features in a HCFCD maintained facility if all of the following criteria are satisfied:

- The feature does not interfere with the function, operation, maintenance, or rehabilitation of the HCFCD facility, or any multi-purpose uses such as environmental, recreation, or aesthetic features.
- The sponsor agrees to:
  - Be responsible for the feature at no cost to HCFCD, including construction, repair, rehabilitation, maintenance, and replacement.
  - Repair damages to the HCFCD facility caused by the non-flood control feature or its construction, repair, rehabilitation, maintenance, or replacement.
- The sponsor acknowledges that HCFCD will not be responsible for repairing or replacing features:
  - Damaged or removed by HCFCD or its contractors in the course of maintaining, repairing, rehabilitating, modifying, or enlarging the HCFCD facility.
  - Damaged by erosion or siltation of the HCFCD facility.
- The design report and construction drawings are:
  - Prepared using sound engineering practices,
  - In compliance with HCFCD policies and design criteria,
  - Signed and sealed by a licensed Texas professional engineer and landscape architect, if applicable, and
  - Reviewed and approved by HCFCD.
- The project is in compliance with local flood plain management requirements and Harris County regulations.
- For recreation and environmental features:
  - An executed interlocal agreement is required between HCFCD and the sponsor prior to construction.
  - The sponsor is required to maintain a portion of the right-of-way encumbered by the feature in accordance with the interlocal agreement. This includes, but is not limited to, mowing, trimming, and litter removal on a routine basis.
  - Recreation features must be open to the public.

Block continued on next page

2.2 Acceptance Criteria, Continued

Non-Flood Control Features Allowed in a HCFCD Facility - Continued 2.2.7

- The project is constructed in accordance with the sealed construction drawings, good construction practices, and the applicable local, state, federal permits and approvals.
- Changes that are necessary due to different field conditions are coordinated with HCFCD prior to making the change and documented on the record drawings.
- The construction is inspected under the supervision of a licensed Texas professional engineer and the professional engineer certifies the completed work was constructed in accordance with the sealed construction drawings.
- The appropriate turf establishment criteria are satisfied.
- Sealed record drawings are submitted and the project passes a final inspection by HCFCD.

2.3 Projects and Documents

Projects Reviewed 2.3.1

HCFCD reviews three types of proposed projects that affect the function or maintenance of existing or proposed HCFCD facilities:

1) Projects with flood control infrastructure that:
   - Create a new HCFCD facility.
   - Physically modify an existing HCFCD facility.
   - Change or impact the maintenance of an existing HCFCD facility.

   Examples:
   - Open channels
   - Detention basins
   - Open channel enclosures

2) Projects with non-flood control features that are physically located in, on, over, under, or adjacent to the HCFCD facility:

   Examples:
   - Land development projects
   - Roads and highways
   - Bridges and culverts
   - Storm sewer outfall pipes
   - Water and sanitary sewer lines
   - Pipelines and public utilities
   - Environmental features (like tree plantings)
   - Recreation amenities (like hike & bike trails)
   - Encroachments

3) Development or public projects with no work in a HCFCD facility that are:
   - Referred to HCFCD by the floodplain permitting jurisdiction.
   - Located in a watershed with an adopted regional or master plan.

   Examples:
   - Proposed subdivision and site developments
   - Roads and highways

Continued on next page

2.3 Projects and Documents, Continued

Documents Reviewed 2.3.2

For projects impacting HCFCD facilities, HCFCD reviews:

- Drainage or design reports.
- Construction drawings.
- Environmental and recreation plans.
- Right-of-way related documents:
  - Plats
  - Instruments
  - Metes and bound descriptions
- Interlocal agreements.
- Encroachment requests.

Document Submittal Requirements 2.3.3

To facilitate review, submit documents that are factual, clear, concise, complete, and accurately represent the project.

All applicable documents submitted to HCFCD must be properly identified, sealed, signed, and dated as required by the Texas State Board of Registration for Professional Engineers or Surveyors.

Documents submitted for preliminary review must be clearly labeled as preliminary and comply with Texas State Board requirements.

Continued on next page

2.3 Projects and Documents, Continued

Document Responses 2.3.4

HCFCD response depends on the type of document, type of project, location, HCFCD authority, and what is being proposed. Once documents are determined to accurately represent the project, and are factual, clear, concise, complete, in substantial compliance with this manual, and represent reasonable engineering principles and practices, the following responses are possible:

Interpose No Objection: For projects outside HCFCD right-of-way, HCFCD does not object to the project or feature being built as documented.

Approved: For projects within existing or proposed HCFCD right-of-way, HCFCD approves the project or feature being built as documented.

Not Approved: HCFCD does not approve the project or feature because it would negatively impact the HCFCD facility's function or maintenance.

No Review Required: For projects outside HCFCD right-of-way that do not impact HCFCD's function or maintenance, HCFCD does not need to review the project or feature.

Note**:** In no case shall the response of HCFCD be considered as acting or performing the duties of the licensed Texas professional engineer with regard to analysis, design, or inspection performed under his supervision. HCFCD's review and signature on a construction drawing does not mean analysis and design associated with the project have been reviewed in detail.

Signature Expiration 2.3.5

HCFCD approvals or signatures on construction drawings or responses to drainage or design reports are valid for two years from the date of the signature. If construction or construction drawings are not started within two years of HCFCD's signature, resubmit the construction drawings for review with changes and revisions clearly noted.

HCFCD approvals or responses to master drainage plan reports for multi-phase development projects are valid for five years from the date of the signature.

2.4 Review and Coordination Process Overview

Introduction 2.4.1

This Section outlines the review and coordination process for property owners, developers, public agencies, private utility companies, utility districts, and homeowner groups to build a new HCFCD facility; modify an existing HCFCD facility; build a new development or facility on a site; or construct environmental, aesthetic, or recreation features in a HCFCD facility.

Departments and Responsibilities 2.4.2

The Harris County Permit Office is responsible for:

- Logging and tracking submittals to HCFCD.
- FEMA compliance in unincorporated Harris County.
- TPDES compliance in unincorporated Harris County.
- Issuance of certificates to work in HCFCD right-of-way.

The following HCFCD Departments and Sections are directly involved in project reviews and coordination. Other HCFCD Departments and Sections are brought in, as needed.

<u>HCFCD Project Review Section (PRS)</u>: Reviews private development and public agency projects that comply with policies and criteria. Signs construction drawings on behalf of HCFCD. Focus is:

- Drainage and engineering issues.
- Right-of-way determination/requirement (alignments and widths).
- Hydrologic and hydraulic analysis review.
- Public and private utilities and pipelines.

<u>HCFCD Property Management Department (PRM)</u>: Responsible for management and maintenance of HCFCD facilities, and monitoring and acceptance of construction by others in HCFCD right-of-way. Reviews projects by others that request variances or require special attention. Focus is:

- Assuring the HCFCD facility or feature can be maintained.
- Right-of-way determinations (alignments and widths) and processing dedications, conveyances, leases, access rights, etc.
- Recreation (like walking and bike trails).
- Tree and shrub plantings.
- Interlocal and maintenance agreements.

<u>HCFCD Environmental Services Department</u>: Oversees environmental and archeological compliance including permitting and mitigation.

Continued on next page

2.4 Review and Coordination Process Overview, Continued

Process Overview 2.4.3

The table below is an overview of the review and coordination process. Exhibit 2-1 shows the overall process. Each stage of the process is explained in detail in subsequent sections.

Stage	Who Does It	What Happens
1 Initiation	Applicant	Submits preliminary assessment form. (Can combine with Stage 2.)
	HCFCD (PRS or PRM)	Reviews and responds appropriately.
2 Drainage or Design Report	Applicant	Prepares and submits drainage or design report.
	HCFCD (PRS or PRM)	Reviews and responds appropriately (see Section 2.3.4, Document Responses).
3 Construction Drawings	Applicant	Prepares construction drawings.
	HCFCD (PRS)	Reviews and responds appropriately, and signs plans (see Section 2.3.4, Document Responses).
4 Construction	Applicant	Obtains permit to enter HCFCD facility and notifies HCFCD prior to beginning work. Constructs project, inspects work, and certifies completed work.
	HCFCD (PRM)	Monitors ongoing work and confirms work completed satisfactorily.
5 Acceptance	HCFCD (PRM)	After one year warranty period, accepts work for maintenance in a HCFCD facility when all requirements in acceptance application are completed; OR Allows non-flood control feature in a HCFCD facility (owner maintains) when all requirements are satisfied and construction completed satisfactorily.

Note:
PRS: HCFCD Project Review Section
PRM: HCFCD Property Management Department

Continued on next page

2.4 Review and Coordination Process Overview, Continued

Concurrent Activities 2.4.4

Working on concurrent activities as early in the process as possible can facilitate project completion. Possible concurrent activities shown in Exhibit 2-1 are:

- Variance requests (see Section 2.5).
- Environmental permitting (see Section 17).
- Dedication or conveyance of HCFCD right-of-way (see Sections 2.11, 2.12, and 15).
- Purchase of right-of-way for a non-flood control feature (see Sections 2.11 and 15).
- Negotiation and execution of interlocal agreement (see Section 2.13).
- Execution of turf establishment agreement with HCFCD (see Section 2.7).

2.5 Variances

Introduction 2.5.1

Good engineering practice and practical considerations are necessary when developing stormwater management plans and preparing construction drawings for specific projects. The criteria in this manual cannot cover every possibility.

The closer the criteria are followed, the more likely the plan or drawing will be approved and the construction accepted. For those situations where varying from the criteria is warranted, a variance process is described below.

Submittal 2.5.2

Submit variance requests in writing on the Request for Variance from HCFCD Form provided in Appendix B as early as possible. The variance request must include the following:

- The specific criteria that you want to vary.
- Why the criteria needs to be varied.
- How the basis for the criteria will still be satisfied or why the criteria is not applicable.
- Indicate if there are no criteria for the proposed analysis, design, or feature in this manual.
- Appropriate technical information supporting the variance request, such as calculations, excerpts from the drainage or design plan, and/or construction drawings.

Note: Submittals with insufficient technical information to support the variance request will be returned without review.

HCFCD Response 2.5.3

HCFCD will either approve or reject the variance in writing on the variance request form. If it is rejected, a written explanation will be provided.

The HCFCD Director and his appointees approve or reject variances.

2.6 Noncompliance

Introduction 2.6.1

If the Acceptance Criteria are not satisfied and the procedures are not followed in this manual, HCFCD has no obligation to accept the facility or infrastructure for maintenance.

Possible Consequences 2.6.2

HCFCD will give the owner or developer of a project a reasonable opportunity to satisfy the criteria and follow the procedures. If an impasse is reached, some of the possible situations and consequences of noncompliance are presented below.

Before Construction Begins 2.6.3

During the development of the drainage or design report, or construction drawings, possible consequences of noncompliance are:

- The proposed infrastructure or project is not approved by HCFCD.
- Work cannot take place in a HCFCD right-of-way.

After Construction Begins 2.6.4

After construction begins or is completed, possible consequences of noncompliance are:

- Giving bond company the opportunity to bring into compliance.
- HCFCD will not accept the facility and the owner or developer maintains the channel or detention basin.
- The owner or developer is referred to the County Attorney's Office.

2.7 Turf Establishment Responsibility

Turf Establishment Responsibility 2.7.1

The entity or developer that disturbs the existing or proposed HCFCD right-of-way is responsible for establishing the turf prior to final acceptance of the work. Minimum criteria for turf acceptance are in Section 10.3, Turf Establishment.

The entity or developer has the option to enter into an agreement with HCFCD to perform turf establishment. If the entity or developer satisfies the terms of the turf establishment agreement, including paying the designated fee, then HCFCD will provide turf establishment and vegetation management. The entity or developer will not be held responsible for satisfying the turf establishment criteria prior to final inspection or acceptance.

2.8 New or Modified HCFCD Facilities

Introduction 2.8.1

This Section covers the specific review and coordination process for projects by others that create new or modify existing HCFCD maintained facilities.

Responsible Departments 2.8.2

Reports and construction drawings are submitted through the Harris County Permit Office for logging and tracking purposes.

The HCFCD Project Review Section reviews projects to ensure compliance with the policies and criteria in this manual and signs construction drawings.

The HCFCD Property Management Department reviews and approves projects that request certain variances and monitors construction and accepts completed projects.

See Section 2.4, Review and Coordination Process Overview.

Federal Channels and Detention Basins 2.8.3

Any work in a channel or detention basin constructed as part of a U.S. Army Corps of Engineers project must be approved by the Corps of Engineers, Galveston District. See Section 2.14, Federal Projects for additional information and requirements.

2.8.4 Stage 1, Initiation New or Modified HCFCD Facilities

Preliminary Assessment 2.8.4.1

Fill out the Preliminary Assessment of HCFCD Requirements Form and submit to the HCFCD Project Review Section through the Harris County Permit Office. The form is available in Appendix B, Forms.

The information required for HCFCD's initial review of the proposed project is:

- The type, location, and size of the proposed project.
- Available topographic information.
- Existing and proposed preliminary drainage route.
- Existing land use or condition.
- Adjacent land use.
- Existing roads.
- Proximity to existing HCFCD maintained facilities.
- Indication if the owner intends HCFCD to maintain the proposed new facility or feature or modification of an existing HCFCD facility.
- Any known factors that could affect the drainage or design plan, such as jurisdictional wetlands, limited outfall depth, existing drainage problems, existing channel or detention condition, floodplain limits, floodplain elevations, floodway limits, etc.

HCFCD Response 2.8.4.2

The HCFCD Project Review Section will work closely with the applicant at this initiation stage. Possible responses are:

- Request more detailed information or a meeting to better understand the proposed project.
- Letter indicating the HCFCD review process is complete.
- Letter with specific HCFCD requirements unique to the proposed project.
- Referral to and response from the HCFCD Property Management Department.
- Request submittal of a drainage or design report or construction drawings.

2.8.5 Stage 2, Drainage or Design Report New or Modified HCFCD Facilities

Overview 2.8.5.1

Drainage or design reports are required for new or modified HCFCD maintained facilities to confirm the proposed project is designed in accordance with the policies and criteria in this manual and sound engineering practice. Drainage reports may also be required to confirm development or public projects do not increase flood risks or flood hazards, or create new flood hazard areas.

A drainage or design report also documents, identifies, and resolves issues early in the project development which facilitates completion of the construction drawings and a successful project.

Common Topics 2.8.5.2

Some common topics a drainage or design report can address are:

- Development and drainage plan layout.
- Hydrology and hydraulics analysis.
- Existing and proposed drainage facility layouts.
- Right-of-Way, existing and proposed.
- Pipelines and utilities.
- Stormwater quality features.
- Geotechnical issues.
- Structural design issues.
- Environmental permits.
- Turf establishment plan.
- Maintenance access plan.

Report Requirements 2.8.5.3

Minimum report requirements are provided in Section 19, Report Requirements.

HCFCD Response 2.8.5.4

The HCFCD Project Review Section or Property Management Department will work closely with the applicant during development of the drainage or design report providing comments and feedback.

One of the document responses listed in Section 2.3.4, Document Responses will be issued for the report.

2.8.6 Stage 3, Construction Drawings New or Modified HCFCD Facilities

Overview 2.8.6.1

Following completion of the drainage or design report, the next stage involves design and preparation of construction drawings.

Scale Drawings 2.8.6.2

Include scale drawings of hydraulic structures and associated details with typical sections, dimensions, notes, and references to construction specifications, as appropriate.

Design Details 2.8.6.3

Use standard details only where applicable. HCFCD standard details are in Appendix D, Standards and Details.

When the design engineer determines a structural analysis is needed for non-standard hydraulic structures, submit the analysis with the construction drawings and design details.

Standard Notes 2.8.6.4

Standard notes for construction drawings are required when work is proposed in or adjacent to existing or proposed HCFCD maintained facilities. HCFCD Standard Notes for Construction Drawings are in Appendix D, Standards and Details.

Checklists 2.8.6.5

To facilitate the preparation of the construction drawings by the engineer and the review of the drawings by HCFCD, checklists are provided in Appendix C, Checklists. Checklists are provided for the following types of projects:

- Projects with Storm Sewer Outfalls
- Channels
- Detention Basins
- Bridges and Culverts
- Wastewater Treatment Plants
- Pipeline/Utility Crossings.
- Recreation, Environmental, and Aesthetic Features.

These are the most common project types submitted to HCFCD. If a checklist does not exist for another type of project that will be submitted to HCFCD, please contact the HCFCD Project Review Section.

Continued on next page

2.8.6 Stage 3, Construction Drawings New or Modified HCFCD Facilities, Continued

Review Procedure 2.8.6.6

The following is the review procedure for construction drawings submitted to the HCFCD Project Review Section.

Step	Who Does It	Action
1	Design Engineer	Submits: • One set of prints. • Completed checklist. • Geotechnical report, if necessary. • List of permits needed. • Applicable correspondence concerning the project. • Drainage or design report or reference report if already submitted and approved.
2	HCFCD	Reviews construction drawings and returns mark-ups to design engineer.
3	Design Engineer	Revises construction drawings, if necessary. Contacts HCFCD if there are any questions or issues.
4	Design Engineer	Submits final construction drawings – originals, one print, checklist, and mark-ups.
5	HCFCD	Confirms final construction drawings are in compliance. Drawings are signed and originals returned to design engineer.

Note: For work in a U.S. Army Corps of Engineers' channel or detention basin, see Section 2.14, Federal Projects.

Changes to Drawings 2.8.6.7

After the HCFCD Project Review Section signs construction drawings, changes to the project may occur during review by other agencies or during construction. HCFCD cannot answer questions during construction or accept the work if the changes are not accurately documented on the construction drawings.

Document changes that affect the design or layout of the work in the existing or proposed HCFCD facility on the drawings and resubmit for another signature as soon as practical.

2.8.7 Stage 4, Construction New or Modified HCFCD Facilities

Overview 2.8.7.1

The construction stage is broken down into three sub-stages:

- Pre-construction
- During construction
- Post construction.

Pre-Construction 2.8.7.2

1. The applicant obtains a certification by the Harris County Engineer to enter HCFCD right-of-way which requires submittal of:
   - The construction drawings approved by HCFCD.
   - A properly executed one-year maintenance bond payable to Harris County issued in the name of the contractor. (Bond forms are available in the Harris County Permit Office.)
   - One copy of all applicable permits obtained for the project, including but not limited to, the Corps of Engineers' Section 404 permit, the TPDES permit, and the permit to build in the floodplain; or a letter from the owner's engineer stating no permits are needed.
2. Forty-eight hours prior to entering an existing HCFCD facility or beginning work on a proposed HCFCD facility, the design engineer or contractor must submit a completed copy of the 48 Hour Pre-construction Notification Form provided in Appendix B, Forms, to the HCFCD Property Management Department with the following attachments:
   - One copy of the construction drawings signed by HCFCD.
   - One copy of the certficate to enter the HCFCD right-of-way.
   - One copy of the executed turf establishment agreement and proof of payment, if applicable.

During Construction 2.8.7.3

HCFCD requires the owner's engineer to certify the work was constructed according to the signed construction drawings. Therefore, the owner's engineer or someone under his supervision should perform inspections during construction.

The HCFCD Property Management Department is available to answer questions during construction. If problems develop, the engineer is encouraged to contact HCFCD.

Continued on next page

2.8.7 Stage 4, Construction New or Modified HCFCD Facilities, Continued

Post Construction 2.8.7.4

The owner's engineer or public agency must submit a written request for an inspection to the HCFCD Property Management Department. Prior to the HCFCD inspection, stake and flag the HCFCD right-of-way. Include the following with the request:

- One set of sealed record construction drawings.
- Written certification that the work was constructed in substantial conformance with the sealed construction drawings (see Certification of Construction Completion in Appendix B, Forms).
- Written certification that the work was performed in conformance with the applicable permits and approvals.

The owner's engineer or public agency may be requested to provide copies of the inspection reports, laboratory reports, delivery tickets, and photographs before, during, and after construction.

If deficiencies are found, the HCFCD inspector will document them and provide a written list to the design engineer. All deficiencies must be completed or repaired prior to HCFCD's issuance of the letter acknowledging the work was constructed according to the construction drawings.

2.8.8 Stage 5, Acceptance for HCFCD Maintenance New or Modified HCFCD Facilities

Acceptance for HCFCD Maintenance 2.8.8.1

The process to complete acceptance of work for HCFCD maintenance is as follows:

Step	Who Does It	Action
1	Owner's Engineer or Public Agency	Conducts inspection and submits: • Certification of Construction Completion (see Appendix B, Forms). • Executed Interlocal and/or Turf Establishment Agreements, if applicable.
2	HCFCD Property Management Dept.	Conducts inspection with the design engineer or public agency and issues letter acknowledging work completed according to construction drawings. (Starts one-year warranty period.)
3	Owner or Public Agency	Performs responsibilities specified in Section 2.8.8.2 during the one-year warranty period.
4	Owner's Engineer or Public Agency	At the end of the one-year warranty period, submits a completed "Application for Acceptance of Maintenance of a Drainage/Detention Facility" (see Appendix B, Forms).
5	HCFCD Property Management Dept.	Conducts inspection with the design engineer or public agency.
6	Owner or Public Agency	Corrects any deficiencies, if necessary, and engineer certifies all conditions satisfied.
7	HCFCD Property Management Dept.	Conducts final inspection with the owner's engineer or public agency to confirm deficiencies corrected and work acceptable.
8	HCFCD Property Management Dept.	Sends recommendation to Commissioners Court to approve final acceptance for HCFCD maintenance.

Continued on next page

2.8.8 Stage 5, Acceptance for HCFCD Maintenance New or Modified HCFCD Facilities, Continued

One Year Warranty Responsibilities 2.8.8.2

The owner's or public agency's responsibilities for the work or facility, unless otherwise noted, during the one-year warranty period are as follows:

Maintenance and Repairs:

- The owner or public agency is responsible for maintenance of the work or facility and correcting or repairing deficiencies.
- The contractor is required to have a maintenance bond in effect until final acceptance.
- HCFCD will use the bond to make repairs if the owner does not make them.

Turf Establishment:

- Owner or public agency establishes the turf and satisfies minimum turf requirements to receive final acceptance (see Section 10.3, Turf Establishment).

- OR -

- Owner or public agency executes contract and pays the turf establishment fee to HCFCD (see Section 10.3, Turf Establishment).
  - HCFCD establishes the turf and vegetation during the one-year warranty period.
  - HCFCD waives any deficiencies related to turf establishment noted during final inspection.

Longer Warranty Period:

The warranty period can be longer than one year if the owner or public agency has not corrected all deficiencies or satisfied all conditions of final acceptance.

2.9 Non-Flood Control Features

Introduction 2.9.1

This Section covers the specific review and coordination process for features placed and maintained by others in, on, over, or under a HCFCD maintained facility. Examples include access roads, parking lots, waterlines, sanitary sewer lines, utilities, pipelines, and environmental, aesthetic, and recreation features.

The criteria for allowing non-flood control features are in Section 2.2, Acceptance Criteria.

Responsible Departments 2.9.2

Reports and construction drawings are submitted through the Harris County Permit Office for logging and tracking purposes.

HCFCD Project Review Section reviews projects that comply with policies and criteria in this manual and signs construction drawings. They also review pipeline and utility line installations.

HCFCD Property Management Department reviews and approves projects that request certain variances and environmental and recreation features. The Property Management Department also monitors construction and acknowledges completed projects.

See Section 2.4, Review and Coordination Process Overview.

Water Quality Features 2.9.3

For water quality features in a HCFCD maintained facility, see Section 16, Water Quality Features.

Federal Channels and Detention Basins 2.9.4

Any work in a channel or detention basin constructed as part of a U.S. Army Corps of Engineers project must be approved by the Corps of Engineers, Galveston District. See Section 2.14, Federal Projects for additional information and requirements.

2.9.5 Stage 1, Initiation
Non-Flood Control Features

Preliminary Evaluation 2.9.5.1

Prepare a written description of the proposed feature and submit to the HCFCD Project Review Section.

The information required for HCFCD's initial evaluation of the proposed feature is:

- The type, location, and layout of the proposed feature.
- Existing or proposed flood control facility layout where the feature would be located.
- Existing or proposed right-of-way for the HCFCD facility.
- Adjacent land use and roads.
- Property ownership information.
- Any known factors that could affect the feature and flood control facility such as jurisdictional wetlands, existing drainage problems, existing facility conditions, or community support or opposition.

HCFCD Response 2.9.5.2

This table lists some of the possible HCFCD responses to the written description:

- Request more detailed information or a meeting to better understand the proposed project.
- Letter indicating the HCFCD review process is complete.
- Letter with specific HCFCD requirements unique to the proposed project.
- Referral to and response from the HCFCD Property Management Department.
- Request submittal of a drainage or design report or construction drawings.

2.9.6 Stage 2, Drainage or Design Report Non-Flood Control Features

Overview 2.9.6.1

Drainage or design reports are required for proposed features that can potentially increase flood risks or flood hazards or significantly alter a HCFCD facility.

Close coordination with the appropriate HCFCD department is encouraged.

Involvement of other government entities and/or community organizations is recommended and required for some features.

Common Topics 2.9.6.2

Some common topics a drainage or design report can address are:

- Acknowledgement of the criteria listed in Section 2.2, Acceptance Criteria.
- Feature layout within the HCFCD facility.
- Effect of feature on the HCFCD facility.
- Drainage/mitigation plan.
- HCFCD right-of-way – existing and proposed.
- Feature right-of-way – existing and proposed.
- Maintenance plan for the feature.
- Environmental permits.
- Turf or vegetation establishment plan.

Report Requirements 2.9.6.3

Minimum report requirements are provided in Section 19, Report Requirements.

HCFCD Response 2.9.6.4

HCFCD will work closely with the applicant during development of the drainage and design report providing comments and feedback. One of the document responses listed in Section 2.3.4, Document Responses, will be issued for the final report.

2.9.7 Stage 3, Construction Drawings Non-Flood Control Features

Overview 2.9.7.1

Following completion of the drainage or design report, the next stage involves design and preparation of construction drawings.

Scale Drawings 2.9.7.2

Include scale drawings of structures and associated details with typical sections, dimensions, notes, and references to construction specifications, as appropriate.

Design Details 2.9.7.3

Use standard details only where applicable. HCFCD standard details are in Appendix D, Standards and Details.

When the design engineer determines a structural analysis is needed for non-standard hydraulic structures, submit the analysis with the construction drawings and design details.

Standard Notes 2.9.7.4

Standard notes for construction drawings are required when work is proposed in existing or proposed HCFCD maintained facilities. HCFCD Standard Notes for Construction Drawings are in Appendix D, Standards and Details.

Checklists 2.9.7.5

To facilitate the preparation of the construction drawings by the design engineer and review of the drawings by HCFCD, checklists are provided in Appendix C, Checklists. Checklists are provided for the following types of non-flood control projects:

- Projects with Storm Sewer Outfalls.
- Bridges and Culverts.
- Wastewater Treatment Plants.
- Pipeline/Utility Crossings.
- Recreation, Environmental, and Aesthetic Features.

If a checklist does not exist for a type of project not listed above that will be submitted to HCFCD, please contact the HCFCD Project Review Section.

Continued on next page

2.9.7 Stage 3, Construction Drawings Non-Flood Control Features, Continued

Review Procedure 2.9.7.6

The following is the typical review procedure for non-flood control feature construction drawings. This procedure can change if an interlocal agreement specifies a different procedure or other government entities are involved.

Step	Who Does It	Action
1	Design Engineer	Submits: • One set of prints. • Completed checklist. • Geotechnical report, if necessary. • List of permits needed. • Applicable correspondence concerning the project. • Drainage or design report or references report if already submitted and approved.
2	HCFCD	Reviews construction drawings and returns mark-ups.
3	Design Engineer	Revises construction drawings, if necessary. Contacts HCFCD if there are questions or issues.
4	Design Engineer	Submits final construction drawings – originals, one print, checklist, and mark-ups. Submits one copy of the fully-executed interlocal agreement with the public agency or feature sponsor, if applicable.
5	HCFCD	Confirms final construction drawings are in compliance and agreement fully-executed. Drawings are signed and returned.

Note: For work in a U.S. Army Corps of Engineers' channel or detention basin, see Section 2.14, Federal Projects.

Changes to Drawings 2.9.7.7

After HCFCD signs construction drawings, substantial changes to the feature may occur during review by other agencies or during construction. These changes must be documented on the drawings and resubmitted for another signature as soon as practical. HCFCD cannot monitor or acknowledge the feature in the HCFCD facility if the changes are not accurately documented on the construction drawings.

2.9.8 Stage 4, Construction Non-Flood Control Features

Overview 2.9.8.1

The emphasis of HCFCD monitoring is the integrity and restoration of the HCFCD facility, not the non-flood control feature.

The construction stage is broken down into three sub-stages:

- Pre-construction
- During construction
- Post construction.

Pre-Construction 2.9.8.2

1. The applicant obtains a certification by the Harris County Engineer to enter HCFCD right-of-way, which requires submittal of:
   - The construction drawings approved by HCFCD.
   - A properly executed two-year performance bond payable to Harris County issued in the name of the contractor, unless there is an executed agreement with Harris County Commissioners Court. (Bond forms are available in the Harris County Permit Office.)
   - One copy of all applicable permits obtained for the project, including but not limited to, the Corps of Engineers' Section 404 permit, the TPDES permit, and the permit to build in the floodplain; or a letter from the owner's engineer stating no permits are needed.
2. Forty-eight hours prior to entering an existing HCFCD facility or beginning work on a proposed HCFCD facility, the design engineer or contractor must submit a completed copy of the 48 Hour Pre-construction Notification Form provided in Appendix B, Forms to the HCFCD Property Management Department with the following attachments:
   - One copy of the construction drawings signed by HCFCD.
   - One copy of the crtificate to enter the HCFCD right-of-way.
   - Proof of right-of-way for the feature, if applicable.

Continued on next page

2.9.8 Stage 4, Construction Non-Flood Control Features, Continued

During Construction 2.9.8.3

HCFCD requires the owner's engineer to certify the feature was constructed and the HCFCD facility was restored according to the signed construction drawings. Therefore, the owner's engineer or someone under his supervision should perform inspections during construction, particularly at key points.

The HCFCD Property Management Department is available to monitor the construction and answer questions. If problems develop, the owner's engineer is encouraged to contact HCFCD.

Post Construction 2.9.8.4

The owner's engineer or public agency must submit a written request for a final inspection. The following must be included with the request:

- One set of sealed record construction drawings.
- Written certification that the feature was constructed in substantial conformance with the sealed construction drawings (see Certification of Construction Completion in Appendix B, Forms).
- Written certification that the work was performed in conformance with the applicable permits and approvals.

The owner's engineer or public agency may be requested to provide copies of the inspection reports, laboratory reports, and photographs before, during, and after construction.

If deficiencies are found, the HCFCD inspector will document them and provide a written list to the owner's engineer. All deficiencies must be completed or repaired prior to acknowledgment of construction completion.

If deficiencies are satisfactorily corrected or no deficiencies are found, the HCFCD Property Management Department will issue a written acknowledgment of construction completion to the owner's engineer or public agency.

2.9.9 Stage 5, Acknowledgment Non-Flood Control Features

Overview 2.9.9.1

Features not maintained by HCFCD are allowed in HCFCD maintained facilities contingent upon completion and satisfaction of the criteria and procedures presented in this manual (see Section 2.2, Acceptance Criteria).

In some cases, a project could include a new or modified HCFCD maintained facility and incorporate a non-flood control feature that HCFCD would not maintain.

> Example: A detention basin constructed for a new roadway has a jogging trail on the maintenance berm. The detention basin would be accepted for HCFCD maintenance. The jogging trail would be allowed in the HCFCD facility, but maintained by the sponsor.

Acknowledging Features Allowed in a HCFCD Facility 2.9.9.2

The process for obtaining acknowledgment of a non-flood control feature in a HCFCD maintained facility is shown in the table below.

If the sponsor fails to complete the process to obtain acknowledgement after construction is initiated, the feature sponsor must remove the feature and restore the HCFCD facility to the condition prior to construction.

Step	Who Does It	Action
1	Owner's Engineer, Public Agency, or Sponsor	Submits a letter requesting inspection including a Certification of Construction Completion (see Appendix B, Forms).
2	HCFCD Property Management Dept.	Conducts inspection with the owner's engineer, public agency, or sponsor.
3	HCFCD Property Management Dept.	Issues final acknowledgment letter to the owner's engineer, public agency, or sponsor after all deficiencies are resolved.

2.10 Concurrent Activities

Concurrent Activities 2.10.1

Some projects will require some activities to take place while developing the drainage or design report, preparing construction drawings, and/or building the project.

Right-of-Way:

When a HCFCD right-of-way dedication or conveyance is needed, or the non-flood control feature needs right-of-way, begin the process early.

Platting:

When the development project is to be platted, begin the preparation and coordination with HCFCD.

Interlocal or Turf Establishment Agreements:

When an interlocal or turf establishment agreement is needed for the project or non-flood control feature, begin the preparation and coordination with HCFCD.

Acceptance for HCFCD Maintenance:

For projects that modify or create a new HCFCD facility, initiate all applicable activities as early as necessary to complete the "Application for Acceptance of Maintenance of a Drainage/Detention Facility"

Non-Flood Control Features Allowed in a HCFCD facility:

For non-flood control features in a HCFCD maintained facility, initiate all applicable activities as early as necessary to obtain an acknowledgment of construction completion.

2.11 Right-of-Way

HCFCD Right-of-Way Conveyance or Dedication 2.11.1

For projects requiring new or additional right-of-way, initiate dedication to the public or conveyance to HCFCD as early in the process as possible.

HCFCD will not accept the work until the right-of-way dedication or conveyance is completed. The dedication and conveyance process is presented in this manual in Section 15, Right-of-Way.

Right-of-Way for Non-Flood Control Features 2.11.2

If the proposed non-flood control feature requires new or additional right-of-way, the sponsor should begin to acquire the right-of-way as early in the process as possible.

HCFCD will not allow construction of the non-flood control feature in the HCFCD facility until the right-of-way dedication or conveyance for the feature is completed.

Property Ownership Determination 2.11.3

The sponsor is required to provide a property ownership map and deeds showing existing property ownerships and easements relative to the proposed feature location.

The HCFCD Property Management Department will make its right-of-way information available upon request.

Abstracting right-of-way is the sponsor's responsibility.

HCFCD Fee Strip 2.11.4

If HCFCD has fee ownership at the location of the proposed non-flood control feature, sponsors must obtain an easement from HCFCD for the proposed feature.

The process for obtaining an easement from HCFCD for a non-flood control feature is presented in this manual in Section 15.4, Easements for Pipelines, Utilities, and Roadways.

HCFCD or Public Easement 2.11.5

If HCFCD or public has an easement at the location of the proposed non-flood control feature, the sponsor is responsible for obtaining an easement or written legal permission from the fee owner for the proposed feature.

2.12 Plats

Overview 2.12.1

HCFCD only reviews plats to confirm that the existing HCFCD right-of-way is shown accurately and that the new public drainage easements for HCFCD maintained facilities are dedicated where required.

Plats Reviewed 2.12.2

HCFCD only reviews plats that are adjacent to existing or proposed HCFCD maintained facilities.

Plat Reviews 2.12.3

The HCFCD does not review preliminary plats for adequacy or information other than stated above.

A list of HCFCD related items which must be included on final plats is in the Plat Checklist provided in Appendix C, Checklists.

Plat Release Letters 2.12.4

Release of the final plat for signatures and recording requires the following:

- Information on plat must be complete and correct.
- All construction drawings associated with the plat must be signed and prints provided for HCFCD files, where applicable.

The final plat review process for City of Houston plats is as follows:

Step	Who Does It	Action
1	Design Engineer	Submits two prints of the final plat, City of Houston CP101 form, mark-up from previous submission, and one print of the signed construction drawings, if applicable.
2	HCFCD	Reviews the final plat.
3	HCFCD	If plat requires corrections, the design engineer is informed of the deficiencies.
4	Design Engineer	Changes made, if necessary, and plat is resubmitted to HCFCD.
5	HCFCD	If the plat is satisfactory, a release letter is sent directly to the City of Houston Planning Department. Delivery of the release letter by the design engineer is not permissible. If requested, a copy of the release letter can be provided.

2.13 Interlocal Agreements

Overview 2.13.1

An interlocal agreement between HCFCD and another public agency or non-flood control feature sponsor is sometimes necessary to:

- Allow an agency or feature sponsor to work or build in the HCFCD right-of-way.
- Jointly fund a project.
- Identify ownership and maintenance responsibilities.

Coordination 2.13.2

Coordinate preparation of interlocal agreements with the HCFCD Property Management Department or Program Management Section, as appropriate. The Harris County Attorney assigned to HCFCD must review and approve all agreements.

Since interlocal agreements can take time to complete, start them as early as possible, such as near the completion of the Drainage or Design Report, Stage 2.

The interlocal agreement must be fully-executed prior to beginning construction.

Guidelines 2.13.3

Typical guidelines are:

- HCFCD can enter into interlocal agreements only with other governmental entities such as cities, TxDOT, and utility districts. HCFCD cannot enter into interlocal agreements with organizations such as homeowner associations. HCFCD can enter into landscape maintenance agreements with homeowner associations or individuals.
- One public entity cannot give something of value to another public entity. There must be some form of equitable compensation such as money, services, or overall benefit to the taxpayers.
- Reason for the interlocal agreement should be clearly stated in the recital (Whereas) statements.
- Responsibilities for each party should be clearly stated.
- For non-flood control features, include all applicable conditions listed in Section 2.2, Acceptance Criteria.
- If the agreement creates an obligation on the part of HCFCD, the agreement must provide for funding.
- HCFCD cannot indemnify another party.
- Provisions for termination should be included.

2.14 Federal Projects

Overview
2.14.1

Modifications to channels or detention basins constructed as part of a U.S. Army Corps of Engineers project must be approved by the Corps of Engineers, Galveston District. The Corps of Engineers makes sure the effectiveness and integrity of federal flood control projects are not diminished by physical or structural changes.

Corps of Engineers' Projects
2.14.2

The Corps of Engineers' project locations currently requiring Corps of Engineers approval are as follows:

Channel	Reach
Brays Bayou	Calhoun to Old Westheimer Road
White Oak Bayou	Mouth to Cole Creek
Vince Bayou	Mouth to Hernandez Street
Little Vince Bayou	Mouth to Wichita Street
Buffalo Bayou	Sam Houston Tollway to S.H. 6
Clear Creek	Second Outlet Channel at S.H. 146
Sims Bayou	Mouth to Mykawa Road
Detention Basin	**Location**
Addicks Reservoir	West Harris County
Barker Reservoir	West Harris County
Buyouts	**Location**
Cypress Creek	Varied

Buyouts
2.14.3

Land use requirements exist for land purchased by HCFCD as part of a Corps of Engineers or Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) buyout program.

FEMA buyout properties are located in various locations in Harris County. Coordinate proposed modifications to these properties with HCFCD as early as possible.

Continued on next page

2.14 Federal Projects, Continued

Projects Reviewed 2.14.4

Typical projects the HCFCD and Corps of Engineers review are:

- Channel enlargements or modifications
- Detention basin modifications
- Storm sewer outfall pipes, both new and modifications
- Bridge and utility crossings, both new and modifications
- Addition of non-flood control features such as trees and trails.

Basically, any project that modifies or is within a channel or detention basin constructed as part of a Corps of Engineers project needs to be reviewed, as well as, any modification of land acquired as part of a Corps of Engineers or FEMA buyout project.

Continued on next page

2.14 Federal Projects, Continued

Review Procedure for Corps of Engineers' Projects 2.14.5

The following table shows the review procedure for construction drawings submitted to the HCFCD Project Review Section for projects constructed or funded by the Corps of Engineers.

Step	Who Does It	Action
1	Design Engineer	Proceeds with Stage 1, Initiation and Stage 2, Drainage or Design Report with the appropriate HCFCD Department.
2	HCFCD	Provides specific design criteria for the subject reach or location.
3	Design Engineer	Submits one set of prints and completed checklist.
4	HCFCD	Reviews construction drawings and returns mark-ups to design engineer.
5	Design Engineer	Revises construction drawings, if necessary. Contacts HCFCD if there are any questions or issues. Submits print, checklists, and markups.
6	HCFCD	Confirms final construction drawings are in compliance. Notifies design engineer.
7	Design Engineer	Submits two 11" x 17" sealed paper copies of construction drawings to HCFCD.
8	HCFCD	Forwards the two copies to the Corps of Engineers, Galveston District for their review, comments, and concurrence.
9	Corps of Engineers	Sends a reply to HCFCD with comments or concurrence (allow 2 to 4 weeks for reply).
10	HCFCD	Notifies design engineer of Corps of Engineers concurrence.
11	Design Engineer	Submits final construction drawings – original, two prints, checklists, and markups, to HCFCD.
12	HCFCD	Signs drawings and returns originals to design engineer.

2.15 Regional Flood Control Projects

Introduction 2.15.1

The HCFCD supports regional drainage as stated in Section 1.3.7, Policy VII: HCFCD Support of Regional Drainage. Regional projects are generally more efficient and reliable than individual projects.

Adopted Regional Projects 2.15.2

The regional project watersheds, Harris County Commissioners Court approval dates, and adopted impact fees are:

Watershed	Approval Date	Fee
White Oak Bayou	November 6, 1984	$3,000/acre
Brays Bayou	October 15, 1985	$7,000/acre
Sims Bayou	October 15, 1985	$3,000/acre
Langham Creek	March 25, 1986	$3,100/acre
Greens Bayou	June 24, 1986	$3,300/acre
Cypress Creek	November 18, 1986	$4,000/acre

Previous Commissioner Court Actions 2.15.3

This manual replaces the regional plan implementation clarifications adopted by Commissioners Court on April 3, 1990; November 13, 1990; February 5, 1991; and August 8, 2000.

New Development 2.15.4

New development is defined as any increase in impervious cover or change in land condition that affects the amount or rate of runoff from a property. The relationship between land use, percent impervious, and percent development is provided in Section 3.5.1, Relationship to Development.

New development acreage as used to calculate detention volume or impact fees is determined using the entire property, not just the area of impervious cover or drainage improvement, unless a substantial portion is left undisturbed.

Example: Single family subdivisions with lots less than ¼ acre and schools with open areas built on undeveloped property are considered new development.

Continued on next page

2.15 Regional Flood Control Projects, Continued

Detention Volume and Impact Fee Calculation 2.15.5

The acreage used to calculate detention volume or impact fees is the new development acreage minus:

- Existing or proposed HCFCD right-of-way.
- Proposed right-of-way along existing major thoroughfares intended for road widening.
- Major pipeline or energy corridors not useful for development.

Impact Fee Collection Criteria 2.15.6

Impact fees can only be collected in watersheds or subwatersheds:

- With a regional or master plan adopted by Harris County Commissioners Court,
- Where system capacity exists for the new development as determined by the HCFCD and accepted by Harris County Commissioners Court, and
- Where the new development can convey its 10% and 1% exceedance probability runoff to the regional project without increasing flood risks for others.

Impact Fee Payment 2.15.7

Rules regarding impact fee payments are as follows:

- Pay impact fees in full by cashiers check made payable to the HCFCD prior to plan approval.
- Apply previous partial payments, if any, to the amount due.
- Permanent improvements to the regional project constructed or contributed by a developer in accordance with a formal agreement with the HCFCD can be recognized as payment toward the amount due.
- No land shall pay the full fee more than once.
- If another government agency requires site-specific detention and the detention facility constructed equals or exceeds HCFCD criteria in this manual, then no impact fee is required. If the detention volume does not equal or exceed HCFCD criteria, then the impact fee is reduced proportional to the ratio of detention volume provided.

Continued on next page

2.15 Regional Flood Control Projects, Continued

Alternative to Site-Specific Detention 2.15.8

As an alternative to site-specific detention in a watershed with a regional program and system capacity is not available, the new development may, upon approval by HCFCD, construct components of the regional project to mitigate its impact. The following criteria apply:

- The new development demonstrates to the satisfaction of the flood plain administrator and HCFCD that the proposed work mitigates the impact.
- The new development can convey its runoff to the regional project without increasing flood risks for others.
- Reasonable and necessary cost for such improvement (land, engineering, and construction) is submitted for verification.
- Costs in excess of the established impact fee are borne by the new development.
- If costs are less than the impact fee due, the difference is paid to the HCFCD.

Interim Site-Specific Detention 2.15.9

Site-specific detention facilities can be classified as interim if an agreement is approved by Commissioners Court and all costs associated with reclaiming the interim facility is borne by the development interest. The interim designation allows the detention facility to be taken out of service and the land reclaimed for development or other purpose when:

- All criteria is satisfied in Section 2.15.6, Impact Fee Collection Criteria, and
- The impact fee in place when the interim facility is removed is paid.

One Acre Limit 2.15.10

Due to practical considerations and questionable effectiveness, new developments less than or equal to one acre can pay the impact fee in accordance with Section 2.15.7, Impact Fee Payment instead of providing site specific detention.

Continued on next page

2.15 Regional Flood Control Projects, Continued

Compliance Summary 2.15.11

Based on the policies and criteria in this manual, the table below is provided to assist in determining HCFCD requirements for a new development project.

Conditions	Provide Site Specific Detention	Pay Impact Fee	Comments
Regional Watershed Program			
• System Capacity Available • Can Convey Runoff to Regional Project Without Impact • New Development – Any Size		X	See Section 2.15.7, Impact Fee Payment
• System Capacity Not Available • New Development >1 acre	X		See Section 2.15.8, Alternatives to Site-Specific Detention
• System Capacity Not Available • New Development ≤ 1 acre		X	See Section 2.15.7, Impact Fee Payment

No Regional Watershed Program – See Section 6.1.1, When to Use, and Section 6.1.2, Where Not Required.

Stage 1
Initiation
(Can combine w/Stage 2)

→

Stage 2
Drainage or Design Report

→

Stage 3
Construction Drawings

→

Stage 4
Construction

→

Stage 5
Acceptance

CONCURRENT ACTIVITIES

- Coordination with Facility Maintenance/Environmental/Planning/Capital Improvements/Corp of Engineers, as needed
- Variance Submission and Review
- Right-of-Way Dedication/Conveyance to HCFCD or Public
- Right-of-Way Purchase from HCFCD
- Agreements (Turf, Interlocals, etc.)

Harris County Flood Control District — POLICY, CRITERIA, & PROCEDURE MANUAL	REVIEW & COORDINATION PROCESS FOR WORK IN A NEW OR EXISTING HCFCD FACILITY	
	DATE: 10/5/04	EXHIBIT 2-1

SECTION 3 – HYDROLOGY

3.1 Introduction

Overview 3.1.1

Estimating peak discharges and routing flow hydrographs for existing and future conditions is necessary for the planning, analysis, and design of both new development and redevelopment and associated flood damage reduction facilities. This section presents hydrologic methodologies for use in Harris County.

When Analysis Is Required 3.1.2

A hydrologic analysis is required when:

- A new HCFCD maintained facility is proposed.
- An existing HCFCD maintained facility is modified.
- A private development or public agency project outfalls into a HCFCD maintained facility that was not designed and constructed for the proposed development's flows.
- A non-flood control feature is placed in or across a HCFCD maintained facility that would impact flows.
- Harris County requests HCFCD review of new developments in unincorporated Harris County.

Computer Models and Programs 3.1.3

Current effective models use the HEC-1 and HEC-2 computer programs. The 2004 TSARP remapping study used HEC-HMS and HEC-RAS. Use the most current model for the channel or watershed being studied, or the model required by the applicable floodplain administrator. Guidance documents for each study are available from HCFCD.

If a channel has not been modeled, an approximate or simplified application of the methodologies presented in this section may be sufficient. Coordination with HCFCD as early as possible is recommended.

In some cases, HEC-1 (HEC-HMS) and HEC-2 (HEC-RAS) cannot accurately model some projects or hydrologic conditions. Inform HCFCD in writing early in the review process of the computer program that will be used, justification for using the program(s), and provide program documentation, if required, to facilitate the review.

3.2 Methodology

Overview
3.2.1

The methodology selected depends primarily on the drainage area of the project. In some cases, the complexity of the design or level of accuracy may influence the method selected.

Discharge Methodologies
3.2.2

Two methods for determining discharges are listed below. Assumptions, limitations, and application guidance are covered in detail in subsequent sections.

Method	For …	Project Drainage Areas
Site Runoff Curves	Small	Less than 640 acres
Watershed Modeling	Large	Greater than 640 acres

Note: Prior to applying the Watershed Modeling Method to areas less than 640 acres, please coordinate with HCFCD.

Simplified Hydrograph Methodology
3.2.3

A simplified method for developing a hydrograph in conjunction with the Site Runoff Curves is presented in Section 3.6, Small Watershed Hydrograph Method.

3.3 Site Runoff Curves

Introduction 3.3.1

Site Runoff Curves are a simplified method to determine peak discharges for relatively small areas which involve the design and analysis of stormwater detention facilities or overland sheet flow conditions for new developments.

Site Runoff Curves are based on the Watershed Modeling Method for Harris County so peak discharges could be determined for smaller areas using a consistent and simplified methodology.

Applications 3.3.2

Site Runoff Curves are used to determine peak flows for:

- Onsite detention facilities
- Overland flow situations (extreme event)
- Storm sewer systems or overland swales to handle the overland flow
- Closed conduits.

Limitations 3.3.3

Use Site Runoff Curves when:

- Only peak flows are needed.
- The Drainage area is less than 640 acres.

Do not use flows from the Site Runoff Curves to define or modify effective FEMA regulatory flood plains or floodway.

Site Runoff Curves 3.3.4

The 10% and 1% exceedance probability peak discharges are on the Site Runoff Curves in Exhibits 3-1 and 3-2, respectively. Two variables needed are:

- Size of the drainage area in acres.
- Amount of impervious cover defined as a percentage of the drainage area.

Continued on next page

3.3 Site Runoff Curves, Continued

Equations for Site Runoff Curves 3.3.5

The equation for the Site Runoff Curves is:

$$Q = bA^m$$

where: Q = peak discharge (cfs)

A = drainage area (acres)

m = 1.0 for 1 to 20 acres and
0.823 for more than 20 acres up to 640 acres

b = variable dependent on impervious cover. See table below.

Impervious Cover	10 % Prob.		1% Prob.	
	≤ 20 acres	> 20 acres	≤ 20 acres	> 20 acres
0%	1.2	2.1	2.0	3.4
10%	1.5	2.6	2.5	4.3
20%	1.8	3.1	3.1	5.3
30%	2.3	3.9	3.8	6.4
40%	2.7	4.6	4.3	7.3
85%	3.5	5.9	5.1	8.7

Notes:

Interpolate "b" linearly to determine peak discharges for percentages of impervious cover between those listed in the table.

For areas with more than 85% impervious cover, use the 85% impervious curve.

Plots of these curves are shown in Exhibits 3-1 and 3-2.

3.4 Watershed Modeling Method

Introduction 3.4.1

The Watershed Modeling Method involves use of the hydrologic methodology developed to identify regulatory flood plains in Harris County.

Applications 3.4.2

The Watershed Modeling Method is used when hydrograph analysis is needed to:

- Analyze and design channels and detention basins for new land development or public agency projects:
  - For drainage areas greater than 640 acres
  - Where correlation with existing HEC-1 (HEC-HMS) or HEC-2 (HEC-RAS) is necessary
  - Where development of runoff hydrographs with consistent timing is necessary.
- Define or modify effective FEMA regulatory flood plains or floodway due to the new development or changes to HCFCD maintained facilities.

Note: Since the Watershed Modeling Method was developed for drainage areas greater than 640 acres, results may not be valid for smaller areas.

Watershed Modeling Method for Harris County 3.4.3

Current guidance for watershed modeling in Harris County is in the ASCE Seminar document entitled "Hydrology for Harris County" dated March 1988. An update based on the TSARP floodplain update project will be issued by HCFCD.

3.5 Impervious Cover

Relationship to Development 3.5.1

The generalized relationship between percent land development and percent impervious cover is shown below for various land uses:

Land Use Categories	Land Use Descriptions	% Impervious	% Development
Undeveloped	Unimproved, natural, or agricultural	0	0
Residential – Rural Lot	≥ 5 acre ranch or farm	5	0
Residential – Large Lot	> ¼ acre or older neighborhoods with limited capacity roadside ditches	20	50
Residential – Small Lot	≤ ¼ acre or schools	40	100
Developed Green Areas	Parks or golf courses	15	50
Light Industrial/ Commercial	Office parks, nurseries, airports, warehouses, or manufacturing with non-paved areas	60	100
High Density	Commercial, business, industrial, or apartments	85	100
Isolated Transportation	Highway or major thoroughfare corridors	90	100
Water	Detention basins, lakes, channels, roadside ditches	100	100

Note: Based on TSARP Floodplain Determination Study.

Detention Basins, Lakes, and Channels 3.5.2

Consider detention basins, lakes, channels, and roadside ditches to be 100% impervious when conducting hydrologic analysis for estimating runoff or sizing HCFCD facilities. Use the area within the top of bank.

3.6 Small Watershed Hydrograph Method

Introduction 3.6.1

The Small Watershed Hydrograph Method is a method for developing a curvilinear design hydrograph for small to moderate size drainage areas (less than 640 acres) which peaks at a designated flow rate and contains a runoff volume consistent with the design rainfall.

Applications 3.6.2

A common application of the Small Watershed Hydrograph Method is the design of detention basins for new development or public agency projects. It facilitates the design of the outlet structure and determination of storage volume.

Caution 3.6.3

Do <u>not</u> attempt to compare, combine, or route the hydrograph generated by the Small Watershed Hydrograph Method with hydrographs from the Watershed Modeling Method or effective FEMA models. There is no correlation.

Hydrograph Computation Equations

3.6.4

The Small Watershed Hydrograph Method consists of the following equations:

$$T_P = \frac{V}{1.39Q_P}$$

$$q_i = \left(\frac{Q_P}{2}\right)\left[1 - \cos\left(\frac{\pi t_i}{T_p}\right)\right] \qquad t_i \le 1.25T_P$$

$$q_i = 4.34Q_P e^{\left(-1.3t_i / T_P\right)} \qquad t_i > 1.25T_P$$

in which:

Q_P	=	peak discharge in cubic feet per second from Site Runoff Curves
T_P	=	time to Q_P in seconds
V	=	total volume of runoff for the design storm in cubic feet
t_i and q_i	=	the respective time and discharges which determine the shape of the hydrograph

Note: The argument of the "cos" function must be expressed in radians, not degrees.

Source: Malcom, H.R., "A Study of Detention in Urban Stormwater Management," Report No. 156, Water Resources Research Institute, University of North Carolina, July 1980.

Continued on next page

3.6 Small Watershed Hydrograph Method, Continued

Total Volume of Runoff, V 3.6.5

Multiply the drainage area by the depth of direct runoff to calculate the total volume of runoff, V.

Direct Runoff, 1% Probability Event 3.6.6

The depths of direct runoff for the 24-hour, 1% probability rainfall events are provided below for each rainfall region and for three impervious conditions. Use linear interpolation for other impervious conditions.

The values are based on loss rates from the 2004 TSARP Study.

Watershed: HCFCD Letter Designation and Name	Total Rainfall (inches)	Direct Runoff (inches)		
		0% Impervious	40% Impervious	85% Impervious
Region 1				
J: Spring Creek K: Cypress Creek L: Little Cypress Creek M: Willow Creek T: Barker Tributaries U: Addicks Tributaries	12.4	7.9	9.7	11.7
Region 2				
D: Brays Bayou E: White Oak Bayou G: San Jacinto River H: Hunting Bayou P: Greens Bayou S: Luce Bayou W: Buffalo Bayou	13.2	11.1	12.0	12.9
Region 3				
A: Clear Creek B: Armand Bayou C: Sims Bayou F: Galveston Bay I: Vince Bayou N: Carpenters Bayou O: Goose Creek Q: Cedar Bayou R: Jackson Bayou	13.5	10.6	11.7	13.1

Continued on next page

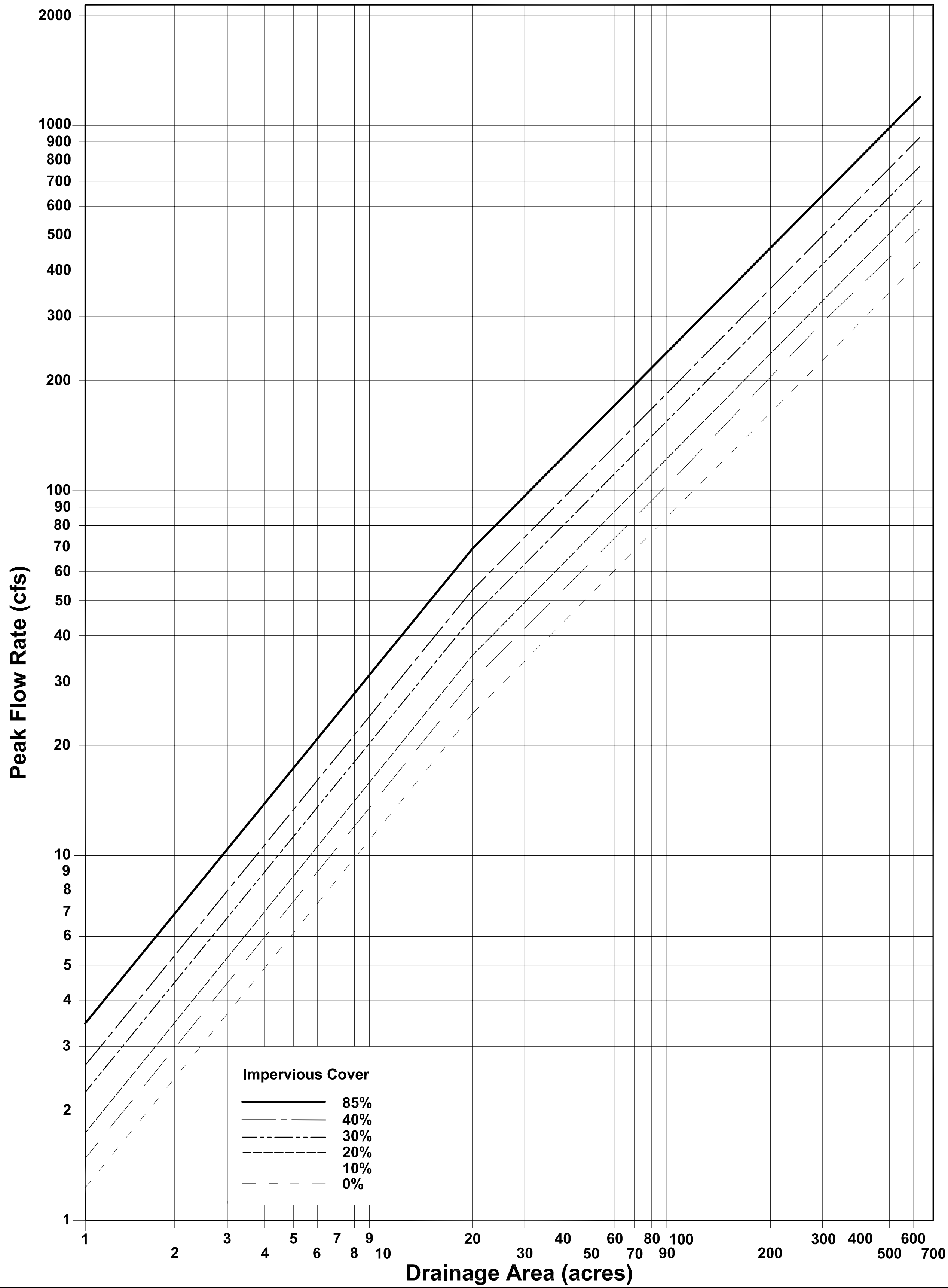
3.6 Small Watershed Hydrograph Method, Continued

Direct Runoff, 10% Probability Event 3.6.7

The depths of direct runoff for the 24-hour, 10% probability rainfall events are provided below for each rainfall region and for three impervious conditions. Use linear interpolation for other impervious conditions.

The values are based on loss rates from the 2004 TSARP Study.

Watershed: HCFCD Letter Designation and Name	Total Rainfall (inches)	Direct Runoff (inches)		
		0% Impervious	40% Impervious	85% Impervious
Region 1				
J: Spring Creek K: Cypress Creek L: Little Cypress Creek M: Willow Creek T: Barker Tributaries U: Addicks Tributaries	7.1	3.5	4.9	6.6
Region 2				
D: Brays Bayou E: White Oak Bayou G: San Jacinto River H: Hunting Bayou P: Greens Bayou S: Luce Bayou W: Buffalo Bayou	7.6	5.7	6.5	7.3
Region 3				
A: Clear Creek B: Armand Bayou C: Sims Bayou F: Galveston Bay I: Vince Bayou N: Carpenters Bayou O: Goose Creek Q: Cedar Bayou R: Jackson Bayou	7.8	5.2	6.4	7.4



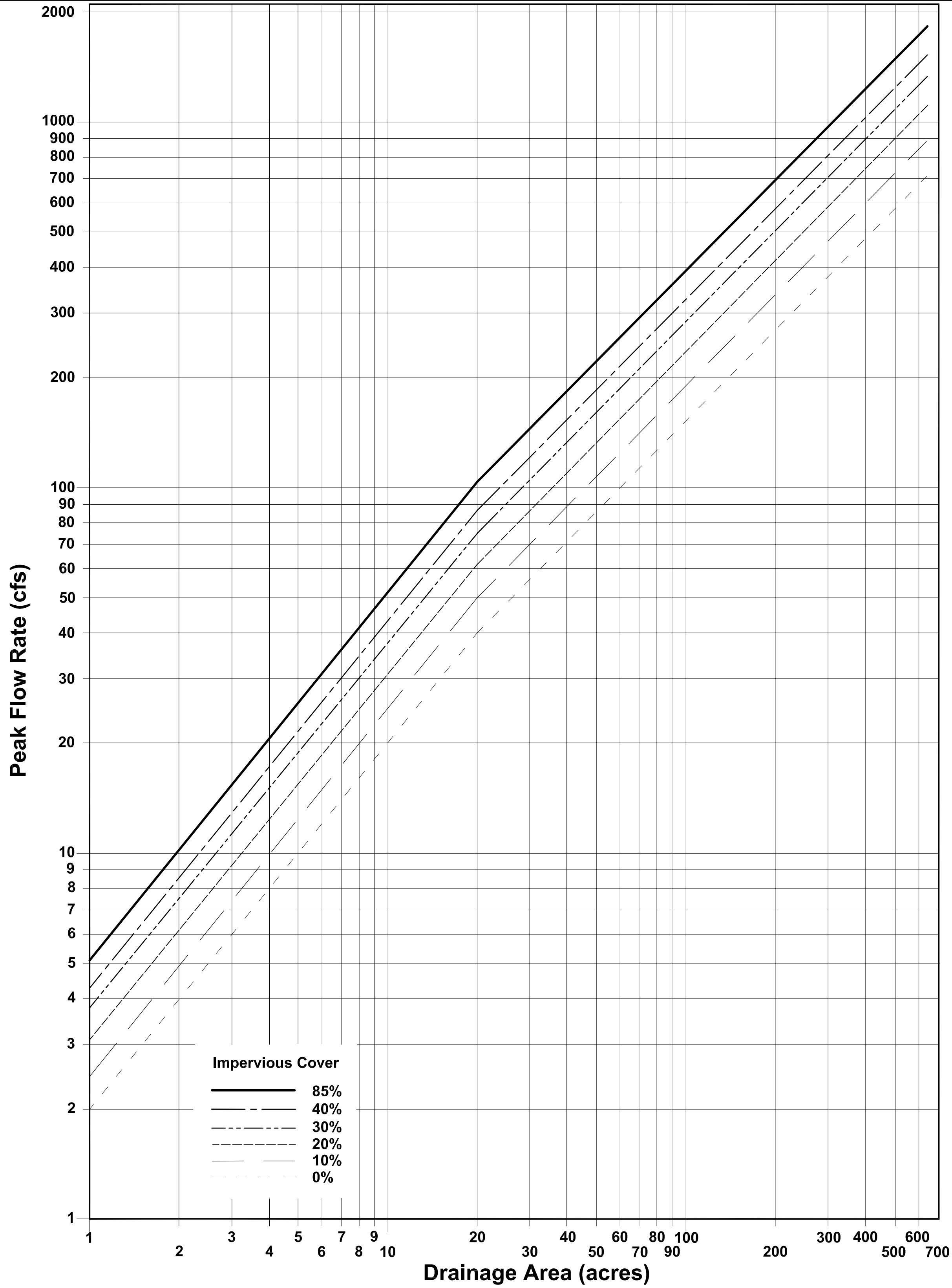
Harris County Flood Control District

POLICY, CRITERIA, & PROCEDURE MANUAL

SITE RUNOFF CURVES FOR 10% EXCEEDANCE PROBABILITY (10-YEAR FREQUENCY) STORM

DATE: 10/5/04

EXHIBIT 3-1



Harris County Flood Control District

POLICY, CRITERIA, & PROCEDURE MANUAL

SITE RUNOFF CURVES FOR 1% EXCEEDANCE PROBABILITY (100-YEAR FREQUENCY) STORM

DATE: 10/5/04

EXHIBIT 3-2

SECTION 4 – HYDRAULICS

4.1 Introduction

Overview 4.1.1

The water surface profile or hydraulic gradeline is essential to the design and analysis of existing or proposed channels, detention basins, and closed conduits. The analysis involves calculating energy losses due to friction, obstructions, transitions, bends, and confluences. When calculating water surface profiles either by hand or with a computer program, include all relevant sources of headloss.

Design of channels and closed conduits generally focus on minimizing energy losses (results in a smaller channel/conduit) and controlling dissipation of excessive energy (reduces erosion problems).

When Analysis Is Required 4.1.2

A hydraulic analysis is required when:

- A new HCFCD maintained facility is proposed.
- An existing HCFCD maintained facility is modified.
- A private development or public agency project outfalls into a HCFCD maintained facility.
- A non-flood control feature is placed in or across a HCFCD maintained facility.

4.2 Methods

Overview 4.2.1

The method selected depends on the type of project, complexity of the hydraulic design, and the level of accuracy desired.

Normal Depth 4.2.2

For closed conduits or channels with the flow confined in a uniform cross section, few obstructions or transitions, and little or no backwater from downstream, the water surface will approximate normal depth. Manning's Equation is commonly used for calculating normal depth (see Section 4.3, Manning's Equation).

Standard Step Method and Computer Programs 4.2.3

For channels with non-uniform sections, flow in the overbanks, and/or bridge or culvert crossings, the water surface can be calculated using the standard step method. HEC-2 and HEC-RAS incorporate the standard step method.

The reasons for using HEC-2 or HEC-RAS are:

- They are widely used and accepted.
- They are compatible with one another.
- They offer flexibility in the design of channels.
- Bridge, culvert, and expansion and contraction losses are calculated.
- They are used in the FEMA Flood Insurance Studies in Harris County.
- Their use will simplify and expedite reviews by HCFCD.

Follow the HCFCD HEC-2 Modeling and Submittal Guidelines dated May, 1994. An update based on the TSARP floodplain update project will be issued by HCFCD.

Detention Basin Inflow/Outflow Design 4.2.4

For design of detention basin inflow and outflow structures, spreadsheet calculations using appropriate headloss equations are often used. The equations and discussion are in Section 6.6, Inflow Structures and Section 6.7, Outflow Structures.

Several commercial computer programs are available for designing detention basins and their associated inflow/outflow structures. Early coordination with HCFCD is recommended.

Alternative Methods 4.2.5

If an alternative method not presented in this manual is used for a specific problem, coordinate with HCFCD prior to initiation of the analysis.

4.3 Manning's Equation

Background 4.3.1

Manning's Equation is an empirical formula used to evaluate the effects of friction and resistance in open channels and closed conduits. For uniform flow conditions where the conduit or channel bottom and energy line are essentially parallel, Manning's Equation can be used to compute the normal depth.

Manning's Equation 4.3.2

The equation is:

$$Q = (1.49/n)\ A\ R^{2/3}\ S^{1/2}$$

Where Q	=	Total discharge in cubic feet per second
n	=	Manning's coefficient of roughness
A	=	Cross sectional area of channel or conduit in square feet
R	=	Hydraulic radius of the channel or conduit in feet
and S	=	Slope of energy line in feet per foot (same as channel bottom slope for uniform flow)

Subdividing Sections 4.3.3

Subdivide channel and overbank sections to represent differences in roughness across the section, particularly for natural, composite, or non-prismatic sections.

Gradually Varied Flow 4.3.4

For gradually varied flow conditions, the slope of the energy line at a given channel section can be computed using Manning's Equation. HEC-2 and HEC-RAS use Manning's Equation to compute energy losses between cross sections due to friction.

Continued on next page

4.3 Manning's Equation, Continued

Manning's "n" Values 4.3.5

Manning's "n" value represents the relative roughness of the channel, conduit, or overbank area. Values to use for design purposes are in the table below. Submit justification when a different "n" value is used.

Description	Manning's "n" Value
Channel	
Grass-Lined	0.040[1]
Riprap-Lined	0.040[1]
Articulated Concrete Block - Grassed	0.040[1]
Articulated Concrete Block - Bare	0.030
Concrete-Lined	0.015
Natural or Overgrown Channels	Usually 0.050 – 0.080
Overbanks	
Some flow	Usually 0.080 – 0.150
Ineffective flow areas	0.99[2]
Conduit[3]	
Concrete Pipe	0.013
Concrete Box	0.015
Corrugated Metal Pipe	0.024

[1] For design flows larger than 10,000 cfs, an "n" value of 0.035 may be used.

[2] Use the ineffective flow area option in HEC-RAS

[3] If the conduit is maintained by another jurisdiction, the "n" value specified by that jurisdiction can be used.

Adjustment to "n" for Trees in the Channel 4.3.6

Where trees are planted in a channel, adjust the "n" value to account for the additional head loss.

Contact the HCFCD for guidelines regarding "n" value adjustments to account for trees in the channel.

4.4 Velocities

Maximum Velocities 4.4.1

Where average velocities exceed the maximum, provide erosion protection capable of withstanding the erosional forces (see Section 10, Erosion and Sediment Control).

Maximum average cross section velocities are based on a 1% exceedance probability flow. Values are presented in the table below.

Channel Description	Maximum Velocity (fps)[1]
Channel	
Grass-Lined: Mostly Sand	4.0
Grass-Lined: Mostly Clay	6.0
Riprap-Lined – Gradation 1[2]	8.0
Riprap-Lined – Gradation 2[2]	10.0
Articulated Concrete Block Lined	10.0
Concrete-Lined	12.0
Overbanks and Existing Natural or Overgrown Channels	Site Specific
Conduit	
Concrete Pipe or Box	8.0
Corrugated Metal Pipe	6.0

[1] For low turbulence areas only.

[2] Gradations are defined in HCFCD Standard Specification Section 02378, Riprap and Granular Fill.

Continuity Equation 4.4.2

The average velocity at a channel cross section or in a conduit is computed using the continuity equation:

$$Q = VA$$

where Q = discharge in cubic feet per second

V = average velocity in feet per second

and A = cross sectional flow area in square feet

4.5 Cross Sections

Overview 4.5.1

Using accurate and current cross sections is essential to hydraulic analysis and developing water surface profiles.

Channels 4.5.2

Criteria for channel cross sections are:

- Field survey channel sections at spacing sufficient to represent significant changes in channel dimensions. (Construction drawings should only be used for preliminary evaluations.)
- Extend the sections into both overbanks.
- Obtain overbank elevations either from field survey or the best topographic information available.

Conduits 4.5.3

Criteria for conduit cross sections are:

- Use construction drawings.
- Field verify pipe sizes and flowlines.

Detention Basins 4.5.4

Depending on the type of hydraulic analysis and the location of the detention basin relative to the outfall channel, either cross sections or a site topographic grid can be used.

Criteria for detention basins are:

- Field survey the existing or proposed detention basin site.
- Extend the survey into adjacent areas where stormwater is expected to flow or be stored.
- Adjacent area elevations may be obtained from available topographic information if the accuracy is satisfactory.

4.6 Starting Water Surface Elevation

Design of Channels 4.6.1

Base the starting water surface at the channel mouth on the normal depth in the design channel except as noted below. In HEC-2 it's called the slope-area method. In HEC-RAS it's referred to as normal depth.

When a channel outfalls into a tidal zone, use the average high tide as a starting water surface.

Design of Conduits 4.6.2

Use the top of the pipe or box as the starting water surface for a conduit.

Actual Flood Levels 4.6.3

In determining actual flood profiles or flood plain delineation in non-coastal areas, project the water-surface elevation from the outfall channel horizontally upstream until it intersects the flood profile on the design channel or conduit.

For coastal areas, use the results of the combined probability analysis to determine flood profiles.

SECTION 5 – CHANNELS

5.1 Introduction

Uses
5.1.1

Natural and man-made channels are the primary area-wide conveyance system for carrying stormwater.

Channels are usually constructed or modified to:

- Collect and convey stormwater.
- Reduce the flooding potential on a property.
- Mitigate increased flood stages caused by higher flows.
- Accommodate the depth needed for a storm sewer outfall.

Terminology
5.1.2

Terminology and definitions associated with channels are in Appendix E, Terminology.

Review and Coordination
5.1.3

The review and coordination process for new channels or modification of existing HCFCD maintained channels is presented in Section 2.8, New or Modified HCFCD Facilities.

Analysis and Methodologies
5.1.4

General hydrologic and hydraulic analysis and methodologies are presented in Section 3, Hydrology and Section 4, Hydraulics. Hydraulic aspects specific to channels are presented in this Section.

In This Section
5.1.5

This Section covers HCFCD criteria for the design of channels. Specifically, this section covers:

- Location and Alignment
- General Design Criteria
- Typical Sections
- Right-of-Way
- Confluences
- Horizontal Transitions
- Bends

Other design topics for channels are covered in subsequent sections.

5.2 Location and Alignment

Overview 5.2.1

Location and alignment of new or modified channels is important because it affects the:

- Actual function of the channel.
- Construction and maintenance costs.
- Impact on natural and man-made features.

Considerations 5.2.2

Factors to consider when locating and establishing an alignment for a channel are:

- Follow existing/natural channels, ditches, swales, or other low areas.
- Avoid crossing drainage divides.
- Align the proposed channel pointing downstream at its confluence with the outfall channel.
- Avoid tight channel bends.
- Avoid areas of high erosion potential.
- Provide adequate access for maintenance.
- Minimize conflicts with existing buildings, homes, pipelines, and contaminated sites.
- Minimize number of property owners affected, if possible.

5.3 General Design Criteria

Design Frequencies 5.3.1

Design new channels to contain the 1% exceedance probability, 24-hour storm event for proposed watershed conditions.

When channel modifications are necessary to accommodate a proposed storm sewer outfall or to offset increased flows from a proposed development, design the modifications such that the 1% exceedance probability water surface profiles upstream or downstream are not increased above existing conditions.

Flowline Slope 5.3.2

Flowline slope criteria are as follows:

- Minimum 0.05%.
- Maximum controlled by maximum velocity (see Section 4.4, Velocities).

  Note: Use a flowline slope greater than the minimum where possible to minimize standing water in the channel bottom and maximize capacity for a range of flows.

Existing Sections 5.3.3

Criteria for obtaining existing cross sections used in design of a new or modified channel are:

- Field survey channel sections at a sufficient spacing for design.
- Extend the survey beyond the existing or proposed channel right-of-way a minimum distance of 20 feet; where possible (see Section 11.1, Backslope Drainage Systems).

Channel Linings 5.3.4

The selection of channel lining is based on several factors including erosion potential, slope stability, conveyance, available right-of-way, cost, environmental situation, and aesthetics. Lining choices and design criteria are discussed in Section 10, Erosion and Sediment Control.

Continued on next page

5.3 General Design Criteria, Continued

Hydraulic Structures 5.3.5

Hydraulic structures typically constructed within a channel are:

- Backslope drainage systems
- Inflow and outflow structures
- Storm sewer outfalls
- Transition control structures
- Culverts
- Bridges (roads, pipelines, etc.)

Criteria for these types of hydraulic structures are presented in other sections of this manual.

Geotechnical Investigations 5.3.6

A geotechnical investigation is required for new HCFCD maintained channels and proposed work that deepens or widens an existing HCFCD channel.

As a minimum, address the following:

- Stability of the channel side slopes for short term, long term, and rapid drawdown conditions.
- Location of ground water level(s).
- Identification of dispersive soils.
- Potential erosion problems.
- Constructability issues.

Follow the geotechnical investigation requirements as provided in Appendix D, HCFCD Geotechnical Investigation Guidelines.

Environmental Investigations 5.3.7

Compliance with appropriate federal, state, and local environmental rules, laws, regulations, and permits is required when modifying or constructing HCFCD facilities (see Section 17, Environmental and Archeological Compliance).

Maintenance Access Plan 5.3.8

For new channels, submit a maintenance access plan with the drainage or design report or the construction drawings.

For channel modifications, update the maintenance access plan reflecting any changes needed due to the proposed modification.

5.4 Typical Cross Sections

Overview 5.4.1

Typical channel sections have minimum dimensions and required features based on construction and maintenance experience. Actual dimensions and shapes are determined from detailed hydraulic analysis, geotechnical investigations, and environmental, aesthetic, and multi-use considerations.

Typical channel sections are presented in this Section.

Trapezoidal Section 5.4.2

The most common channel shape is trapezoidal and the most common lining is grass. Concrete lining is used where right-of-way is limited or expensive, conveyance efficiency is critical, or erosion potential is high. Concrete lining does not provide structural support for the underlying soil.

The table below contains the criteria for both grass-lined and concrete-lined trapezoidal channel sections. See Exhibits 5-1 and 5-2 for typical sections.

Feature/Item	Grass-Lined	Concrete-Lined
Minimum bottom width	6 feet	6 feet
Bottom configuration	See Section 5.4.3	See Standard Concrete Lining Detail
Side slopes no steeper than	4:1	2:1
Backslope drainage system	Yes	No

Additional criteria for concrete-lined channels:

- Minimum concrete lining thickness is 5 inches.
- Concrete toe walls are required on all sides to reduce the chance of flow under the lining and decrease the chance of lining failure.
- Access stairways are required for side slopes 2.5:1 and steeper. Locate stairways on the upstream side of road crossings and at intervals less than 1,500 feet.
- Weep holes are required to accommodate subsurface drainage.
- See HCFCD Standard Concrete Lining Detail Sheet in Appendix D, Standards and Details.

Continued on next page

5.4 Typical Cross Sections, Continued

Bottom Configuration - Trapezoidal Grass-Lined 5.4.3

Use the table below to design the bottom of trapezoidal grass-lined channels.

Center depression = distance to depress channel centerline below toe of slope.

The purpose is to more accurately replicate the stable channel bottom shape that will naturally form, reduce erosion at the toe of slope, and reduce slope stability problems (see Exhibit 5-1).

Bottom Width	Center Depression	Pipe Outlet Invert*
6 feet ≤ BW ≤ 20 feet	0.5 foot	1 foot above flowline
20 feet < BW ≤ 60 feet	1.0 foot	At toe of slope
BW > 60 feet	3% cross slope	At toe of slope

* At elevations indicated or 1 foot above normal water level, whichever is higher.

Grass-Lined Bench Section 5.4.4

The bench section more closely replicates a natural channel than a trapezoidal section.

Benches can:

- Improve the overall slope stability of the channel.
- Reduce maintenance and repair costs.
- Improve the aesthetics and habitat of the channel corridor.
- Provide a location for trees, trails, and maintenance access.

The design considerations and criteria presented for grass-lined and concrete-lined channels apply to bench sections.

Criteria for benches:

- Place at least 5 feet above the normal water level and at least 3 feet below the top of bank.
- Minimum width – 10 feet.
- Minimum cross slope toward channel – 2%.

Two typical bench sections are shown in Exhibit 5-3.

Continued on next page

5.4 Typical Cross Sections, Continued

Rectangular Concrete-Lined Section 5.4.5

Rectangular concrete-lined channel sections are used when right-of-way is limited or expensive or additional depth is needed. The side slopes above the rectangular section can be either grass-lined or concrete-lined, depending on the conditions. The criteria for trapezoidal sections apply on the side slopes.

Criteria are:

- Minimum bottom width is 8 feet.
- Minimum height of vertical walls is 4 feet.
- Equipment access ramps to the channel bottom are required for maintenance and rehabilitation work.
- Access stairways are required. Recommended locations are on the upstream side of road crossings and at intervals less than 1500 feet.
- See Standard Concrete Lining Detail Sheet in Appendix D, Standards and Details.

A typical section is shown in Exhibit 5-4.

Maintenance Access Alternatives 5.4.6

For a grass-lined bench section, maintenance access can be on the bench as shown on Exhibit 5-5. Criteria for the bench is:

- Place at least 5 feet above the normal water level and no more than 5 feet below the top of bank.
- Minimum width – 20 feet.
- Minimum cross slope toward channel – 2%.
- Side slope above the bench is no steeper than 5:1.
- Transition back to natural ground at road crossings and all maintenance access points at a gradient no steeper than 10:1.

For grass-lined channels with side slopes no steeper than 8:1, maintenance access can be along the slope itself (see Exhibit 5-5).

5.5 Right-of-Way

Overview 5.5.1

This Section provides criteria and guidelines for determining the right-of-way limits for a channel maintained by HCFCD.

Right-of-way definitions and dedication and conveyance process are presented in Section 15, Right-of-Way.

Right-of-Way Widths 5.5.2

The right-of-way limit for a typical grass-lined channel is:

- The channel top width plus
- Twenty feet for maintenance access on each side plus
- Ten feet for the backslope swale system where used (see Section 11.1.2, Where To Use).

Use field survey data and channel profile to determine channel top widths.

Minimum Berm Widths 5.5.3

Minimum berm widths on each side are shown on the typical sections in Exhibits 5-1 through 5-5, and presented in the table below.

Channels That Are	The Minimum Berm Width Is
Grass-lined with a top width > 60 feet or a depth > 7 feet	30 feet
Grass-lined with a top width ≤ 60 feet or a depth ≤ 7 feet	20 feet[1]
Grass-lined where side slopes are 8(horizontal):1(vertical) or flatter	10 feet[2]
Grass-lined with the 20-foot maintenance access on a bench	10 feet
Lined with riprap or articulated concrete blocks or partially concrete-lined	Same as grass-lined channel
Fully concrete-lined	20 feet one side, 10 feet other side[1]

[1] Backslope swale system not needed.
[2] Maintenance access is on the side slope.

Continued on next page

5.5 Right-of-Way, Continued

New HCFCD Channels 5.5.4

New HCFCD channels require right-of-way to cover the interim channel, ultimate right-of-way width, and maintenance access.

Existing HCFCD Channels 5.5.5

Existing HCFCD channels require right-of-way to cover the channel flow area, a future stable channel, ultimate right-of-way width, and/or maintenance access. Coordinate limits with HCFCD.

Adjacent HCFCD Channel and HCFCD Detention Basin 5.5.6

Where a HCFCD maintained channel is adjacent to a HCFCD maintained detention basin, place the backslope drainage system in the middle of the berm. A minimum berm width of 30 feet is required except 50 feet is required at interceptor structures. A clear 20-foot access is required on each side of the interceptor structure (see Exhibit 5-6).

Adjacent HCFCD Channel and Private Detention Basin 5.5.7

Where a HCFCD maintained channel is adjacent to a privately maintained detention basin, the private detention basin does not need a backslope drainage system if one already exists along the channel. Place a minimum 10-foot wide access berm outside the HCFCD right-of-way for the detention basin.

Roads Adjacent to HCFCD Maintained Facility 5.5.8

Where a public road drained by either storm sewers or roadside ditches is adjacent to a HCFCD maintained facility, a backslope drainage system is not needed, provided the maintenance berm drains to the road. A minimum width of 20 feet is satisfactory unless more distance is needed for public safety.

Bridges and Culverts 5.5.9

At bridges and culverts, additional HCFCD or public right-of-way may be necessary for maintenance and repair equipment to access the channel (see Section 7, Bridges and Section 8, Culverts).

Continued on next page

5.5 Right-of-Way, Continued

Ultimate Right-of-Way Determination 5.5.10

Determine the ultimate right-of-way width and alignment in coordination with HCFCD.

GUIDELINES:

- Procedure is same as described in Section 5.5.2, Right-of-Way Widths except the channel top width is based on full upstream development under stormwater management policies in effect.
- If a master drainage plan for a watershed is available:
  1. Determine if the assumptions and conditions (particularly topography) are still applicable, then
  2. Either confirm or reestablish the width, location, and alignment.
- If no master drainage plan is available, work with HCFCD to make the ultimate right-of-way determination and document the results.

CRITERIA:

- A development project located on both sides of a channel is requested to dedicate or convey the ultimate right-of-way width through the project.
- A development project located on one side of a channel is requested to dedicate or convey one half of the ultimate right-of-way, or the right-of-way necessary for maintenance of the interim channel, whichever is wider. The width may be influenced by existing development, channel alignment, or utility conflicts.
- For offsite channel modifications, a development project is requested to obtain the offsite right-of-way necessary for the proposed channel project. Acquisition of the ultimate offsite right-of-way is not requested.

5.6 Confluences

Overview 5.6.1

The alignment of channel confluences and large pipe or box outfalls is critical with regard to channel erosion (scour) and energy losses caused by turbulence and eddies.

Criteria for pipe or box outfalls are in Section 11.3, Pipe Outfalls.

Confluence Design Criteria 5.6.2

Primary factors used in design are angle of intersection; shape and dimensions of the side channel, pipe, or box; flow rates; and flow velocities.

If the main channel flowline is lower than the side channel flowline, use a drop structure in the side channel (see Section 9, Transition Control Structures).

Angle of Intersection 5.6.3

Criteria for angle of intersection (see Exhibit 5-7 for definition) are as follows:

- Use a small angle of intersection between the side and main channel to minimize erosion potential and energy loss.
- Angles between 30° and 60° are generally satisfactory in Harris County.
- Angles between 60° and 90° are discouraged, but permissible if 1% exceedance probability velocities in both channels are less than 4 feet per second.
- Angles greater than 90° can cause severe hydraulic and erosion problems and are therefore not permissible.

Erosion Protection Criteria 5.6.4

- The minimum extent of erosion protection is shown in Exhibit 5-7, Erosion Protection at Channel Confluences.
- Types of erosion protection measures to consider are in Section 10, Erosion and Sediment Control.
- Extend structural erosion protection at least one-third up the channel slope from the bottom in both channels.
- Establish turf grass from the edge of the structural protection to the top of bank.

5.7 Horizontal Transitions

Overview 5.7.1

Horizontal transitions in channels and closed conduits consist of either a change in cross section size or geometry. These changes cause head losses due to flow expansion or contraction. For channels, horizontal transitions generally occur at bridges or culverts and at confluences where channel sizes change.

Criteria 5.7.2

Design horizontal transitions in channels with minimal flow disturbance and energy loss. Criteria are:

Sub-critical flow (common in Harris County):

- Design horizontal transitions with angles of transition no greater than 12 degrees (5:1 ratio).
- When transitioning from a vertical wall or steep side slope to a mild side slope, the warped or wedge type transition is recommended.

Super-critical flow (rare in Harris County):

- Check with HCFCD.

Hydraulic Analysis 5.7.3

Compute and include horizontal transition losses in all water surface profiles submitted to HCFCD for review.

Head Loss Equation 5.7.4

Compute horizontal transition losses using the energy equation below:

$$h_L = c\left|\frac{\left(V_2^2 - V_1^2\right)}{2g}\right|$$

where

h_L	=	head loss in feet
c	=	expansion or contraction coefficient (see table in Section 5.7.5, Loss Coefficients)
V_2	=	average channel velocity of downstream section in feet per second
V_1	=	average channel velocity of upstream section in feet per second
g	=	acceleration due to gravity (32.2 ft/sec^2)

Continued on next page

5.7 Horizontal Transitions, Continued

Loss Coefficients 5.7.5

Typical transition loss coefficients are presented in the following table:

Transition Type	Contraction Coefficient	Expansion Coefficient
Gradual or warped	0.10	0.30
Bridge sections, wedge, or straight lined	0.30	0.50
Abrupt or squared end	0.60	0.80

Computation Considerations 5.7.6

If the HEC-2 or HEC-RAS computer program is used to compute the water surface profile, expansion and contraction losses are calculated using the above loss coefficients provided by the user.

5.8 Bends

Overview 5.8.1

To minimize head loss and to reduce the erosion and sediment problems, design channel bends or curves as gradual as possible.

Criteria 5.8.2

Primary factors used in design are radius of curvature, channel top width, and bend angle. Other factors which can be important are flow velocity, soil type, channel geometry, and sinuosity.

Design channel bends with:

- A radius of curvature (measured from the channel centerline) three times or greater than the ultimate channel top width.
- A bend angle no larger than 90°.

Structural Erosion Protection 5.8.3

Structural erosion protection is needed where flow velocity, turbulence, and secondary circulation is anticipated to cause erosion.

Structural erosion protection is required when:

- The radius of curvature is less than three times the ultimate channel top width.
- Soil type, channel geometry, or flow velocity indicate a potential erosion problem.
- Field observation of the existing channel indicates a potential erosion problem.

Minimum limits of erosion protection are shown in Exhibit 5-8. Additional protection may be needed for the reasons listed above.

Types of structural erosion protection measures to consider are in Section 10, Erosion and Sediment Control.

Hydraulic Analysis 5.8.4

Incorporate head losses into hydraulic profile computations for channel bends when the:

- Radius of curvature is less than three times the channel top width, and the
- Average channel velocity is greater than 4 feet per second for the 1% exceedance probability event.

Continued on next page

5.8 Bends, Continued

Head Loss Equation 5.8.5

Compute bend losses using the energy equation below:

$$h_L = c_f\left(\frac{V^2}{2g}\right)$$

where

h_L = head loss in feet
c_f = coefficient of resistance
V = average channel velocity in feet per second
g = acceleration due to gravity (32.2 feet/sec^2)

Coefficient of Resistance 5.8.6

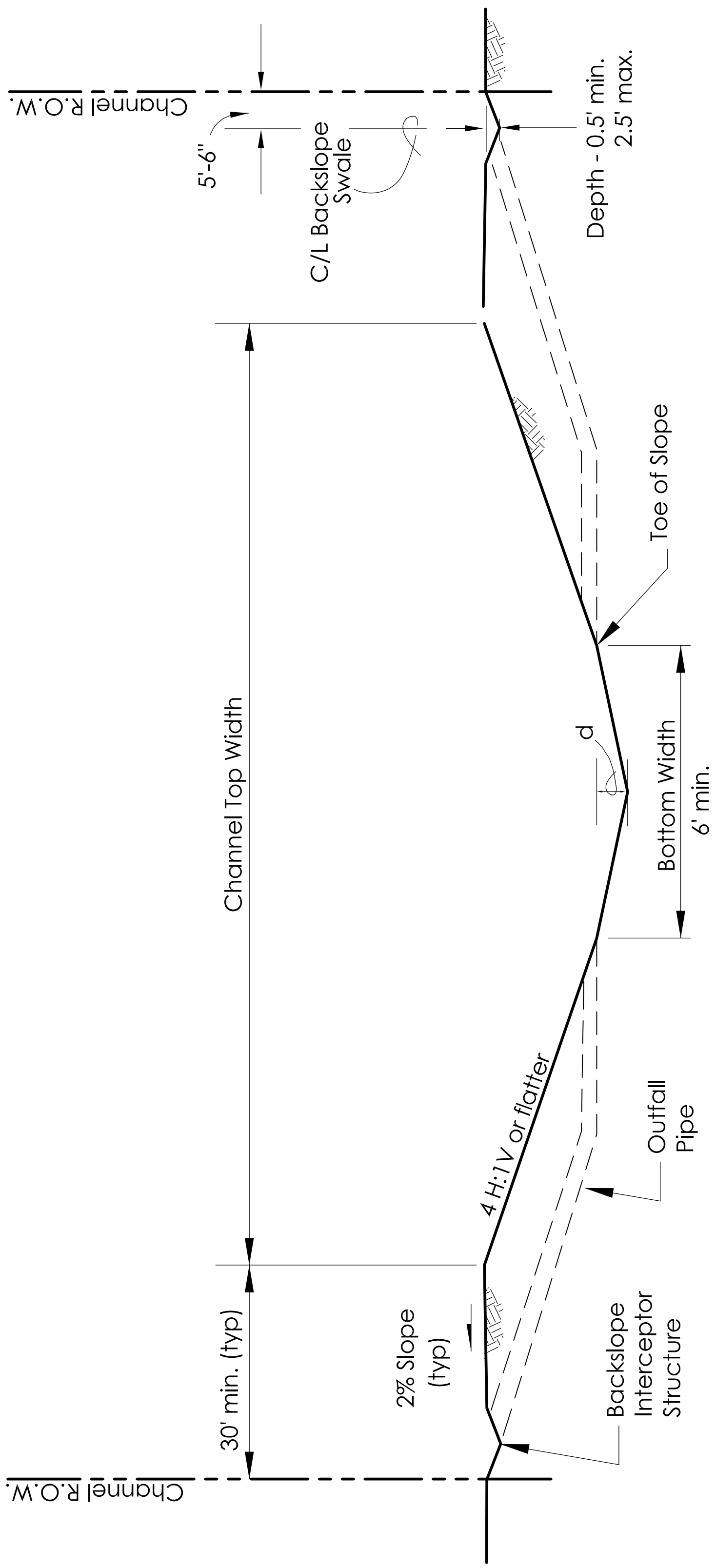
The coefficient of resistance, c_f, is shown in the table below.

Radius of Curvature Divided By Channel Top Width	c_f
Between 1.5 and 3.0	0.2
Between 1.0 and 1.5	0.3

Computation Considerations 5.8.7

The HEC-2 computer program does not include a bend loss computation option. If this program is used and bend losses are significant, add the loss at the appropriate point in the profile.

The HEC-RAS computer program does not include a bend loss computation loss, either. However, it does allow the adjustment of “n” values both horizontally and vertically at the same time. If this program is used and bend losses are significant, coordinate with the HCFCD.



Bottom Width	Center Depression, d	Pipe Inverts
6'-20'	0.5'	1' above bottom
20'-60'	1.0'	at toe
>60'	3% cross slope	at toe

Maintenance berms and backslope drainage systems required on both sides of channel.

Confirm side slope with geotechnical analysis.

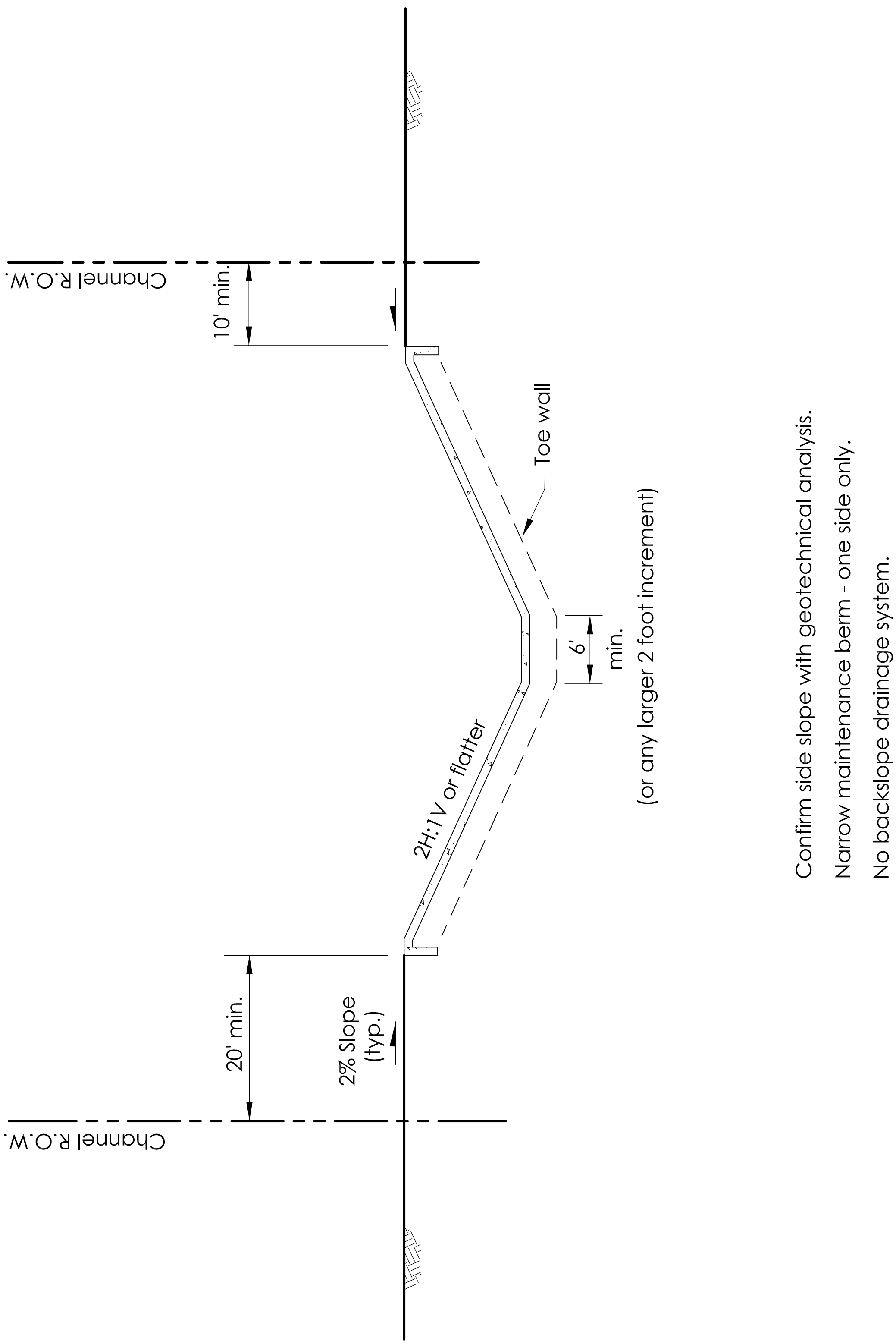
Harris County Flood Control District

POLICY, CRITERIA, & PROCEDURE MANUAL

TYPICAL GRASS-LINED TRAPEZOIDAL CHANNEL SECTION

DATE: 10/5/04

EXHIBIT 5-1

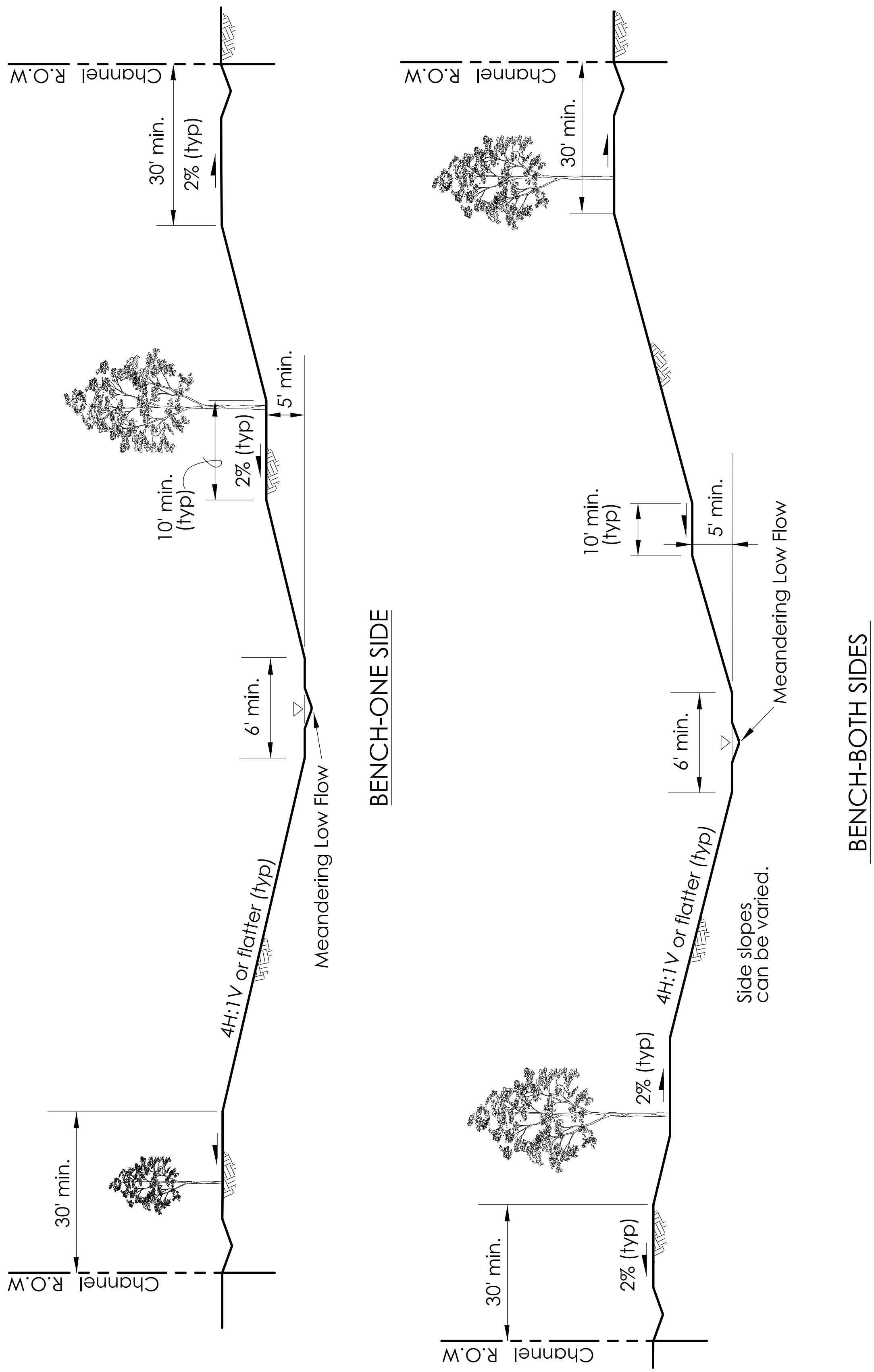


Harris County Flood Control District

POLICY, CRITERIA, & PROCEDURE MANUAL

TYPICAL CONCRETE-LINED TRAPEZOIDAL CHANNEL SECTION

DATE: 10/5/04	**EXHIBIT 5-2**

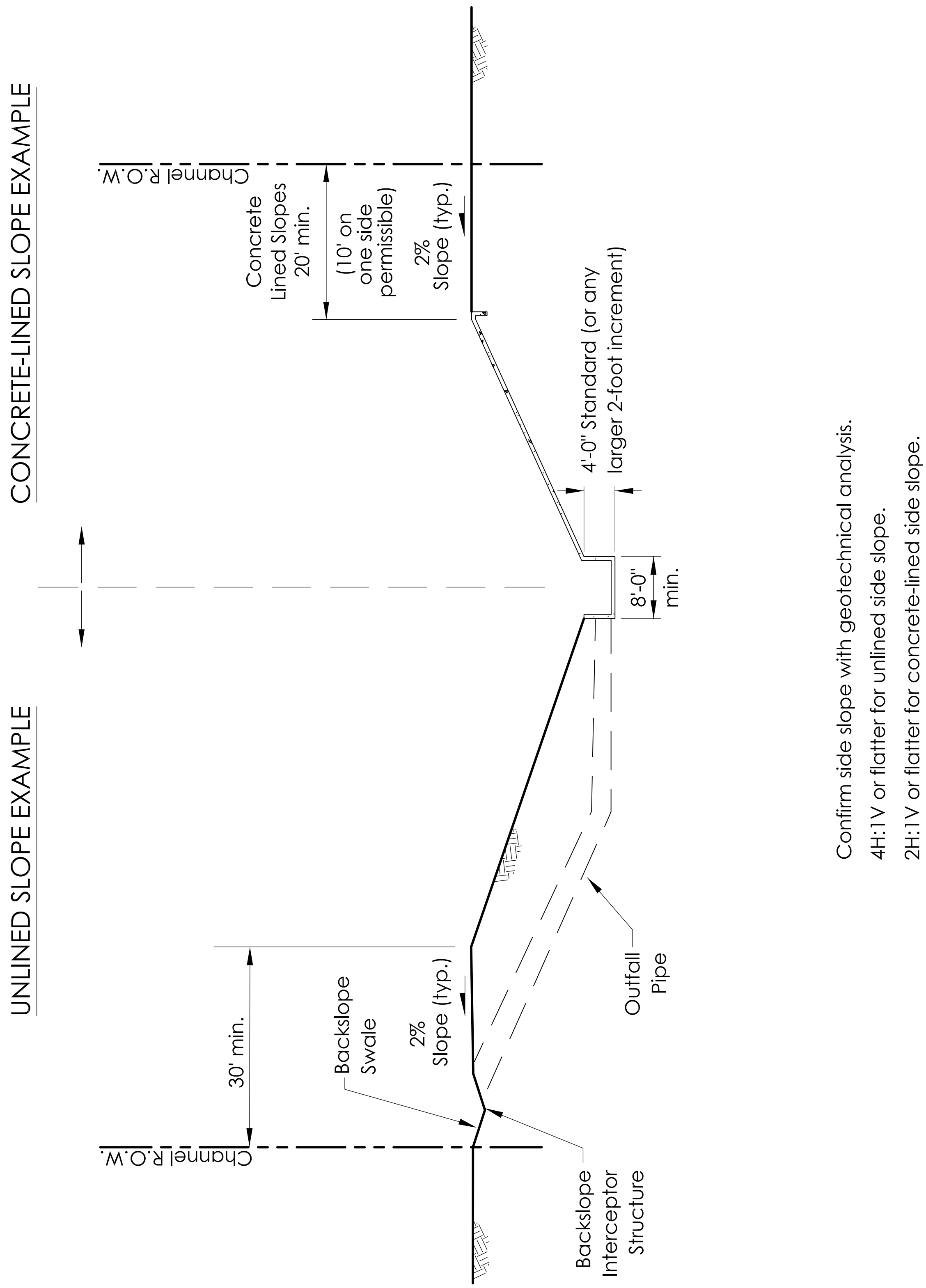


Harris County Flood Control District

POLICY, CRITERIA, & PROCEDURE MANUAL

TYPICAL GRASS-LINED BENCHED CHANNEL SECTIONS

DATE: 10/5/04	**EXHIBIT 5-3**



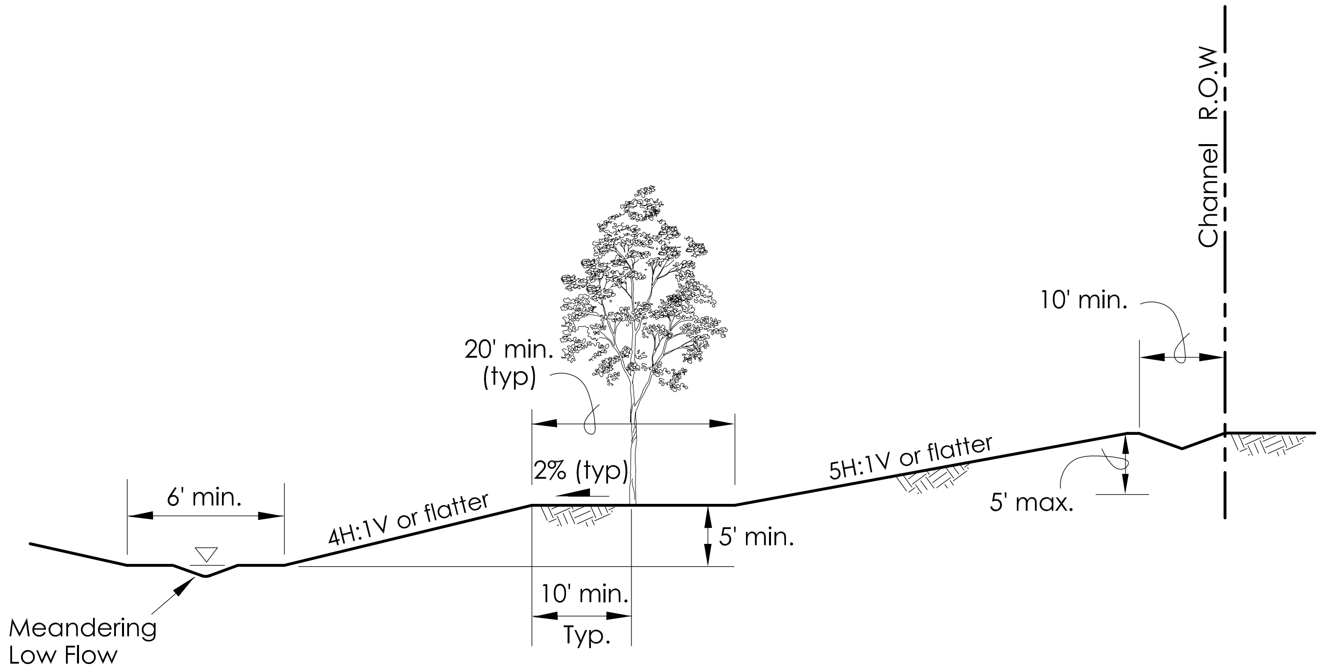
Harris County Flood Control District

POLICY, CRITERIA, & PROCEDURE MANUAL

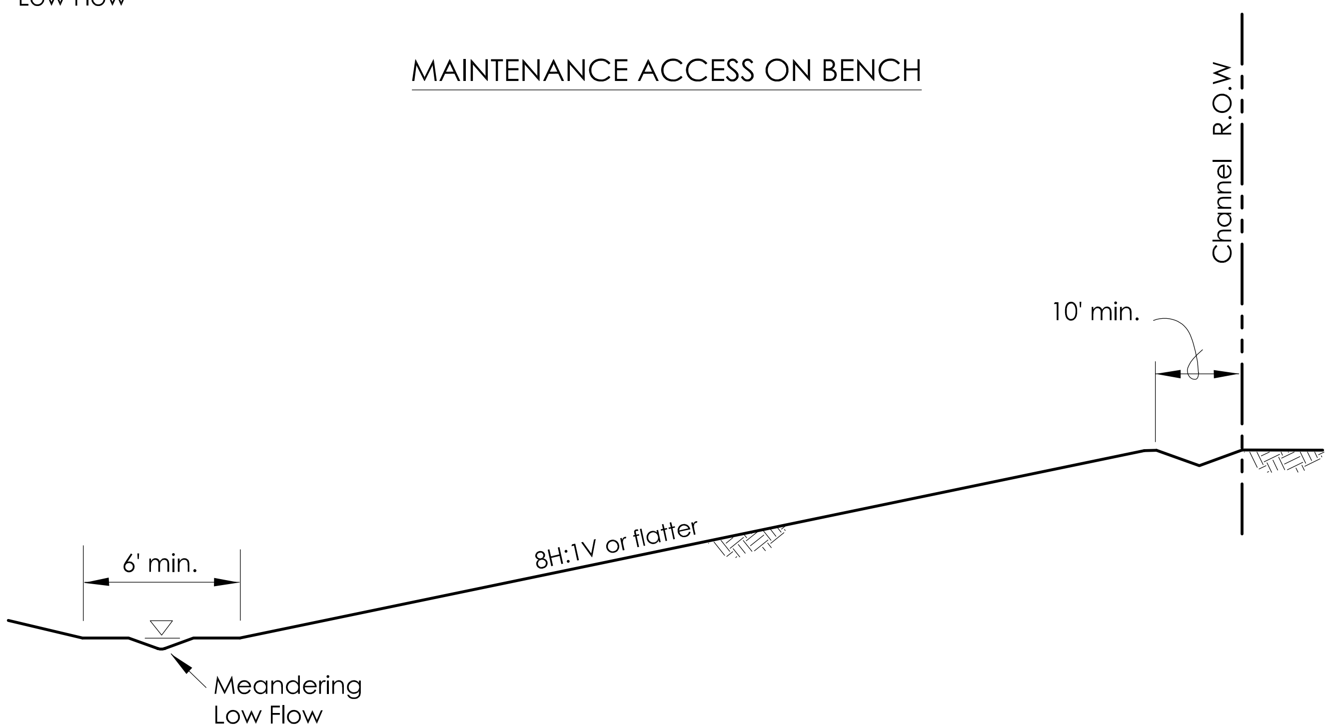
TYPICAL RECTANGULAR CONCRETE-LINED CHANNEL SECTION

DATE: 10/5/04

EXHIBIT 5-4

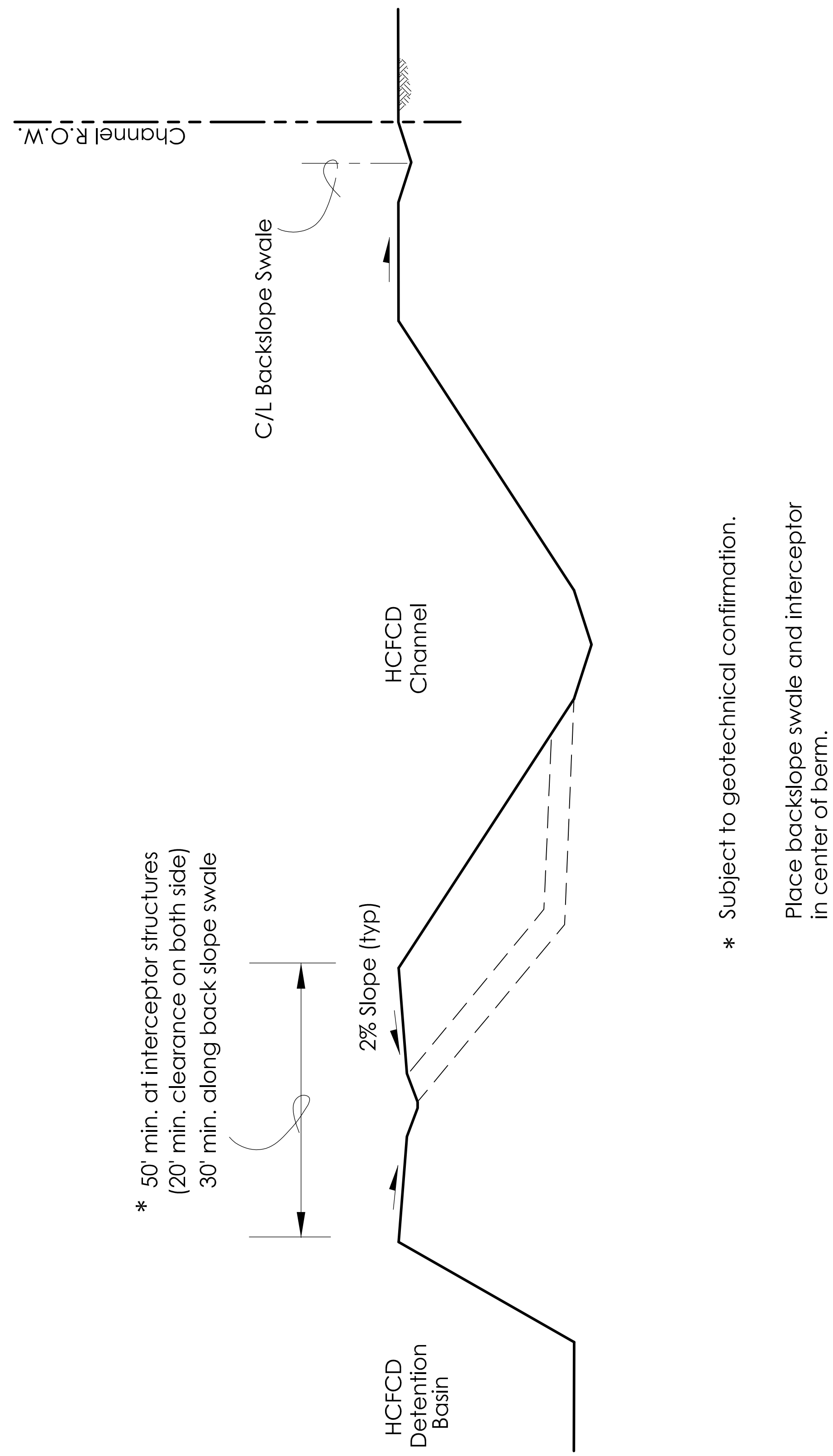


MAINTENANCE ACCESS ON BENCH

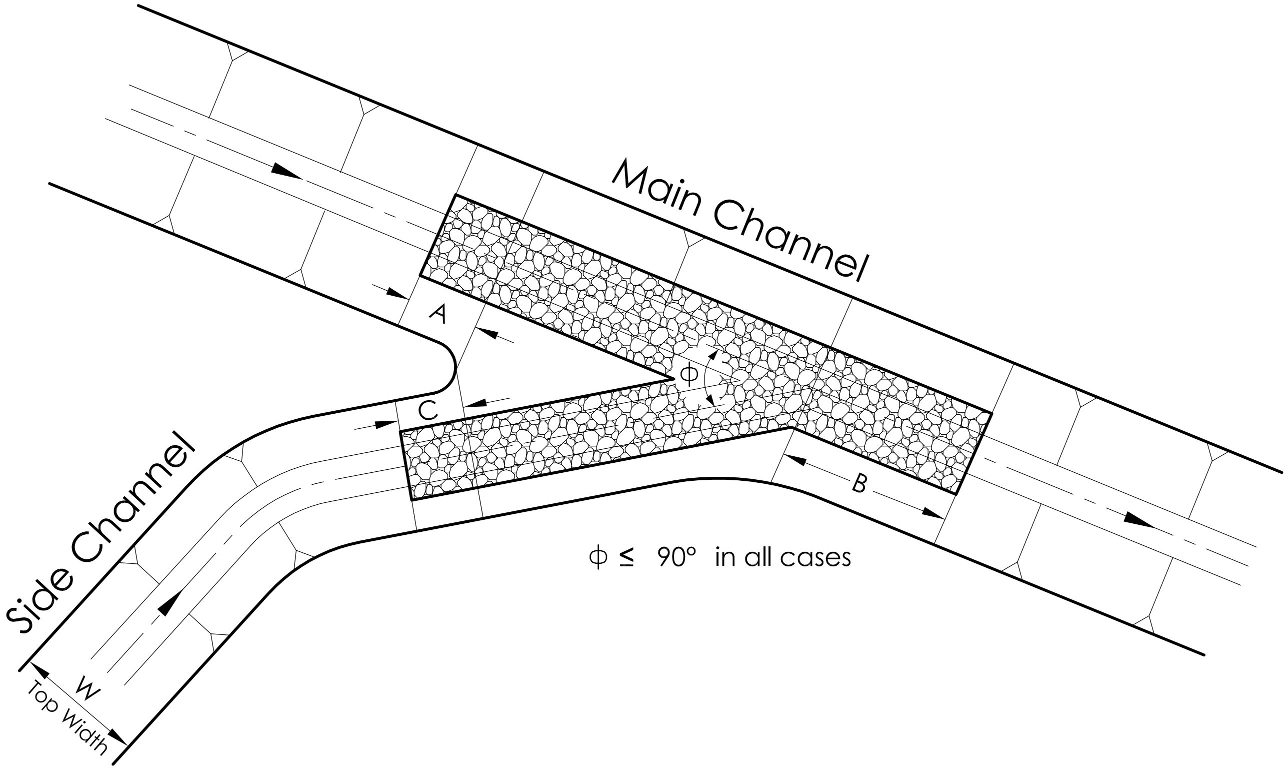


MAINTENANCE ACCESS ON SIDE SLOPE

Harris County Flood Control District	**POLICY, CRITERIA, & PROCEDURE MANUAL**	**GRASS-LINED CHANNEL SECTIONS-MAINTENANCE ACCESS ALTERNATIVES**
	DATE: 10/5/04	**EXHIBIT 5-5**



Harris County Flood Control District **POLICY, CRITERIA, & PROCEDURE MANUAL**	**MAINTENANCE BERM BETWEEN HCFCD CHANNEL AND HCFCD DETENTION BASIN**	
	DATE: 10/5/04	**EXHIBIT 5-6**



MINIMUM EXTENT OF EROSION PROTECTION

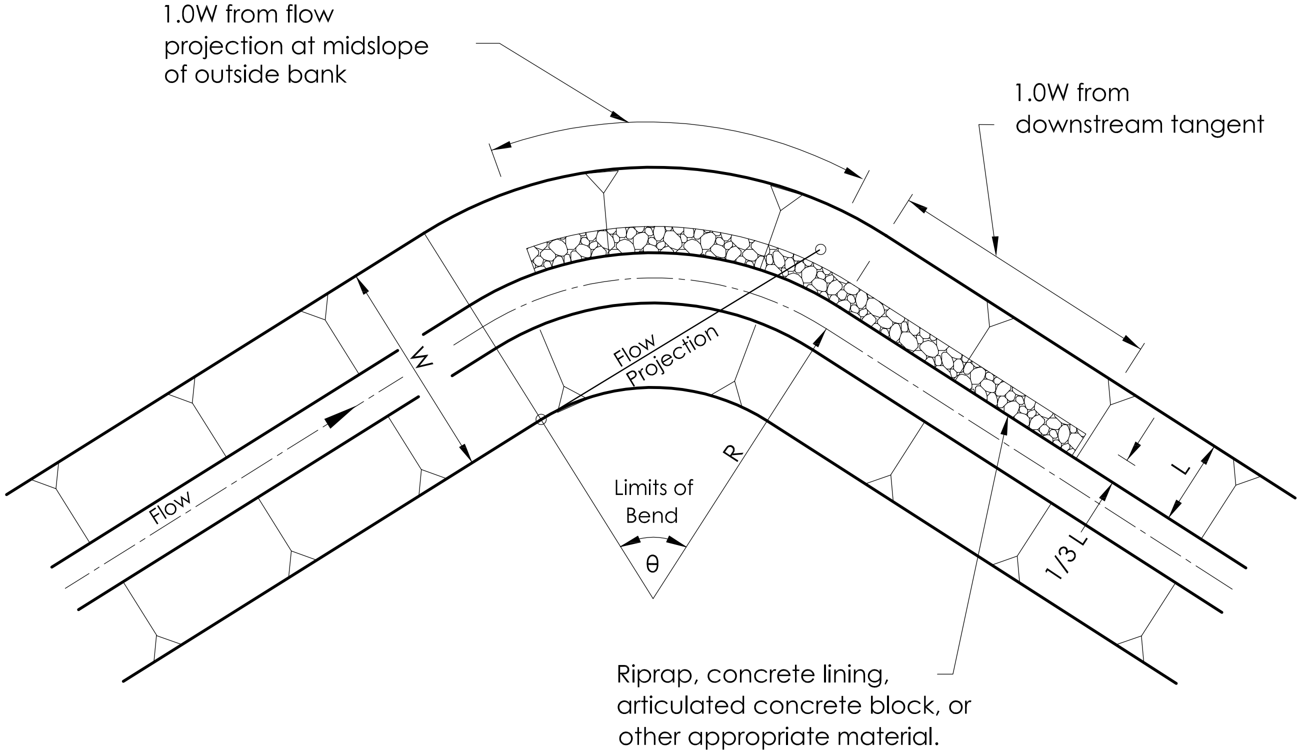
Location	Distance (ft.)
A	20'
B	Larger of 50' or 0.75 X W ÷TAN ϕ
C	20'

Extend erosion protection across bottom and at least one-third up the side slopes.

1% Exceedance Velocity * In Side Channel (ft. per sec.)	Angle of Intersection, ϕ 30°- 45°	45°- 90°
5 or more	Protection	Protection
3 - 5	No Protection	Protection
3 or less	No Protection	No Protection

* Assume no backwater from main channel

Harris County Flood Control District — POLICY, CRITERIA, & PROCEDURE MANUAL	EROSION PROTECTION AT CHANNEL CONFLUENCES	
	DATE: 10/5/04	EXHIBIT 5-7



θ = Bend Angle

R = Radius of curvature

W = Ultimate channel top width

L = Length of side slope

Recommended bend design: $R \geq 3$ W, $\theta \leq 90°$

Erosion protection required when:

- R < 3 W and 1% exceedance velocity > 3 feet per second
- Soil type, channel geometry, sinuosity or velocity indicate a potential problem
- Recommended minimum R = W.

Erosion protection in the channel bottom is not shown, but it may be needed.

Harris County Flood Control District

POLICY, CRITERIA, & PROCEDURE MANUAL

EROSION PROTECTION AT CHANNEL BEND

DATE: 10/5/04 | **EXHIBIT 5-8**

SECTION 6 - STORMWATER DETENTION BASINS

6.1 Introduction

When to Use 6.1.1

Use stormwater detention basins:

- To reduce flood risks.
- To maintain peak flow rates to pre-development or pre-project conditions.
- In conjunction with channel conveyance improvements so flood levels downstream of the project do not increase.

Where Not Required 6.1.2

Stormwater detention basins are not required:

- Where system capacity exists for the new development as determined by the HCFCD and accepted by Harris County Commissioners Court.
- For only one single family residence where no major changes in existing conditions are proposed and it is not part of a larger development project.
- For redevelopment projects that do not increase the amount of impervious cover or the runoff from the site.

Terminology 6.1.3

Detention basin definitions used in this manual are presented in Appendix E, Terminology. Exhibit 6-1 illustrates an on-stream detention basin, off-stream detention basin, and in-line detention storage.

In-line Detention Storage 6.1.4

In-line detention is permissible within a HCFCD channel only when:

- The proposed development is located at the headwaters of a watershed or sub-area and no other landowners drain into the in-line facility.
- Multiple landowners of proposed developments located at the headwaters of a watershed or sub-area execute an agreement to mutually utilize an in-line facility and no other landowners drain into it.
- The HCFCD maintained channel is already an in-line detention facility.

Note: Use channel design criteria for in-line detention basins.

Developments ≤ One Acre 6.1.5

For new developments less than or equal to one acre, use the detention criteria of the entity responsible for the road the property is located on even if the outfall is into a HCFCD facility.

6.2 Design Procedure

Design Procedure 6.2.1

A suggested procedure for designing a gravity detention basin is given in the table below. For developments less than 50 acres, some steps are simplified (see Section 6.10, Method 1 – Small Project Drainage Areas).

Step	Action
1	Select a location and prepare a general layout for the detention basin.
2	Determine the inflow hydrographs and maximum allowable outflow rates.
3	Design the maximum allowable water elevation in the basin and determine tailwater condition in the outfall channel.
4	Estimate the detention volume needed and size the outflow structure.
5	Route the design 1% exceedance inflow hydrograph through the basin and outflow structure with appropriate tailwater condition.
6	Adjust the detention volume and outflow structure, if necessary, until the allowable 1% exceedance outflow rate is not exceeded.
7	Route the 10% exceedance hydrograph through the facility and make appropriate adjustments to the outflow structure. Route other frequencies, as appropriate, and make adjustments, as necessary.
8	Verify storm sewers and channels entering the basin will function as intended, relative to the design water levels in the detention basin.
9	Provide an emergency spillway or overflow structure for an extreme rainfall event.
10	Investigate potential geotechnical and structural problems and establish an erosion control plan.
11	Establish the right-of-way limits, including access for maintenance and space for multi-use.

6.3 General Design Criteria

Overview 6.3.1

A gravity detention basin's location, size, and layout are influenced by the physical features of the site, the type of development proposed, the receiving stream's characteristics, the storage volume needed, and the detention basin's other uses. This Section covers general criteria and subsequent sections cover criteria for specific features.

Considerations 6.3.2

Factors to consider when locating a detention basin:

- Overland and storm sewer flow to the detention basin. (Preferred location of the basin is the lowest area of the property.)
- Effect of the detention basin function with respect to the flood plain.
- Other factors listed in Section 6.4.1, Overview.

Design Frequencies 6.3.3

Design new detention facilities to detain the 10% and 1% exceedance probability, 24-hour storm events for proposed watershed conditions.

When detention basin modifications are necessary to accommodate a proposed storm sewer outfall or a proposed development, design the modifications such that the 10% and 1% exceedance probability water surface profiles in the detention basin and downstream channels are not increased above existing conditions.

Note: If a downstream channel has less than a 10% exceedance probability capacity, also design for the frequency when the channel is flowing full or at its flooding threshold. HCFCD has flooding threshold data.

Outflow Rates 6.3.4

To comply with local regulations and HCFCD policy to avoid increasing flood risks or flood hazards, maximum allowable outflow rates from detention basins are restricted to the pre-development 10% and 1% exceedance probability, 24-hour events.

If a downstream channel has less than a 10% exceedance probability capacity, also restrict the outflow to the amount the pre-development project site contributes to the channel when it is flowing full or at its flooding threshold.

If the outflow is into a roadside ditch or storm sewer, restrict the maximum allowable outflow to the rate allowed from the proposed site development using criteria adopted by the jurisdiction responsible for the roadside ditch or storm sewer.

Continued on next page

6.3 General Design Criteria, Continued

Hydraulic Features 6.3.5

Hydraulic features typically constructed within a detention basin are listed in the table below. Criteria for the hydraulic features are presented in the sections indicated in the table below.

Hydraulic Feature	Section
Backslope Drainage System	11.1
Inflow Structures	6.6
Outflow Structures	6.7
Pipe Outfalls	11.3
Layout	6.4

Geotechnical Investigations 6.3.6

A geotechnical investigation is required for all work in existing and proposed HCFCD maintained detention basins. Previous investigations can be utilized, if applicable.

As a minimum, address the following:

- Stability of the basin side slopes for short term and long term conditions.
- Stability of the deep pool side slopes.
- Evaluation of bottom instability due to excess hydrostatic pressure.
- Control of groundwater.
- Identification of dispersive soils.
- Potential erosion problems.
- Constructability issues.
- Evaluation of inflow and outflow structures.

Follow the geotechnical investigation requirements as provided in HCFCD's Geotechnical Investigation Guidelines in Appendix D.

Water Quality Features 6.3.7

Water quality features placed in a HCFCD maintained detention basin are covered in Section 16, Water Quality Features.

Continued on next page

6.3 General Design Criteria, Continued

Environmental Investigations 6.3.8

Compliance with appropriate federal, state, and local environmental rules, laws, regulations, and permits is required when modifying or constructing HCFCD facilities (see Section 17, Environmental and Archeological Compliance).

Maintenance Access Plan 6.3.9

For new detention basins, submit a maintenance access plan with the drainage or design report, or the construction drawings.

For detention basin modifications, update the maintenance access plan reflecting any changes needed due to the proposed modification.

6.4 Layout

Overview 6.4.1

Layout of a detention basin is influenced by many factors, such as:

- Topography.
- Volume needed.
- Grading and depth requirements.
- Geometric design criteria.
- Existing and future roads, pipelines, and utilities.
- Location of inflow, outflow control, and emergency overflow structures.
- Maintenance access requirements.
- Environmental features such as jurisdictional waters of the United States (wetlands).
- Soil and groundwater conditions.
- Owner designated features.

This section focuses on the geometric design factors influencing the detention basin size, depth, side slopes, and bottom design.

Depth 6.4.2

The depth of a gravity detention basin is usually determined by the depth of the outfall channel, roadside ditch, or storm sewer. In some cases, the depth may be determined by the depth of the inflow channel or storm sewer, groundwater level, or soil conditions.

For pumped detention systems, see Section 6.15, Pump Detention Systems.

Side Slopes 6.4.3

For grass-lined detention basins:

- The steepest side slope allowed is 3(horizontal):1(vertical) for long term stability and maintenance.
- Perform a geotechnical investigation to confirm the steepest side slope allowable.
- Where side slopes are 5(horizontal):1(vertical) or flatter and there is a 20-foot minimum maintenance access in the bottom at the toe of slope.
  - The maintenance access at the top of slope can be eliminated.
  - A backslope drainage system is required unless one of the exceptions in Section 11.1.2, Where to Use, applies.
  - Top of slope must be a minimum of 10 feet from the right-of-way line.

For concrete-lined slopes, follow the recommendations in this manual regarding concrete-lined channels.

Continued on next page

6.4 Layout, Continued

Bottom Design – Introduction 6.4.4

The detention basin bottom impacts a basin's long-term maintenance, aesthetics, and multi-use. The bottom design affects the detention basin depth, volume, and surface area.

The bottom can be designed to either be dry, wet, or a combination of wet and dry between periods of inundation, depending on the desired use and maintenance requirements.

Dry Bottom Design 6.4.5

A well-graded bottom incorporating pilot channels and good cross slopes is required to facilitate routine mowing and complete drainage of a basin following a runoff event. This is referred to as a dry bottom.

Criteria for a well-graded (or dry) bottom are presented in the table below and shown in Exhibits 6-2 and 6-4.

Feature		Criteria
Outfall Pipe	Outlet Invert	For flat bottom channels, one foot above channel flowline or one foot above the normal water surface, whichever is higher. For channels with center depression, use table in Section 5.4.3, Bottom Configuration-Trapezoidal Grass-Lined.
	Inlet Invert	A minimum of 0.5 foot above outlet invert and minimum 3 feet per second velocity when hydraulic gradient = flowline gradient.
Pilot Channel	Starting Flowline	At outfall pipe inlet invert. If no outfall pipe, a minimum of 1.5 feet above the receiving channel flowline or normal water surface.
	Flowline Gradient	Grass - Minimum 0.002 feet per foot (0.2%). Concrete – Minimum 0.001 feet per foot (0.1%)
	Grass-Lined or Concrete-Lined	One-foot minimum depth and side slopes of 3:1 or flatter.
	Concrete Grade Control Structures	Use at intersections with wetlands, deep pools, and other pilot channels. Base design on the interceptor structure standard detail.
	Location	A minimum of 20 feet away from the toe of the basin side slope.
Inflow Pipe	Invert	At pilot channel flowline or higher.
Transverse or cross slopes		Minimum 0.01 feet per foot (1%).

Continued on next page

6.4 Layout, Continued

Wet Bottom Design – Introduction 6.4.6

The use of a wet bottom, such as a permanent water pool and/or wetland area, is permissible. The wet bottom can be used in combination with a dry bottom.

Wet detention basin bottom features are described below.

Wetland 6.4.7

The purpose of a wetland is to support wetland plants and habitat. Wetland areas have shallow water that may not be permanent.

A wetland can be a stand-alone feature or incorporated around the edge of a deep pool.

Deep Pool 6.4.8

The purpose of a deep pool is to:

- Provide open water for aesthetics.
- Reduce vegetation management costs in larger detention basins.
- Support benthic and fish habitats that help sustain a healthy pond.
- Provide fishing opportunities.

A deep pool cannot be used alone. The maintenance shelf must be used in conjunction with the deep pool.

Maintenance Shelf 6.4.9

The purpose of the maintenance shelf is to:

- Provide vehicular maintenance access to the permanent deep pool.
- Reduce the risk of people (children) from running or rolling down a slope into the water.
- Improve the aesthetics around a permanent deep pool.

A maintenance shelf is required with a permanent deep pool. It can also be used around a wetland area.

Continued on next page

6.4 Layout, Continued

Wet Bottom Design 6.4.10

Criteria for a wet bottom are presented in the table below and shown in Exhibits 6-3 and 6-4.

The minimum water surface area for a permanent deep pool in a HCFCD maintained facility is one acre.

Feature	Criteria	
Outfall Pipe	Outlet Invert	Same as Section 6.4.5, Dry Bottom Design
	Inlet Invert	• Same as Section 6.4.5, Dry Bottom Design • Visible for inspection and maintenance from at least one end of the pipe
Risers	Inlet	Visible for inspection and maintenance
Inflow Pipe	Outlet End	Use criteria of the entity responsible for the inflow pipe. If HCFCD, visible for inspection and maintenance
Maintenance Shelf	Height	1 foot above static water surface
	Cross slope	Minimum 0.01 feet per foot (1.0%)
	Width	Minimum 10 feet
Deep Pool	Depth	Minimum 6 feet; Maximum depends on soils, geometry, and habitat goals
	Side Slope	No steeper than 3:1 (see Section 6.4.3, Side Slopes)
	Bottom Slope	Flat
Wetland	Depth	0 – 18 inches
	Bottom Slope	Flat or mild slope

Water Edge Walls 6.4.11

Walls at the water's edge (bulkheads) are permissible under the following conditions:

- An entity other than HCFCD agrees to maintain the walls at the water's edge. They are a non-flood control feature.
- A maintenance shelf is included with the water edge wall.

6.5 Right-of-Way

Overview 6.5.1

This section provides criteria and guidelines for determining the right-of-way or public drainage easement limits for a detention basin maintained by HCFCD.

The dedication and conveyance process is presented in Section 15, Right-of-Way.

Right-of-Way Limits 6.5.2

The right-of-way limits for a typical detention basin to be maintained by HCFCD are:

- The area within the top of bank plus,
- Twenty feet for maintenance access plus,
- Ten feet for the backslope swale system, where used.

Exceptions:

- See Section 6.4.3, Side Slopes.
- See Section 11.1.2, Where To Use, for conditions where backslope swale systems are not needed.

Use field survey data and detention basin profile to determine the limits of the detention basin top of bank.

HCFCD Detention Basins Adjacent to Channels or Roads 6.5.3

See Sections 5.5.6 and 5.5.8 for right-of-way criteria where HCFCD detention basins are located adjacent to a HCFCD channel or road.

Continued on next page

6.5 Right-of-Way, Continued

Ultimate Right-of-Way Determination 6.5.4

Determine the ultimate right-of-way for detention basins in coordination with HCFCD.

If a master drainage plan for the project is available:

- Determine if the assumptions and conditions are still applicable, then
- Either confirm or reestablish the width, location, and alignment.

If no master drainage plan for the project is available, HCFCD will work with the design engineer to make the determination.

6.6 Inflow Structures

Inflow
6.6.1

Stormwater run-off enters off-stream detention basins through storm sewer pipes, swales, and/or overland. Normal hydrologic analysis is performed for calculating the inflow rate.

Design the storm sewer and overland flow system to convey the 1% storm event into the detention basin.

Inflow Structures
6.6.2

- For overland inflow, see Section 13.2, Extreme Event Overland Flow Swales.
- For storm sewer pipe inflow, see Section 11.3, Pipe Outfalls.

  Concrete pipe may be used provided:
  - Concrete slope paving is placed at the end of the pipe in accordance with the HCFCD Standard Concrete Channel Lining Detail Sheet in Appendix D; or
  - A headwall is placed at the end of the pipe in accordance with locally accepted headwall standards published by TxDOT or Harris County.
- Box culverts may be used provided a headwall is placed at the end of the box in accordance with locally accepted headwall standards.

Side-Weir
6.6.3

When a delay in filling the detention basin is desired until the water in the channel reaches a certain level, an inflow structure referred to as a side-weir can be used. This approach:

- Keeps the detention basin from being inundated from the smaller, more frequent storms that do not result in flooding.
- Reserves the detention volume for later in a severe storm event when the volume is more effective at reducing peak flows.
- Can require less stormwater volume and land than a conventional flow-through facility.

Contact HCFCD for the SIDEWEIR software and guidelines for analysis and design of side-weirs.

Note: Whether a side-weir or flow-through is used depends on where the detention basin is located in the watershed and where the area of flood level reduction is located. If the area of flood level reduction is hydraulically close to the detention basin, a side-weir is usually more efficient.

Continued on next page

6.6 Inflow Structures, Continued

Erosion Control 6.6.4

High velocities and turbulence can occur at inflow pipes. Use structural erosion control measures, as needed, such as concrete lining, riprap, or articulated concrete blocks.

Use concrete lining for protection at weir structures. Adequate coverage, thickness, reinforcement, and toe walls must be designed for each structure. Riprap can be used to transition to a grass-lined channel or detention basin.

Articulated concrete blocks and riprap can be used in place of concrete lining at weirs, except where high velocities and turbulence are expected.

6.7 Outflow Structures

Common Structures 6.7.1

Common structures used to restrict outflow from a gravity flow detention basin are pipes, box culverts, risers, and weirs. The numbers, sizes, and elevations can be varied to control outflows for different storm frequencies.

Several equations and computer programs are available to compute flows and head losses through pipes, boxes, and weirs. Pipe, box culvert, and weir equations for outlet control conditions are presented below.

Pipe Equation 6.7.2

For a round pipe flowing full with both the entrance and exit submerged, the head loss equation is:

$$H = \left[\frac{2.52(1 + k_e)}{D^4} + \frac{466n^2 L}{D^{16/3}} \right] \frac{Q^2}{100}$$

Pipe Culvert Head Loss Equation

where:

H	=	head difference between entrance and exit in feet
k_e	=	entrance loss coefficient (see Section 6.7.4, Entrance Loss Coefficients)
D	=	diameter of pipe in feet
n	=	Manning's roughness coefficient (0.024 for a corrugated metal pipe and 0.013 for a concrete pipe)
L	=	length of pipe in feet
Q	=	design discharge rate in cubic feet per second

Box Culvert Equation 6.7.3

For a box culvert flowing full with both the entrance and exit submerged, the head loss equation is:

$$H = (1.0 + k_e)\frac{V^2}{2g} + \frac{V^2 n^2 L}{2.21R^{4/3}}$$

Box Culvert Head Loss Equation

where:

H	=	head difference between entrance and exit in feet
k_e	=	entrance loss coefficient (see Section 6.7.4, Entrance Loss Coefficients)
V	=	velocity in the culvert in feet per second = discharge/culvert area
g	=	acceleration due to gravity (32.2 feet per second^2)
n	=	Manning's roughness coefficient (0.015 for a concrete box)
L	=	length of box in feet
R	=	hydraulic radius of culvert in feet = culvert area/wetted perimeter

Continued on next page

6.7 Outflow Structures, Continued

Entrance Loss Coefficients 6.7.4

Entrance loss coefficients, k_e, for common entrances are:

Sharp, projecting corrugated metal pipe...…………………..0.9
Square edge pipe or culvert with headwall…...……..……….0.5
Well rounded edge, tapered wingwalls……………………...0.2

See the FHWA, Hydraulic Design Series No. 5, *Hydraulic Design of Highway Culverts* (1985), for a complete list of entrance loss coefficients.

Minimum Pipe Size 6.7.5

To reduce the chance of clogging and improve the chance a detention basin will work when needed and as designed, minimum pipe size restrictors are presented in the table below.

For a	The minimum pipe size restrictor is
Private detention basin	6 inches
HCFCD detention basin	24 inches

Note: For detention facilities discharging into a HCFCD maintained facility, the minimum outfall pipe size within the HCFCD maintained facility is 24 inches. If a restrictor smaller than 24 inches is needed, place a short section of the smaller pipe or a plate in the larger pipe at a visible location outside the HCFCD right-of-way. Locate the restrictor to facilitate inspection and debris removal.

Continued on next page

6.7 Outflow Structures, Continued

Orifice Equation 6.7.6

To restrict the outflow with a short segment of pipe or reduced opening size, use the orifice equation below. For other configurations, see Brater and King's Handbook of Hydraulics or other applicable references.

$$Q = CA\sqrt{2gH}$$

where:

Q = discharge in cubic feet per second
C = coefficient of discharge
- 0.8 for short segments of pipe
- 0.6 for openings in plates, standpipes, or concrete walls

A = area of opening in square feet
g = acceleration due to gravity (32.2 feet/second^2)
H = head difference between entrance and exit in feet when orifice is fully submerged, or the difference between the water surface elevation at the entrance and the centroid of the orifice in feet when orifice is partially submerged.

Outflow Structures 6.7.7

For pipe outflow structures in HCFCD maintained channels:

- Use corrugated metal or HDPE pipes (see Section 11.3, Pipe Outfalls).
- Include concrete lining around the pipe if soil and velocity conditions warrant it (see Appendix D, HCFCD Concrete Lining Standard Detail).

For box culvert outflow structures, use a headwall recessed into the HCFCD channel that does not disrupt the flow in the channel. Design and construct the box culvert and headwall in accordance with TxDOT or Harris County criteria.

Backflow Preventers 6.7.8

Backflow preventers are acceptable provided they:

- Are above the normal water surface.
- Do not project into the channel flow.
- Can be easily accessed to remove debris.

Seepage 6.7.9

Seepage around pipe or box outflow structures can be a significant problem due to the potential high head differential between the channel and detention basin. Carefully construct with sufficient compaction of the backfill material around the pipes or boxes as recommended by the geotechnical engineer.

Continued on next page

6.7 Outflow Structures, Continued

Weirs 6.7.10

Weirs can be used to control the design outflow or the emergency overflow from a detention basin. Weirs are sometimes used as an inflow structure, also.

The rectangular weir equation is:

$$Q = CLH^{3/2}$$

where:

Q	=	weir discharge in cubic feet per second
C	=	weir coefficient
L	=	horizontal length of weir in feet
H	=	head on weir in feet

The value of the weir coefficient, C, depends on the weir shape (for example, broad crested or sharp crested) and if the weir is submerged or not. See Brater and King's Handbook of Hydraulics or other applicable references.

Erosion Control 6.7.11

High head differentials and erosive velocities for prolonged periods of time can occur at pipe inlets. Use concrete lining or riprap around pipe inlets where erosive velocities and turbulence are expected.

Flow from the outflow structure can cause erosion in the outfall channel due to high velocities and turbulence. See Section 10, Erosion and Sediment Control for specific erosion control guidelines and criteria.

Use concrete lining for weirs. Design coverage, thickness, reinforcement, and toe walls for each structure. Riprap, articulated concrete blocks, or other similar material can be used where the chance of turbulence is low.

Multiple Frequency Outflow Structures 6.7.12

Maximum allowable outflow rates are restricted to pre-development 10% and 1% exceedance probability discharges, and in some cases, a more frequent event associated with the bankfull capacity of the outfall channel (see Section 6.3.4, Outflow Rates). If a water quality improvement feature is also included, then there is also outflow control for high frequency rainfall events.

Typical multiple frequency outflow control structures generally consist of pipes or boxes of various sizes at different elevations or a riser and an emergency overflow weir.

6.8 Tailwater

Overview 6.8.1

The water surface elevation in the outfall channel at the outflow structure is the tailwater. The tailwater affects both the outflow structure design and the stage-outflow relationship of the detention basin.

To facilitate analysis and design of detention basins, two tailwater assumptions are possible:

- Fixed.
- Variable.

Note: Specific criteria are provided for each of the three methods for determining detention volume.

Backwater 6.8.2

Near channel confluences and in coastal zones, backwater can occur that is higher than the tailwater from the flow in the channel itself. Consider the backwater in designing the emergency overflow and establishing design water levels in the detention basin and proposed development.

6.9 Detention Volume

Overview
6.9.1

Determining the stormwater detention volume for a small development project or a complex large development project requires use of the same hydrologic and hydraulic principles. However, different methodologies are presented in this section which recognize sizes of projects and levels of complexity to facilitate the analytical and design process.

Methods
6.9.2

Where detention is required in watersheds or portions of watersheds, the three methods to determine the detention volume are listed below and covered in detail in subsequent sections. Each method addresses the inflow, allowable outflow, and tailwater conditions.

Method	For	Project Drainage Areas
1	Small	Less than 50 acres
2	Moderate	Between 50 acres and 640 acres
3	Large	Greater than 640 acres

Note: There are circumstances when Method 3 can be used for areas less than 640 acres. Coordinate these analyses with HCFCD.

Continued on next page

6.9 Detention Volume, Continued

Minimum Detention Volume 6.9.3

Minimum detention volumes are:

- The volume calculated using Method 1, 2, or 3, but not less than 0.55 acre-feet per acre of new development.
- The volume calculated by conducting a comprehensive hydrologic and hydraulic analysis along the entire length of the main channel, but not less than 0.45 acre-feet per acre of new development or as defined in a watershed or subwatershed with an adopted regional or master plan.
- For new developments with limited on-site drainage improvements and relatively small amounts of impervious cover, the volume calculated using Method 1, 2, or 3, but not less than 0.35 acre-feet per acre of new development . This applies to the Developed Green Areas and Residential – Rural Lot land use categories listed in the table in Section 3.5.1, Relationship to Development. It also applies to subdivisions served by roadside ditches in the Residential – Large Lot category where the lots are ≥ 2 acres.
- For pumped detention facilities, see Section 6.15, Pumped Detention Systems.

Note: The area of new development is based on the area of the property, not just the impervious cover area. See Section 3.5, Impervious Cover, for a generalized relationship between impervious cover and land development.

What to Include 6.9.4

Include only the storage volume below the detention basin design water surface elevation in:

- The detention basin itself.
- Storm sewers and open channels discharging into the detention basin.

Storage volume in streets above the detention basin design water surface calculated in dynamic hydrologic and hydraulic models cannot be included in the detention storage volume.

Include only the storage volume above the normal pool elevation for detention basins with a permanent deep pool or wetland.

Do not include storage volume used to mitigate flood plain fill.

6.10 Method 1 – Small Project Drainage Areas

When to Use
6.10.1

For projects with drainage areas less than 50 acres, Method 1 is recommended. Some of the steps presented in Section 6.2, Design Procedure, are simplified to facilitate the design process for these smaller sites.

Inflow
6.10.2

No inflow hydrograph or discharge is calculated.

Maximum Outflow Rate
6.10.3

Maximum allowable outflow criteria are in Section 6.3.4, Outflow Rates.

For HCFCD maintained channels, use:

- The Site Runoff Curves (Exhibits 3-1 and 3-2) to determine the maximum outflow rate for the 10% and 1% exceedance probabilities.
- The amount of flow the project site contributes to the bankfull capacity of the outfall channel.

For roadside ditches or storm sewers, use the methodology adopted by the agency responsible for the roadside ditch or storm sewer to determine the maximum outflow rate.

Tailwater
6.10.4

Tailwater is not used to determine the detention volume in Method 1, but it is used to size the outflow structure.

Use the top of pipe in the outfall channel as a fixed tailwater condition.

Since hydrographs are not used in Method 1, variable tailwater is not used.

Detention Volume
6.10.5

Use the minimum detention storage volume designated in Section 6.9.3, Minimum Detention Volume.

For most small projects, it will be 0.55 acre-feet per acre of new development.

Outflow Structure
6.10.6

Using the maximum allowable outflow rate and applicable tailwater condition, size the outflow structure using the appropriate equations and information in Section 6.7, Outflow Structures.

Documentation
6.10.7

Include assumptions, justifications, calculations, and sketches in the drainage report submittal to HCFCD (see Section 19, Report Requirements).

6.11 Method 2 – Moderate Project Drainage Areas

When to Use
6.11.1

For projects with drainage areas between 50 and 640 acres, Method 2 is recommended. Some of the steps presented in Section 6.2, Design Procedure, are simplified to facilitate the design process for moderate size sites.

Use Method 2 only if correlation with existing HEC-1 (HEC-HMS) or HEC-2 (HEC-RAS) modeling on the outfall channel is not necessary. If correlation is necessary, use Method 3.

Inflow
6.11.2

Use the Small Watershed Method presented in Section 3.6, Small Watershed Hydrograph Method, to develop hypothetical inflow hydrographs for each of the design exceedance probabilities.

Determine peak inflow rates using the Site Runoff Curves for areas between 50 and 640 acres (Exhibits 3-1 and 3-2).

Maximum Allowable Outflow
6.11.3

Maximum outflow criteria are in Section 6.3.4, Outflow Rates.

For HCFCD maintained channels, use:

- The Site Runoff Curves (Exhibits 3-1 and 3-2) to determine the maximum outflow rate for the 10% and 1% exceedance probabilities.
- The amount of flow the project site contributes to the bankfull capacity of the outfall channel.

For roadside ditches or storm sewers, use the methodology adopted by the agency responsible for the roadside ditch or storm sewer to determine the maximum outflow rate.

Tailwater
6.11.4

Since a hypothetical inflow hydrograph is used that does not have any correlation with the outfall channel hydrograph, a variable tailwater based on an existing watershed model is not used.

Use the top of pipe in the outfall channel as a fixed tailwater condition.

Continued on next page

6.11 Method 2 – Moderate Project Drainage Areas, Continued

Detention Volume – Preliminary Estimate 6.11.5

Estimate the detention volume by plotting the computed inflow hydrograph and plotting a straight line from the origin to the maximum allowable outflow rate on the recession side of the inflow hydrograph. The area between the straight line and the inflow hydrograph is a preliminary estimate of the detention volume (see Exhibit 6-5).

Outflow Structure – Preliminary Size Estimate 6.11.6

Using the maximum allowable outflow rate and applicable tailwater condition, size the outflow structure using the appropriate equations and information in Section 6.7, Outflow Structures.

Detention Volume and Outflow Structure 6.11.7

To determine the final detention volume and outflow structure size and configuration, follow steps 5 – 11 in Section 6.2, Design Procedure.

The minimum detention volumes designated in Section 6.9.3, Minimum Detention Volume, apply.

To route the inflow hydrographs through the detention basin, a standard reservoir routing procedure is recommended.

Note: The reservoir routing procedure requires the development of stage versus storage and stage versus outflow relationships.

Alternative Models 6.11.8

In some cases, a standard reservoir routing procedure may be difficult to use or not be applicable. For example, multiple detention basins in series that are hydraulically dependent or an unconventional control structure. Applicable alternative models can be used. Inform HCFCD early in the review process of the computer model that will be used and provide model documentation, if required, to facilitate the review.

Documentation 6.11.9

Include assumptions, justifications, calculations, summary tables, profiles, hydrographs, and sketches in the drainage report submitted to HCFCD. See Section 19, Report Requirements for a list of requirements.

6.12 Method 3 – Large Project Drainage Areas

When to Use
6.12.1

Use Method 3 for projects:

- With drainage areas greater than 640 acres, or
- Where correlation with existing HEC-1 (HEC-HMS) or HEC-2 (HEC-RAS) is necessary, or
- Where definition or modification of effective FEMA regulatory flood plains or floodways is necessary, or
- Where complexity of the project justifies a detailed analysis for a drainage area less than 640 acres. Coordinate these analyses with HCFCD.

Analysis
6.12.2

A detailed hydrologic and hydraulic analysis is required utilizing HEC-1 or HEC-HMS and HEC-2 or HEC-RAS using the current Watershed Modeling Method (see Section 3.4, Watershed Modeling Method).

Use the above referenced models to determine the following:

- Inflow hydrographs.
- Maximum allowable outflow rates.
- Variable tailwater conditions.
- Detention volume requirements.
- Outflow structure configuration and sizes.

The minimum detention volumes designated in Section 6.9.3, Minimum Detention Volume, apply.

Note: The preliminary estimating techniques presented in Section 6.11, Method 2 can be utilized in Method 3, as well.

Alternative Models
6.12.3

In some cases, HEC-1 (HEC-HMS) and HEC-2 (HEC-RAS) cannot accurately simulate some projects or detention basin conditions. For example, multiple detention basins in series that are hydraulically dependent or an unconventional control structure. It is acceptable to use inflows from HEC-1 (HEC-HMS) as input into special programs, such as detention basin routing programs. The outflows from the special programs can then be inserted back into HEC-1 (HEC-HMS) to analyze the effects on the channel.

Documentation
6.12.4

Include assumptions, justifications, summary tables, profiles, hydrographs, computer runs, and sketches in the drainage report submitted to HCFCD. See Section 19, Report Requirements for a list of requirements.

6.13 Emergency Overflow

Criteria 6.13.1

An emergency overflow structure or route is required for all detention basins.

Design the emergency overflow as a path for the water to follow when water levels in the detention basin exceed the 1% exceedance probability design water level.

Locate the emergency overflow such that when the flow leaves the detention facility, impacts on existing flood levels and nearby structures are minimized.

Considerations 6.13.2

Consider the natural flow pattern when locating the emergency overflow path.

Avoid placing the emergency overflow on fill which is easily eroded.

Use the criteria presented in Section 13, Extreme Event Overflow in designing emergency overflow weirs.

6.14 Erosion Control

Criteria
6.14.1

Establish grass on all exposed or disturbed soil in a detention basin except where structural erosion protection, wetlands, or permanent pools are located (see Section 10.3, Turf Establishment).

Use structural measures such as concrete lining, riprap, articulated concrete blocks, or similar materials where excessive velocities or turbulence are expected (see Section 4.4, Velocities; Section 10, Erosion and Sediment Control; Section 6.6, Inflow Structures; and Section 6.7, Outflow Structures).

Backslope
Swales
6.14.2

Backslope drainage systems are required where the natural ground slopes toward the detention basin (see Section 11.1, Backslope Drainage Systems).

6.15 Pumped Detention Systems

Overview 6.15.1

Detention basins are drained by pumping instead of gravity outflow when the outfall depth is limited and deepening is not practical or possible.

This section covers criteria for both public and private pumped detention facilities that outfall into a HCFCD maintained channel.

For public and private pumped detention facilities that outfall into a roadside ditch or storm sewer, use the criteria for the applicable jurisdiction.

Public Pumped Detention Facilities 6.15.2

Public pumped detention facilities can be operated and maintained by either HCFCD or another taxing authority such as a municipal utility district.

HCFCD will operate and maintain a public pumped detention facility if the:

- Acceptance Criteria in Section 2.2 are satisfied;
- Procedures in this manual are followed; and
- Criteria in this section are satisfied.

Design Procedure 6.15.3

Follow the same design procedure as presented in Section 6.2, Design Procedure.

Pumped Detention Criteria 6.15.4

Most of the criteria for gravity detention basins apply to pumped detention basins. Criteria that are different are presented in this Section. A schematic of a pumped detention facility is shown in Exhibit 6-6.

For public and private pumped detention facilities that outfall into a HCFCD maintained channel, the criteria are:

Volume

- Minimum detention volume is 0.75 acre-feet per acre of new development if no hydrologic and hydraulic analysis is performed. (Minimum volumes in Section 6.9.3, Minimum Detention Volume, apply if a Method 3 hydrologic and hydraulic analysis is performed.)
- Limit the volume of pumped storage to no more than 50% of the total basin volume. The remaining volume must discharge by gravity.

Continued on next page

6.15 Pumped Detention Systems, Continued

Pumped Detention Criteria - Continued 6.15.4

Outflow

- Limit the combined pumped and gravity outflow rate to the amount of flow the pre-project site or drainage area contributes to the outfall channel when it is flowing bankfull or at the 1% probability water level, whichever is lower.
- Provide gravity outflow for the volume above the pumped storage.
- Pump only when there is no gravity outflow.
- Provide a gravity emergency overflow structure or route in the event the basin capacity is exceeded.

Pumps

- Provide a stilling basin or manhole to dissipate the energy from the pump outlet prior to gravity flow into the HCFCD maintained channel. The outflow velocity into the HCFCD maintained channel shall not exceed three feet per second (3 fps).
- Provide at least one backup pump in the event of a pump failure.
- Fence off and padlock the pump station and control panel to discourage unauthorized operation and vandalism.

Drain Time

- Empty the pumped storage volume in 24 hours, when possible. Maximum drain time is 72 hours (3 days), unless the maximum outflow rate results in a longer drain time.

Documentation

- Include the operation plan in the drainage or design report. Clearly show how the pump system is controlled to satisfy the outflow criteria.
- Submit a complete and practical written operation and maintenance manual prior to construction.

Continued on next page

6.15 Pumped Detention Systems, Continued

Additional Criteria for HCFCD Maintained Facilities 6.15.5

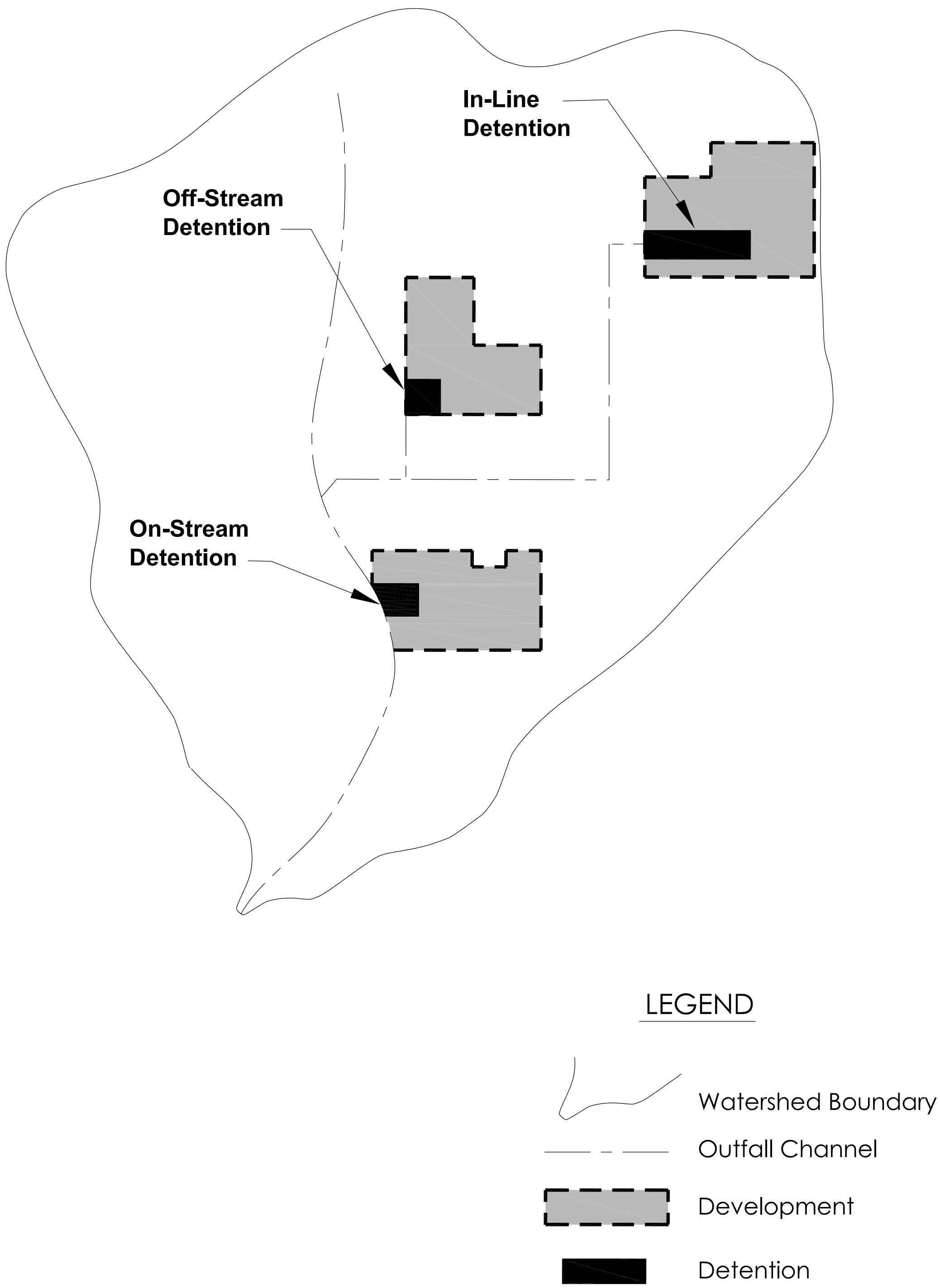
In addition to the criteria listed in Section 6.15.4, Pumped Detention Criteria, the following criteria apply to HCFCD maintained pumped detention facilities:

- Perform hydrologic and hydraulic analyses to determine the detention volume needed and to size the pumps and gravity outflow structure. Document results clearly in the drainage or design report.
- Provide an emergency power source appropriate for the detention facility and service area. As a minimum, provide power from dual sources or install a quick connect for a mobile generator.
- Provide a sump pump for pumping out small water volumes.
- Control all pumps with float activation switches.
- Include communication devices to activate alerts and allow for checking status of pumps and water levels remotely.
- Include devices to record pump operation and water levels.
- Provide an all-weather access road and working areas necessary to operate and maintain the pump station and detention basin.
- Convey fee title to HCFCD for the pump station and detention basin.
- Prior to acceptance of the facility, provide funds to HCFCD equal to an estimate of five (5) years of operation and maintenance.
- Submit a written operation and maintenance manual for HCFCD review and approval prior to construction.

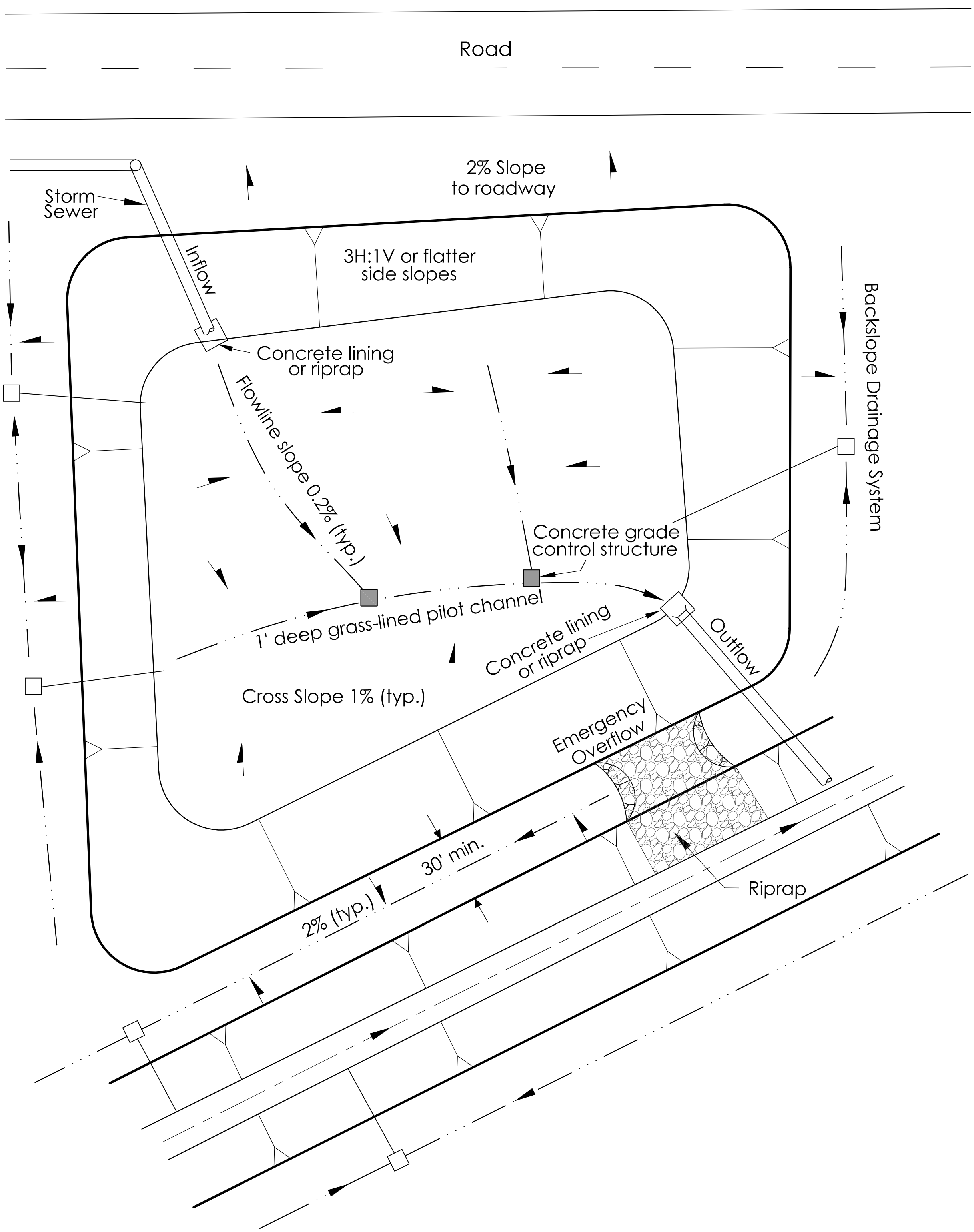
Additional Criteria for Privately Maintained Facilities 6.15.6

For privately maintained pump detention basins that outfall into a HCFCD maintained channel, comply with:

- The criteria listed in Section 6.15.4, Pumped Detention Criteria.
- The requirements specified in Section 6.04,1. Private Facilities in the "Regulations of Harris County, Texas for the Approval and Acceptance of Infrastructure" and administered by the Harris County Permit Office.



TYPES OF DETENTION



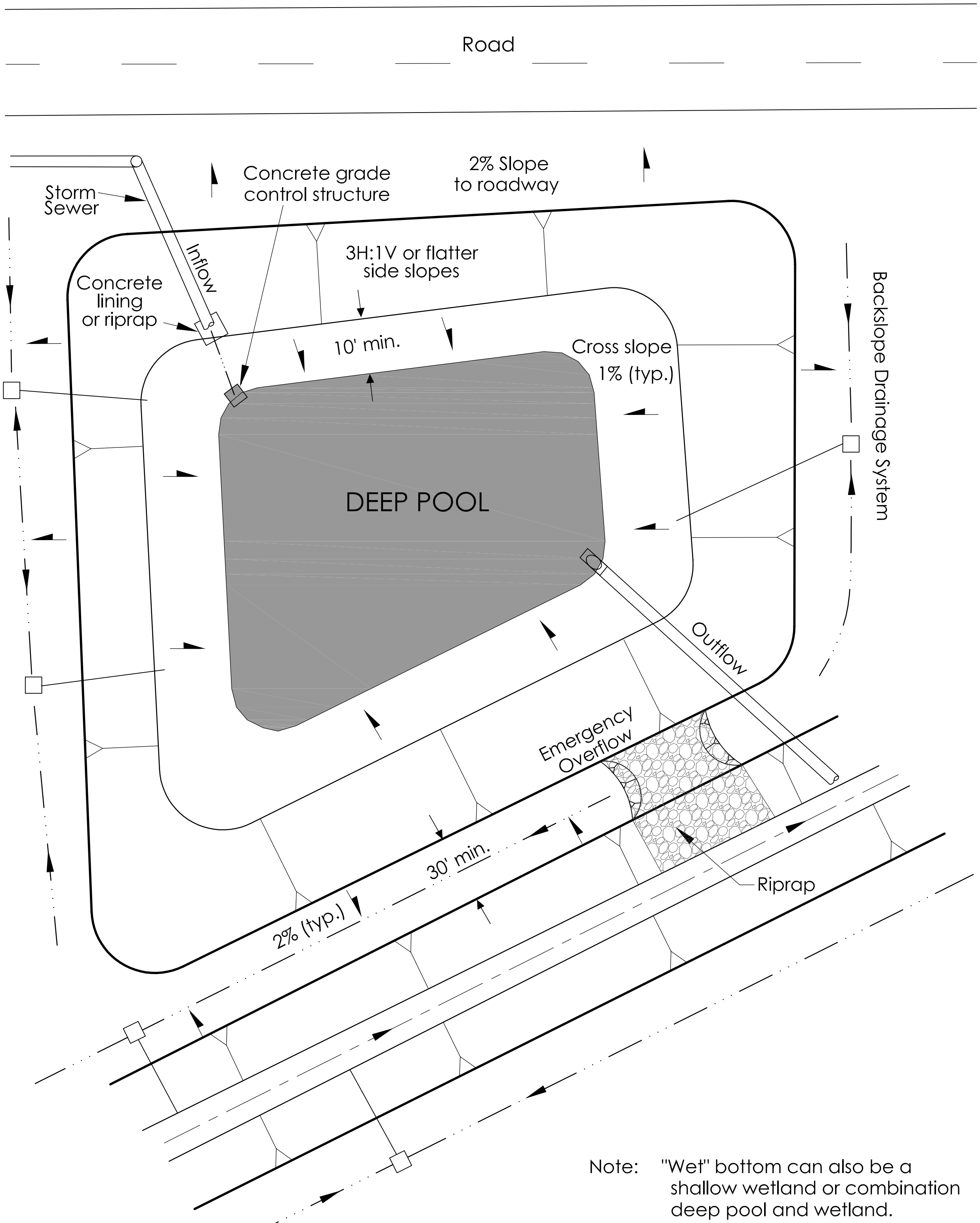
Harris County
Flood Control District

POLICY, CRITERIA, & PROCEDURE MANUAL

WELL-GRADED, "DRY" DETENTION BASIN

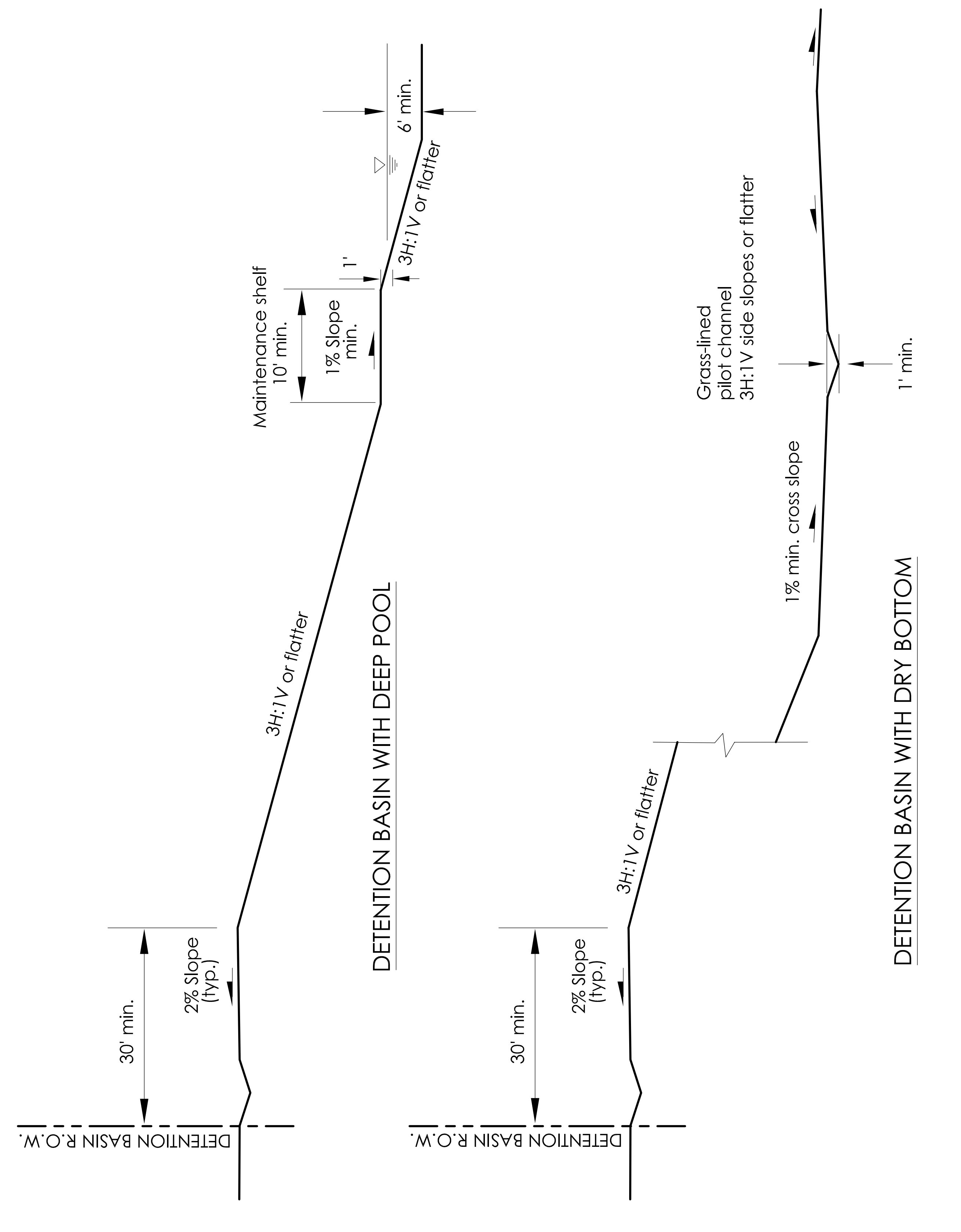
DATE: 10/5/04

EXHIBIT 6-2



Note: "Wet" bottom can also be a shallow wetland or combination deep pool and wetland.

POLICY, CRITERIA, & PROCEDURE MANUAL	"WET" BOTTOM DETENTION BASIN	
Harris County Flood Control District	DATE: 10/5/04	EXHIBIT 6-3



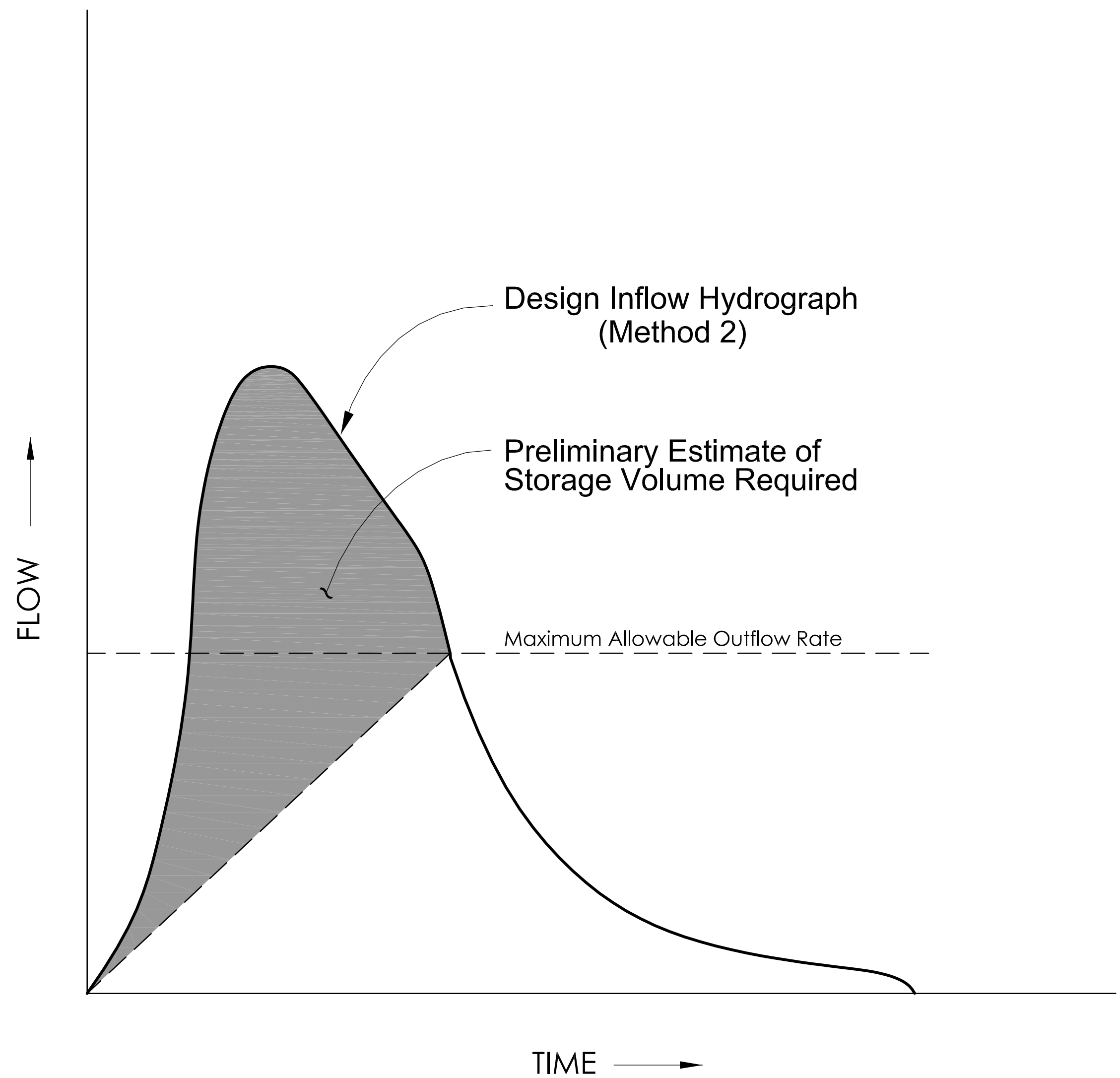
Harris County
Flood Control District

POLICY, CRITERIA, & PROCEDURE MANUAL

DETENTION BASIN SECTIONS

DATE: 10/5/04

EXHIBIT 6-4

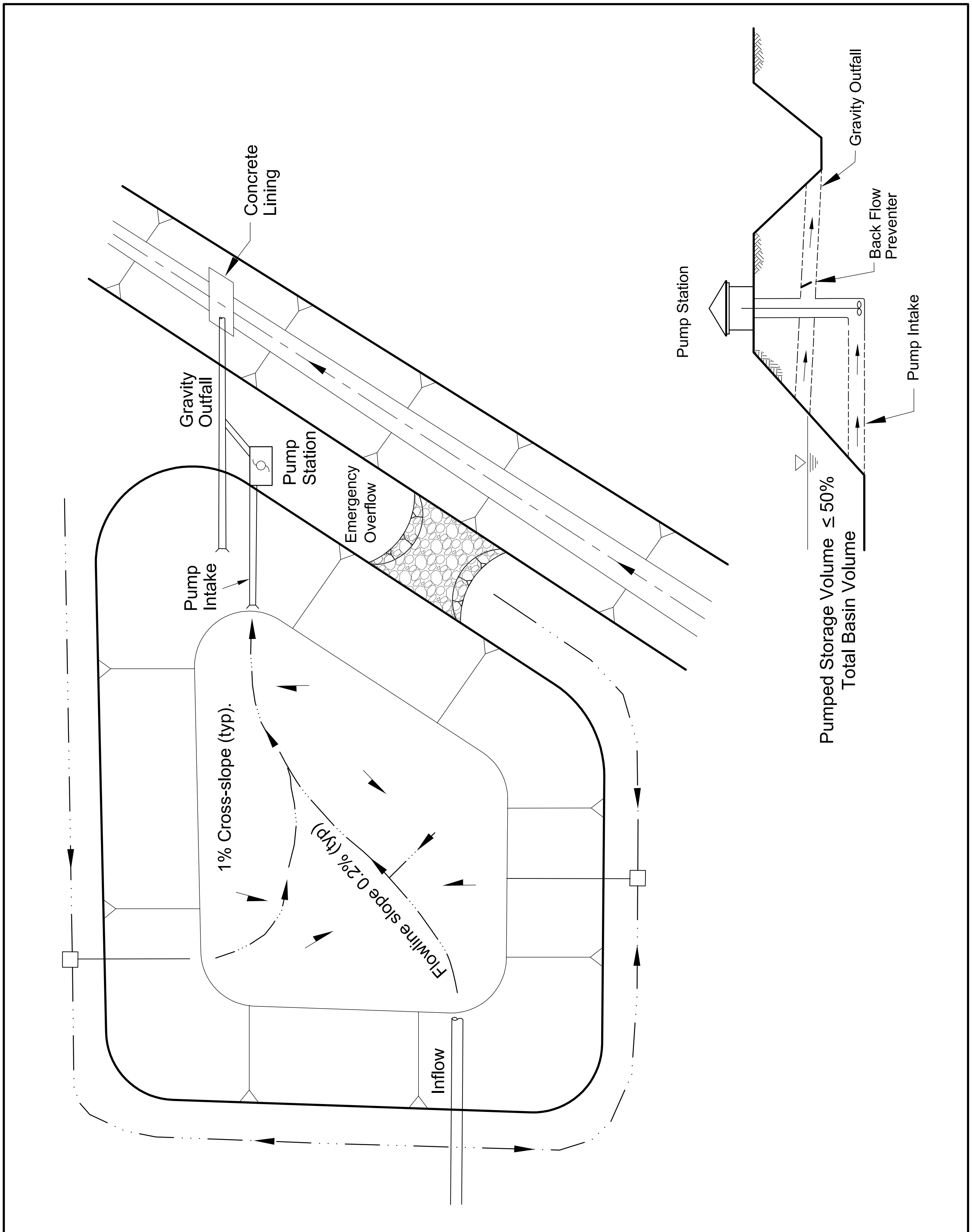


Harris County Flood Control District

POLICY, CRITERIA, & PROCEDURE MANUAL

DETENTION VOLUME ESTIMATE (METHOD 2)

DATE: 10/5/04 | **EXHIBIT 6-5**



Harris County Flood Control District

POLICY, CRITERIA, & PROCEDURE MANUAL

PUMPED DETENTION FACILITY SCHEMATIC

DATE: 10/5/04

EXHIBIT 6-6

SECTION 7 – BRIDGES

7.1 Introduction

Overview
7.1.1

Bridges can cross HCFCD facilities provided the criteria and procedures in this manual are followed and the bridge owner agrees to the conditions specified in this manual.

The criteria presented in this manual apply to road, utility and pipeline bridges, and both public and private bridges.

Review and Coordination
7.1.2

The review and coordination process for bridges proposed to be placed in a HCFCD maintained facility is presented in Section 2.9, Non-Flood Control Features.

Early coordination with HCFCD is recommended, particularly in obtaining concurrence on the location within the HCFCD maintained facility.

Criteria
7.1.3

HCFCD acceptance criteria for placing a bridge within a HCFCD maintained facility are presented in Section 2.2.7, Non-Flood Control Features Allowed in a HCFCD Facility.

Use the criteria of the jurisdiction responsible for the bridge design and construction. Specific criteria related to the bridge being in a HCFCD facility are in this section. If the HCFCD criteria provided in Section 7.2.1, Hydraulic Criteria conflicts with the jurisdiction's criteria, use the more stringent criteria.

Easements
7.1.4

The procedure for acquiring an easement within a HCFCD fee strip or easement is in Section 15.4, Easements for Pipelines, Utilities, and Roadways.

7.2 Design Criteria

Hydraulic Criteria 7.2.1

- Design the bridge to pass the 1% and 10% exceedance frequency flows without causing adverse impacts or erosion problems in the channel or detention basin.
- For new bridges, set the low chord at the center of the bridge 1.5 feet or more above the existing or ultimate (where available) 1% exceedance water surface, whichever is higher.
- For replacement bridges:
  - Set the low chord at the center of the bridge one foot or more above the existing or ultimate 1% exceedance water surface, whichever is higher, if possible without causing an impact on the existing or ultimate 1% exceedance water surface profile, or
  - Match the existing bridge roadway and approach profile, unless a channelization or detention basin project is proposed in conjunction with the bridge to offset impacts caused by the proposed bridge.
- Cross the full channel top width with the bridge; that is, do not narrow the channel for the bridge.
- Align bents and abutments within the channel parallel to the general direction of flow in the channel to minimize obstruction of flow.
- Minimize number of bridge bents in the channel and locate them outside of the channel bottom, if possible, to reduce debris buildup and head loss.
- When the average channel velocity for the 1% exceedance flood is larger than 4 feet per second and bents with individual piles are employed, use round piles to reduce debris buildup, turbulence, and head loss.
- See Section 11.3, Pipe Outfalls for criteria regarding storm sewer outfalls.

Continued on next page

7.2 Design Criteria, Continued

Structural Criteria 7.2.2

- Arrange bent locations and span lengths to accommodate the existing, interim, and ultimate channel sections.
- If the bridge is not constructed to span the ultimate channel, design the bridge so it can be expanded to accommodate the ultimate channel later. For example, design the piles and caps in the interim bridge abutment to also perform as an interior bent when the bridge is lengthened for the ultimate channel and the channel is deepened.
- Erosion protection such as concrete lining, riprap, or shade and drought tolerant vegetation is recommended under the bridge on the channel side slopes, and if necessary, in the channel bottom.
- Submit a geotechnical investigation report with the construction drawings.

Access to HCFCD Facilities at Bridges 7.2.3

The primary access to HCFCD channels, and some detention basins, for inspection, maintenance, and modifications is at bridge crossings. In many cases, a guardrail physically blocks access.

Provide a minimum 20-foot wide unobstructed vehicular access around existing and future guardrails, walls, and plantings to HCFCD maintained facilities at bridge crossings within a road right-of-way, HCFCD easement, or public drainage easement where required by the Maintenance Access Plan (see Section 5.3.8, Maintenance Access Plan).

7.3 Hydraulic Analysis

Methodology 7.3.1

Several methods and equations are available for computing head losses through a bridge. The bridge routines in the HEC-2 or HEC-RAS computer program are recommended for hydraulic analyses of bridges.

Submittal Requirements 7.3.2

- Hydraulic analysis showing no adverse impacts in the 1% and 10% exceedance water surface profiles upstream and downstream of the bridge for both interim and ultimate development of the watershed (see Section 19, Report Requirements).
- For bridges on FEMA studied streams, also follow the FEMA and flood plain administrator's submission and review requirements.

SECTION 8 – CULVERTS

8.1 Introduction

Overview
8.1.1

Culverts can be used to cross HCFCD maintained facilities provided the criteria and procedures in this manual are followed and the culvert owner agrees to the conditions specified in this manual.

The criteria presented in this manual apply to road, utility, and pipeline culverts and both public and private culverts.

Criteria and analysis for culverts used in detention basin outflow control structures are presented in Section 6.7, Outflow Structures.

Review and Coordination
8.1.2

The review and coordination process for culverts proposed to be placed in a HCFCD facility is presented in Section 2.9, Non-Flood Control Features.

Early coordination with HCFCD is recommended, particularly in obtaining concurrence on the location within the HCFCD maintained facility.

Criteria
8.1.3

HCFCD acceptance criteria for placing a culvert within a HCFCD maintained facility are presented in Section 2.2.7, Non-Flood Control Features Allowed in a HCFCD Facility.

Use the criteria of the jurisdiction responsible for the culvert design and construction. Specific criteria related to the culvert being in a HCFCD facility are in this section. If HCFCD criteria conflicts with the jurisdiction's criteria, use the more stringent criteria.

Easements
8.1.4

The procedure for acquiring an easement within a HCFCD fee strip or easement is in Section 15.4, Easements for Pipelines, Utilities, and Roadways.

8.2 Design Criteria

Hydraulic Criteria 8.2.1

- Design the culvert to pass the 1% and 10% exceedance frequency flows without causing adverse impacts or erosion problems in the channel or detention basin for existing and ultimate watershed development conditions.
- Align the culvert parallel to the general direction of flow in the channel to minimize obstruction of flow.
- Avoid placing culverts in channel bends and areas of high turbulence.
- Minimize number of culvert barrels in the channel to reduce debris build-up and head loss.
- Use 0.013 for the Manning's "n" roughness coefficient for concrete pipe and 0.015 for box culverts.
- See Section 11.3, Pipe Outfalls for criteria regarding storm sewer outfalls in the vicinity of a culvert.

Structural Criteria 8.2.2

- Arrange number and size of barrels to accommodate the existing and ultimate channel sections.
- If the culvert is not constructed for the ultimate channel, design the culvert so it can be modified or expanded to accommodate the ultimate channel later.

  Example 1 - Design the interim culvert to accommodate another barrel added later to carry the higher flow.

  Example 2 – If the ultimate channel is deeper, design and construct the culvert at the ultimate flowline and backfill with granular fill up to the existing channel flowline.
- Use concrete culverts, such as, precast concrete pipes or boxes or monolithic concrete boxes.
- Use a non-reinforced concrete seal slab under monolithic concrete boxes and cement stabilized sand bedding for precast pipes or boxes.
- Include headwalls and/or wingwalls to protect the embankment from erosion and reduce turbulence and head loss.
- Include handrails and/or guardrails where necessary for public safety.
- Use structural erosion protection such as concrete lining or riprap upstream and downstream of the culvert where the velocity exceeds the maximum for the soil type (see Section 4.4, Velocities).
- Submit a geotechnical investigation report with the construction drawings.

Continued on next page

8.2 Design Criteria, Continued

Access to HCFCD Facilities at Culverts 8.2.3

The primary access to HCFCD channels and some detention basins for inspection, maintenance, and modifications is at culvert crossings. In some cases, a guardrail or wingwall physically blocks access.

Provide a minimum 20-foot wide unobstructed vehicular access around existing and future guardrails, walls, and plantings to HCFCD maintained facilities at culvert crossings within a road right-of-way, HCFCD easement, or public drainage easement where required by the Maintenance Access Plan (see Section 5.3.8, Maintenance Access Plan).

8.3 Hydraulic Analysis

Methodology 8.3.1

Several methods and equations are available for computing head losses through a culvert. Many are based on the Federal Highway Administration's publication *Hydraulic Design of Culverts*.

Use HEC-2, HEC-RAS, or an applicable culvert design program to compute head losses through a culvert.

Flow Classification 8.3.2

Use outlet control for analysis of culverts in channels unless the channel slope is steeper than 1% or the culvert is part of a drop structure. In those cases, determine if the flow classification is inlet control or outlet control.

Submittal Requirements 8.3.3

- Hydraulic analysis showing no adverse impacts in the 1% and 10% exceedance water surface profiles upstream and downstream of the culvert for both interim and ultimate development of the watershed (see Section 19, Report Requirements).
- For culverts on FEMA studied streams, also follow the FEMA and flood plain administrator's submission and review requirements.

SECTION 9 – TRANSITION CONTROL STRUCTURES

9.1 Introduction

Overview 9.1.1

Transition control structures are used where there are abrupt changes in flowline elevation, channel shape, or velocity. Their purpose is to dissipate energy without eroding the channel or detention basin or causing a structural failure. In addition, they can also reduce the extent and cost of structural erosion protection in grass-lined channels.

The focus of this section is transition control structures in grass-lined channels.

Drop Structures 9.1.2

The most common transition control structure in Harris County is the drop structure – a structure used in channels at abrupt changes in flowline and on lateral channels where they enter a deeper receiving channel.

Three common drop structure types presented in this section are the:

- Straight drop spillway
- Sloped drop
- Baffle chute.

Submittal Requirements 9.1.3

Submit the following to HCFCD for each transition control structure:

- Structural design calculations and sketches.
- Geotechnical report.
- Hydraulic design calculations and sketches.

9.2 General Design Criteria

General Design Criteria 9.2.1

General design criteria for transition control structures are:

- Design for a range of flows and tailwater conditions up to and including the 1% exceedance event.
- Conduct a geotechnical investigation to assist with design of the structure.
- Locate transition control structures where flow is straight. Avoid channel bends and high turbulence areas, if possible.
- Provide structural erosion protection where maximum velocities are exceeded upstream and downstream of the transition control structure and where the hydraulic jump occurs.
- For drop structures in lateral channels at the confluence with the receiving channel:
  - Locate the drop just inside the ultimate right-of-way of the receiving channel.
  - Design the hydraulic jump to occur before it enters the receiving channel.

9.3 Straight Drop Spillways

Overview 9.3.1

The three parts of a straight drop spillway (see Exhibit 9-1) are:

- Upstream draw down reach
- Drop opening
- Downstream hydraulic jump reach.

The drop is usually constructed of steel sheet piling. Reinforced concrete lining and riprap are placed upstream and downstream of the drop structure for erosion and scour protection.

Design Criteria 9.3.2

Design criteria for straight drop spillways are:

- Comply with general design criteria for all transition control structures in Section 9.2.1, General Design Criteria.
- Design steel sheet piling to prevent bending or rotating.
- Coat steel sheet piling in accordance with industry standards to reduce rusting and scaling.
- Use concrete lining on the entire cross-section upstream and downstream of the drop (see Appendix D, HCFCD Standard Concrete Lining Detail Sheet).
- Tie the concrete lining to the steel sheet piling drop structure.
- Use a minimum 6-inch thick slab on the downstream concrete lining due to the impact load and potential severe turbulence.
- Determine length of concrete lining upstream and downstream of the drop.
- Include 20 feet of riprap at the ends of the concrete slope paving to decrease flow velocities and protect the concrete toe from scour (see Section 10.5, Riprap).

9.4 Sloped Drops

Overview 9.4.1

Sloped drops are typically used for small drops (usually less than 4 feet) and in small channels (usually bottom widths less than 10 feet). Compared to a straight drop spillway, a sloped drop does not reduce the length of draw down through a constriction at the drop and dissipate energy in a free fall. A typical sloped drop is shown in Exhibit 9-2.

Design Criteria 9.4.2

Design criteria for sloped drops are:

- Comply with minimum design criteria for all transition control structures in Section 9.2.1, General Design Criteria.
- Use concrete lining on the entire cross section for the structure (see Appendix D, HCFCD Standard Concrete Lining Detail Sheet).
- Determine length of concrete slope paving upstream and downstream of the drop.
- Include 20 feet of riprap upstream and downstream of the concrete slope paving to decrease flow velocities and protect the concrete toe from scour (see Section 10.5, Riprap).
- Do not construct sloped drop structures with riprap or articulated concrete blocks.
- The drop slope shall be no steeper than 2(H):1(V).
- Recommended side slopes are 3(H):1(V).
- No side slope shall be steeper than 2(H):1(V).

9.5 Baffled Chutes

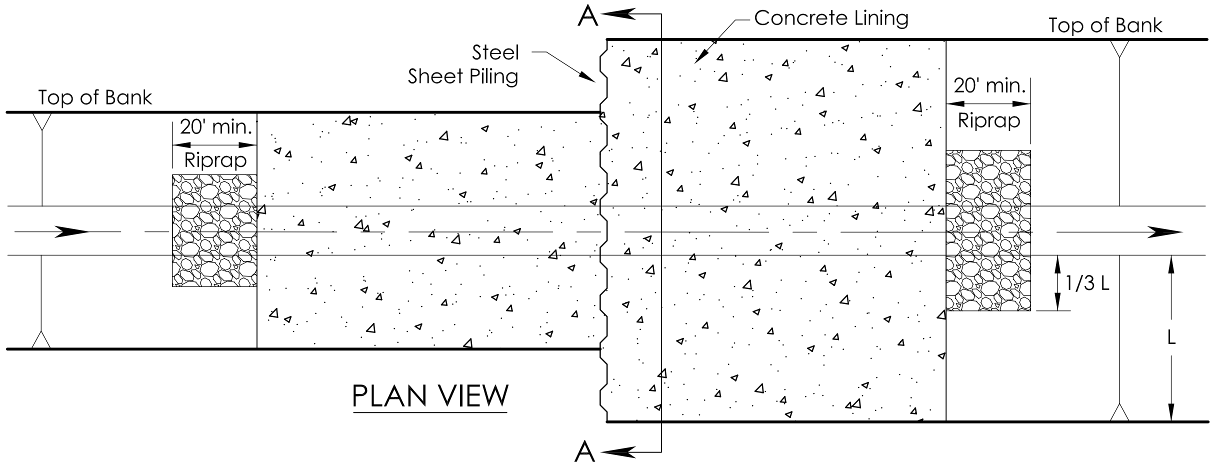
Overview 9.5.1

Baffled chutes are used to dissipate energy at abrupt changes in channel flowline and require no tailwater to be effective. They are generally selected over straight drop spillways for larger drop heights and where lateral channels drop into main channels. Baffle blocks prevent undue acceleration of the flow as it passes down the chute. Since the flow velocities entering the downstream channel are low, no stilling basin is needed. A generic baffled chute is shown in Exhibit 9.3.

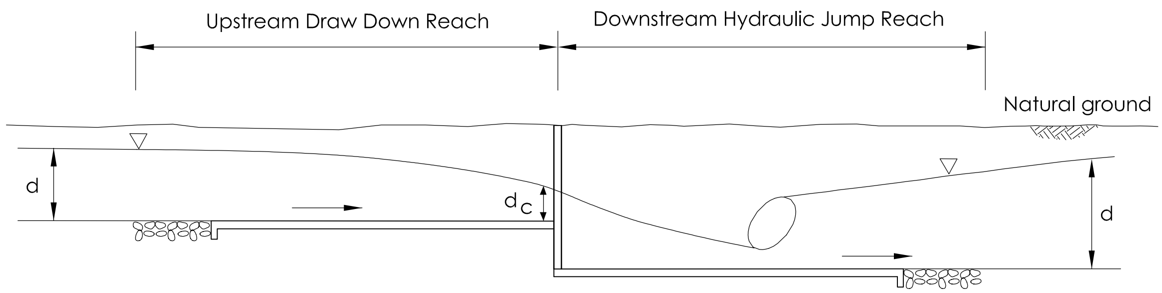
Design Criteria 9.5.2

Design criteria for baffled chutes:

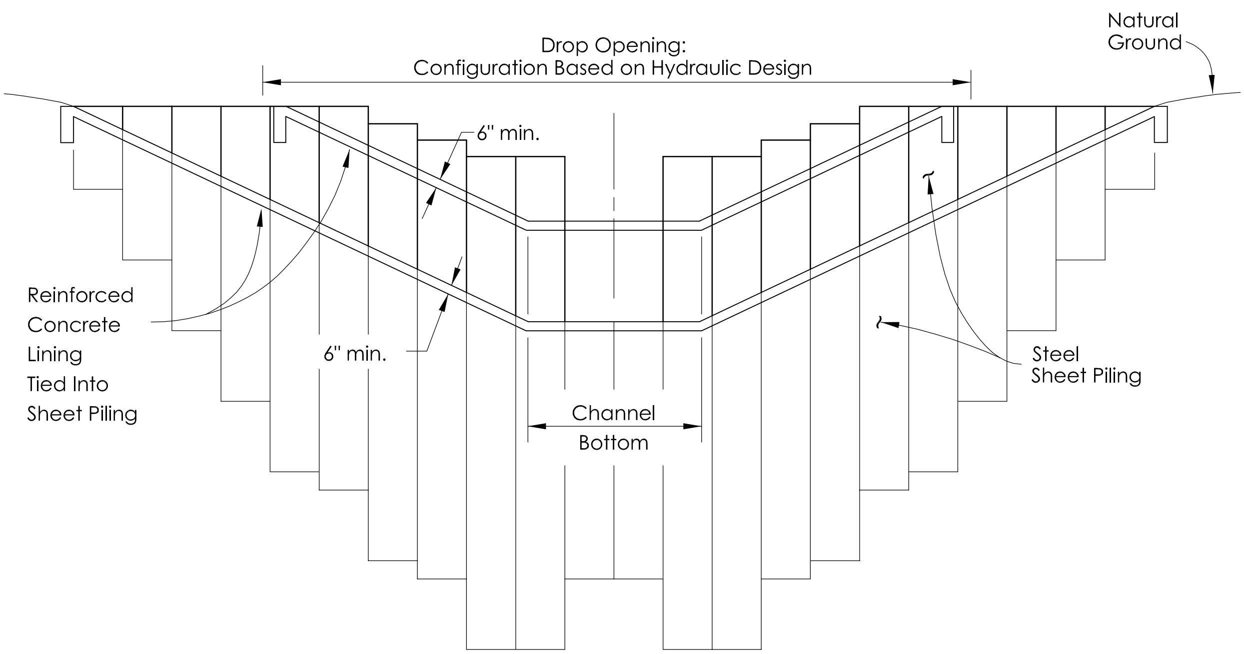
- Comply with minimum design criteria for all transition control structures in Section 9.2.1, General Design Criteria.
- Use concrete lining on the entire cross section for the structure (see Appendix D, HCFCD Standard Concrete Lining Detail Sheet).
- Include 20 feet of riprap at the upstream end of the concrete lining to decrease flow velocities and protect the concrete toe from scour (see Section 10.5, Riprap).
- Use an applicable structural and hydraulic design methodology for baffled chutes.
- Use ultimate watershed conditions for establishing the design flow rate to avoid rebuilding the baffled chute as the watershed develops.



PLAN VIEW



PROFILE VIEW



SECTION A-A

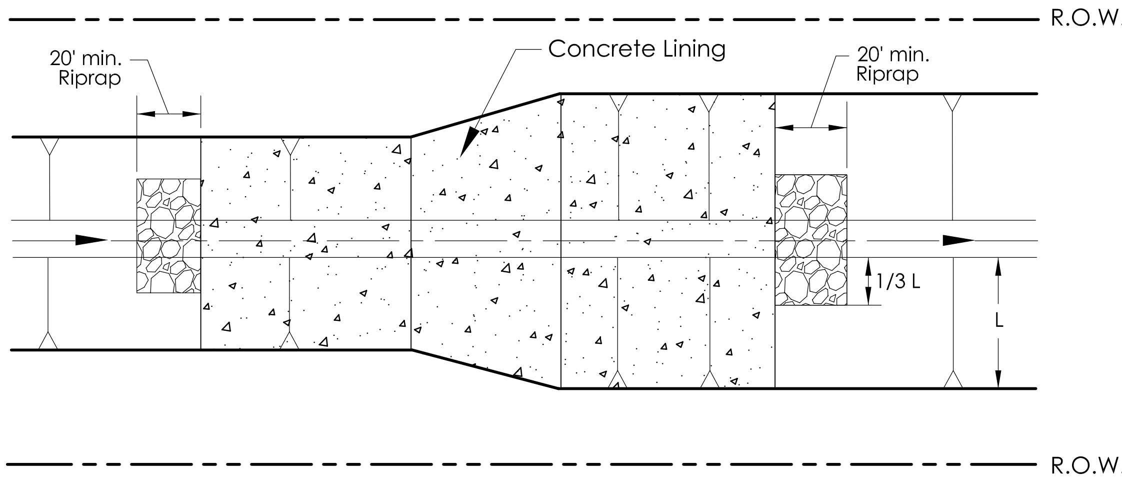
Harris County
Flood Control District

POLICY, CRITERIA, & PROCEDURE MANUAL

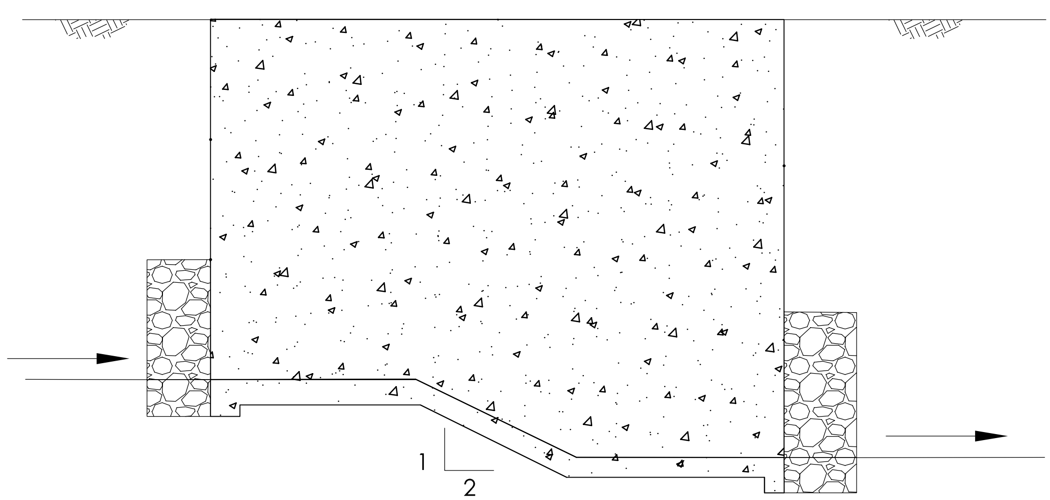
TYPICAL STRAIGHT DROP

DATE: 10/5/04

EXHIBIT 9-1



PLAN VIEW



PROFILE VIEW

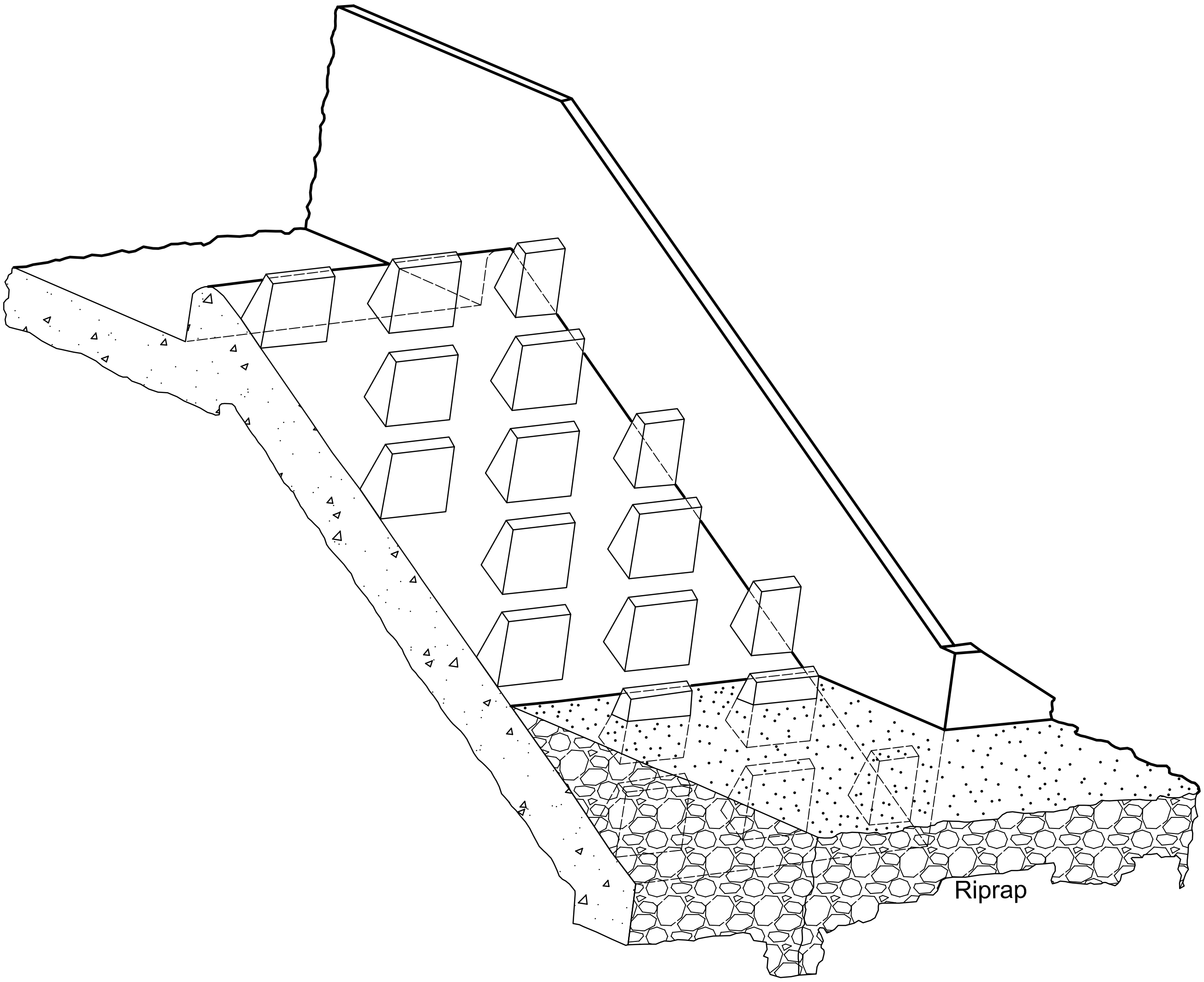
Harris County Flood Control District

POLICY, CRITERIA, & PROCEDURE MANUAL

TYPICAL SLOPE DROP

DATE: 10/5/04

EXHIBIT 9-2



See "Hydraulic Design of Stilling Basins and Energy Dissipators," Engineering Monograph No. 25, U.S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Reclamation, 1984.

Harris County Flood Control District

POLICY, CRITERIA, & PROCEDURE MANUAL

BAFFLE BLOCK DROP

DATE: 10/5/04	**EXHIBIT 9-3**

SECTION 10 – EROSION AND SEDIMENT CONTROL

10.1 Introduction

Overview 10.1.1

Address erosion potential in all designs of open channels, detention basins, and hydraulic structures. Knowledge of the geotechnical conditions, channel hydraulics, and actual field conditions are essential in developing a good erosion control plan. However, due to the dynamic and complex nature of water flow and the soil interface, erosion control plans are usually based on empirical relationships, water flow fundamentals, and field experience.

Causes of Erosion 10.1.2

Erosion in a channel or detention basin is caused by:

1. Excessive water velocity or turbulence within the banks, especially at confluences, storm sewer outfalls, bends, drop structures, and transitions.
2. Sheet flow over the bank.
3. Water flow out of the banks. (Examples: Natural ground water or leaks from swimming pools, irrigation systems, waterlines, etc.)

Results of Erosion 10.1.3

Erosion results in one or more of the following:

- Reduction of channel conveyance due to increased turbulence or flow irregularities.
- Reduction of channel conveyance or stormwater storage due to sedimentation.
- Interference with maintenance.
- Bank failures that lead to safety problems or threat to adjacent property.

Geotechnical Investigation 10.1.4

Submit a geotechnical report that specifically addresses soil types (including dispersive soils), erosion potential, and suggested erosion control measures.

Follow the geotechnical investigation requirements as provided in HCFCD's Geotechnical Investigation Guidelines in Appendix D.

Continued on next page

10.1 Introduction, Continued

Specific Problem Areas 10.1.5

Criteria at specific potential problem areas are in the sections listed below.

Problem Area	Section
Bends/Curves	5.8
Bridges	7
Culverts	8
Pipe Outfalls	11.3
Horizontal Transitions	5.7
Confluences	5.6
Transition Control Structures	9

10.2 Hydraulic Considerations

Maximum Velocities 10.2.1

Maximum average cross-section velocities are based on a 1% exceedance probability flow. Values are presented in Section 4.4.1, Maximum Velocities.

Turbulence 10.2.2

Erosion often occurs in areas of high turbulence, such as at bridge bents, outfall pipes, drop structures, and abrupt transitions. Avoid creating high turbulence, if possible. Where it cannot be avoided, provide adequate erosion and scour protection.

10.3 Turf Establishment

Introduction 10.3.1

An established permanent turf grass stand is an effective and economical method to stabilize banks and minimize erosion caused by overbank flow and high velocities in channels and detention basins. Establishing a good turf grass cover requires preparing the seedbed, fertilizing, selecting the proper seed, seeding properly, keeping the seed in place, and watering.

Turf Grass Establishment Criteria 10.3.2

Turf establishment is required on all areas within HCFCD maintained facilities disturbed by construction, except channel bottoms and where structural erosion control measures are used.

Criteria for turf grass established by the developer or public entity is as follows:

- Establish turf grass as quickly as possible to minimize erosion and sedimentation.
- The means for establishing turf grass are in HCFCD Standard Specification Section 02921 - Turf Establishment.
- Turf grass establishment is required for final acceptance at the end of the one year warranty period. Minimum acceptance criteria is:
  - 75% coverage of live Bermuda grass on disturbed areas.
  - No erosion or rills deeper than 4”.

Conditions for HCFCD to Perform Turf Grass Establishment 10.3.3

HCFCD will perform turf grass establishment for a public entity or developer who disturbs existing or proposed HCFCD right-of-way if all conditions below are satisfied:

1. Follow applicable procedures in this manual for the proposed work.
2. The Turf Establishment Agreement is executed and the fee paid prior to commencing construction.
3. The owner or contractor notifies HCFCD 14 calendar days prior to completion of the work or a portion of the work to allow time for HCFCD to schedule the turf grass contractor.

10.4 Concrete Lining

Overview 10.4.1

Concrete lining is poured in place and reinforced concrete is used for erosion protection in channels or detention basins.

Basis of Design 10.4.2

The stability of concrete lining is based on its ability to withstand temperature changes, shear forces created by flow in the channel, and the hydrostatic forces from the soil. Important factors include:

- Concrete thickness and reinforcing
- Transitions
- Soil type
- Flow velocity
- Channel geometry
- Channel grade

Concrete Lining Criteria 10.4.3

Criteria are presented in the table below. See Appendix D, HCFCD Standard Concrete Channel Lining Detail Sheet, for a typical section and plan view.

Feature	Criteria
Side slopes no steeper than	2(H):1(V)
Upper limit of lining	1/3 up side slope minimum
Concrete thickness on slope and bottom	5 inches minimum
Minimum reinforcing steel	#4 bars on 12 inch centers each way or 6"x6"xW4.5xW10 welded wire fabric
Minimum toe wall depth	Channel bottom – 3 feet Side slope – 2 feet Top of lining – 2 feet
Toe wall thickness	8 inches
Top of lining	See HCFCD Standard Concrete Lining Detail Sheet in Appendix D

Continued on next page

10.4 Concrete Lining, Continued

Concrete Lining Criteria Continued 10.4.4

- Geotechnical investigations are required to confirm side slopes. Channel linings do not provide structural support for the soil.
- Partially concrete-lined channels require backslope drainage systems.
- Concrete toe walls are required on all sides to reduce the chance of flow under the lining and decrease the chance of lining failure.
- Riprap is required in channels a minimum of 20 feet upstream and downstream of the paving across the bottom and one-third up the side slopes to decrease flow velocities.
- Access stairways are required for side slopes 2.5:1 and steeper. Locate stairways on the upstream side of road crossings and at intervals less than 1500 feet.
- Detailed construction drawings are required where removing, modifying, or replacing existing concrete lining is proposed for a project. Example: Installing a new storm sewer outfall through concrete lining.

10.5 Riprap

Overview
10.5.1

Riprap is broken concrete rubble or stone used for erosion or scour protection in channels or detention basins.

Proper gradation and placement is essential to the success of riprap.

Basis of Design
10.5.2

The stability of riprap is based on the ability of the riprap to withstand the shear forces created by flow in the channel. Important factors include:

- Stone size and shape
- Stone weight and gradation
- Riprap mat thickness
- Bedding
- Flow velocity
- Channel geometry
- Channel grade

Riprap Criteria
10.5.3

Criteria are presented in the table below. See HCFCD Standard Storm Sewer Outfall and Riprap Detail Sheet in Appendix D for a typical section and plan view.

Feature	Criteria
Side slopes no steeper than	2(H):1(V)
Upper limit of riprap	1/3 up side slope minimum
Minimum riprap mat thickness	18 inches
Side slope finish	Finish leveling with topsoil and no riprap visible on surface
Minimum limit into channel or detention bottom	1.5 times the mat thickness from toe of slope
Minimum toe wall depth at toe of slope and in bottom	1.5 times the mat thickness

Continued on next page

10.5 Riprap, Continued

Riprap Criteria Continued 10.5.4

- Use HCFCD standard riprap sizes, gradations, and mat thickness in HCFCD Standard Specification Section 02378 – Riprap and Granular Fill, where applicable.
- See Appendix D, HCFCD Standard Storm Sewer Outfall and Riprap Detail Sheet.
- Geotechnical investigations are required to confirm side slopes.
- Riprap-lined channels require backslope drainage systems.
- For minimum riprap extent at pipe outfalls, drop structures, bends, etc., see the sections in this manual for those specific features.
- Detailed construction drawings are required where removing, modifying, or replacing existing riprap is proposed for a project. Example: Installing a new storm sewer outfall through riprap.

10.6 Other Linings

Overview 10.6.1

If other erosion protection linings are being considered, consult with HCFCD prior to design for minimum criteria, if available.

Detailed construction drawings are required where removing, modifying, or replacing existing linings is proposed for a project. (Example: Installing a new storm sewer outfall through articulated concrete blocks.)

10.7 Sediment Control During Construction

Criteria 10.7.1	Comply with the Texas Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (TPDES) requirements for Harris County.

SECTION 11 – BACKSLOPE DRAINAGE SYSTEMS AND PIPE OUTFALLS

11.1 Backslope Drainage Systems

Introduction 11.1.1

Backslope drainage systems collect stormwater within the maintenance berm and convey it to the channel or detention basin through a pipe to minimize overbank flow and erosion. Backslope drainage systems are necessary for the long-term integrity of grass-lined channels or detention basins.

Where to Use 11.1.2

Backslope drainage systems are required for HCFCD maintained channels and detention basins except where:

- The side slope is concrete-lined to the top of bank.
- The depth at the toe of the side slope is less than 5 feet.
- The ground slopes 2% or steeper away from the top of bank to an adjacent curb and gutter street or roadside ditch.
- The ground slopes 2% or steeper from the top of bank to an adjacent jurisdictional wetland that will remain.

Continued on next page

11.1 Backslope Drainage Systems, Continued

Criteria 11.1.3

Criteria for backslope swale design are in the table below.

Feature	Criteria
Depth from natural ground at edge of right-of-way	0.5 foot minimum
Depth from top of channel or detention basin bank	1 foot minimum
Depth of swale	2 feet maximum
Depth at interceptor structure	2.5 feet
Swale side slope	1.5(H):1(V)
Swale gradient, typical	0.2%
Swale gradient, dispersive clays	0.4%
Swale centerline	5.5 feet inside right-of-way line
Interceptor structure spacing, typical	800 feet maximum (400 feet from swale summit)
Interceptor structure spacing, dispersive clays	400 feet maximum (200 feet from swale summit)
Berm width for the backslope drainage system	10 feet minimum

Continued on next page

11.1 Backslope Drainage Systems, Continued

Criteria, Continued 11.1.3

- Design and construct interceptor structures in accordance with HCFCD Standard Interceptor Structure Detail Sheet in Appendix D.
- Include design details of interceptor structures for pipe sizes larger than the ones shown on the HCFCD Standard Interceptor Structure Detail Sheet in Appendix D.
- Developed property is not allowed to drain to backslope swales, except as noted below:
  - To avoid retaining walls and steep earthen slopes at the back of residential lots that adjoin a HCFCD maintained facility, one-half or less of adjacent residential lots may be sloped to drain to a backslope drainage system.
  - Earthen slopes over 6 inches high and steeper than 3(H):1(V) are not allowed adjacent to a backslope swale.
  - Where undeveloped acreage drains into the backslope swale system, no more than 10 acres (15 cfs) can drain into one standard backslope interceptor structure. If necessary, include additional interceptor structures and/or larger pipes than the 24 inch minimum to carry the total offsite flow (submit a drainage area map). Other interceptor structures are available to collect offsite flow as shown on the HCFCD Standard Interceptor Structure Detail Sheet in Appendix D.
  - Urban interceptor structures can be used in developed areas with limited right-of-way if HCFCD approval is obtained prior to submitting construction drawings.

11.2 Offsite Ditch Interceptor Structure

Introduction 11.2.1

The offsite ditch interceptor structure is used to convey flow from small ditches into HCFCD maintained facilities through a pipe to minimize overbank flow and erosion problems. The ditch can be along a roadway or a natural or manmade ditch draining to the HCFCD facility from adjacent property.

Criteria 11.2.2

- Design and construct offsite interceptor structures in accordance with HCFCD Standard Interceptor Structure Detail Sheet in Appendix D.
- Confirm pipe sizes by submitting a drainage area map and calculations using the Harris County method for determining flow rates for storm sewers or the bankfull capacity of the ditch.
- Locate offsite ditch interceptor structures just outside HCFCD right-of-way, wherever possible. If not, locate it as close to the edge of the right-of-way as possible to maximize the room for maintenance and construction vehicles. Minimum space from top of bank to edge of offsite ditch interceptor structure is 20 feet.

11.3 Pipe Outfalls

Introduction 11.3.1

Pipe and box outfalls are a common method for conveying flow into channels and detention basins.

Note: References to pipe outfalls include box outfalls, as well.

Considerations 11.3.2

Factors to consider when designing and laying out a pipe outfall into a HCFCD maintained facility are:

- Exit velocity from the pipe.
- Alignment relative to the flow in the HCFCD facility.
- Location of the pipe relative to the HCFCD facility geometry.
- Location of the pipe relative to other structures in the HCFCD facility.

Continued on next page

11.3 Pipe Outfalls, Continued

Design Criteria 11.3.3

- Design and construct outfall pipes in grass-lined channels or detention basins in accordance with HCFCD Standard Storm Sewer Outfall and Riprap Detail Sheet in Appendix D.
- Design and construct outfall pipes in concrete-lined channels or detention basins in accordance with HCFCD Standard Concrete Channel Lining Detail Sheet in Appendix D.
- Exception to standard outfall pipe details in detention basins – pipe invert can match pilot channel flowline.
- Install riprap erosion protection in grass-lined channels for pipes 48 inches and larger, wastewater treatment plant outfall pipes, and where the design velocity out of the pipe exceeds the maximum for the soil type in the Section 4.4.1, Maximum Velocities table. Minimum riprap layout is shown on the HCFCD Standard Storm Sewer Outfall and Riprap Detail Sheet in Appendix D.
- Use corrugated metal pipe (galvanized steel or aluminum) or HDPE pipe with a minimum 24-inch diameter for outfall pipes within a HCFCD facility right-of-way. Storm sewer inflow pipes into detention basins can be reinforced concrete pipe (see Section 6.6.2, Inflow Structures).
- Place a standard manhole or junction box just outside the ultimate channel or detention basin right-of-way.
- Place all storm sewer inlets outside HCFCD facility right-of-way.
- Locate storm sewer outfalls 48 inches and larger on the downstream side of bridges and culverts.
- Angle pipes and boxes downstream a minimum of 30 degrees starting at the last manhole and measured from line perpendicular to the channel.
- Pave the corrugated metal pipe invert of effluent outfalls from wastewater treatment plants with concrete or use plastic pipe designed for wastewater effluent.
- Use the pipe adjustment details shown on the HCFCD Standard Storm Sewer Outfall and Riprap Detail Sheet in Appendix D, where applicable and include custom pipe adjustment details where the standard does not apply.

SECTION 12 – CHANNEL ENCLOSURES

12.1 Introduction

Overview 12.1.1	Channels normally maintained by HCFCD can be enclosed provided the criteria and procedures in this manual are followed.
Analysis and Methodologies 12.1.2	Hydraulic analysis and submittal requirements that apply to channels also apply to channel enclosures. Hydraulic aspects specific to channel enclosures are presented in this Section.
Maintenance Responsibility 12.1.3	Since the HCFCD's primary responsibility is for open drainage facilities, convey the right-of-way and maintenance responsibility of an enclosed channel to a taxing entity that maintains underground drainage systems.

12.2 Design Criteria

Application 12.2.1

The criteria in this Section apply where the drainage area for the enclosure is greater than 200 acres or where the HCFCD maintained facility would normally begin.

Hydraulic Criteria 12.2.2

Hydraulic criteria are:

- For new developments or new drainage facilities, design the pipe or box to contain the 1% exceedance probability, 24-hour storm event within the facility right-of-way for ultimate watershed conditions.
- Show how the 1% exceedance probability flow will get into the pipe or box.
- Accommodate extreme event flows (in excess of the 1% exceedance probability) where possible.
- Submit hydraulic calculations and profiles for review.

Structural Criteria 12.2.3

Use the criteria from the jurisdiction that is going to maintain the enclosed drainage facility.

Manholes and Inlets 12.2.4

Criteria for manholes are:

- Use the criteria from the jurisdiction that is going to maintain the enclosed drainage facility.
- Manholes can be combined with City of Houston Type "E" or Type "B" inlets to drain surface swales.
- Select inlets to minimize reduction in flow capacity due to clogging.

Right-of-Way 12.2.5

The right-of-way width for an enclosed channel shall be the outside width of the pipe(s) or box(es) plus a distance on each side equal to the flowline depth measured from natural ground or proposed fill elevation, whichever is higher and rounded up to the nearest 5 feet. The minimum width on each side shall be 10 feet.

Encompass all manholes within the right-of-way for the facility. Extend the right-of-way limit 5 feet from the edge of the manholes and inlets.

SECTION 13 –EXTREME EVENT OVERFLOW

13.1 Introduction

Overview 13.1.1

Stormwater runoff that travels on the surface trying to reach an open channel or detention basin is referred to in this manual as overland flow. Local jurisdictions such as Harris County and the City of Houston have regulations and requirements for accommodating extreme event overland flow within their streets and storm sewers.

This section covers the criteria for conveying extreme event overland flow into HCFCD maintained channels or detention basins.

For swales or ditches carrying normal flows to a HCFCD maintained facility, see Section 11, Backslope Drainage Systems and Pipe Outfalls.

13.2 Extreme Event Overland Flow Swales

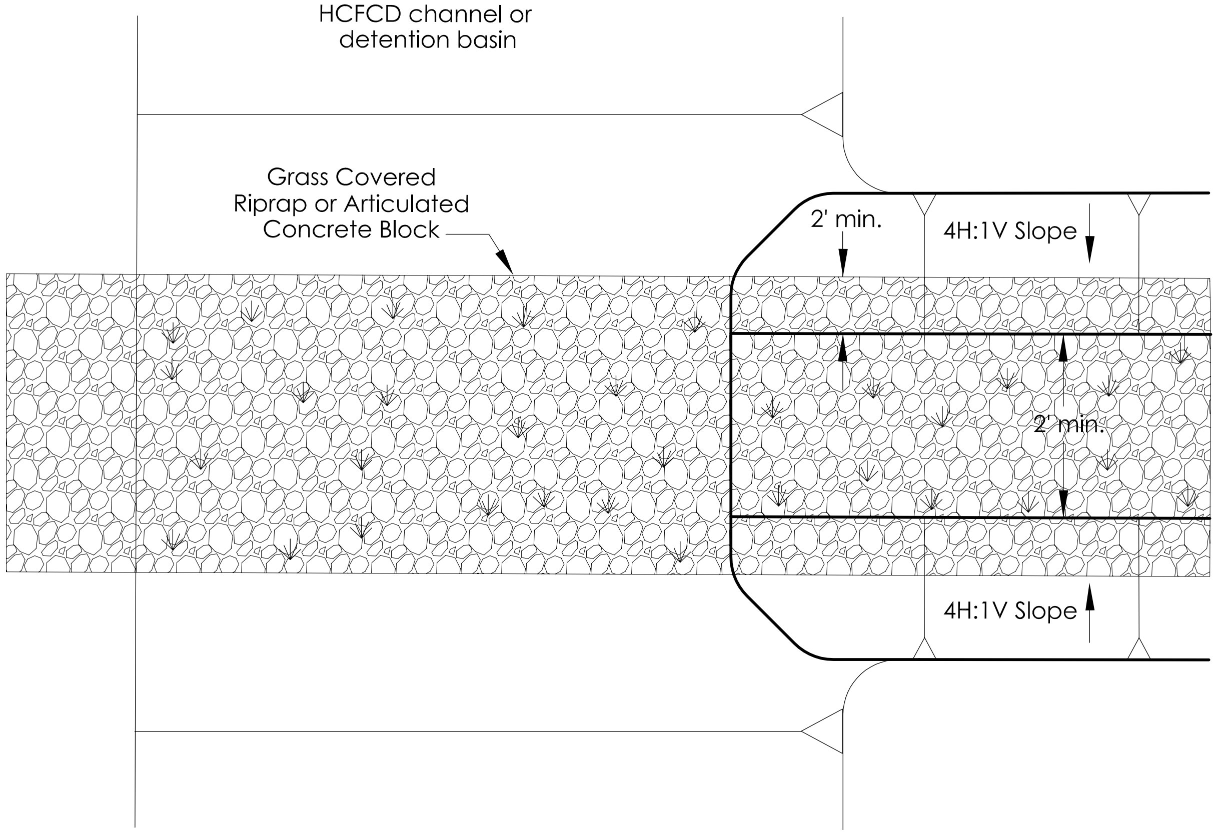
Criteria 13.2.1

A typical extreme event overland flow swale section is presented in Exhibit 13-1 for riprap or articulated concrete block and in Exhibit 13-2 for concrete lining.

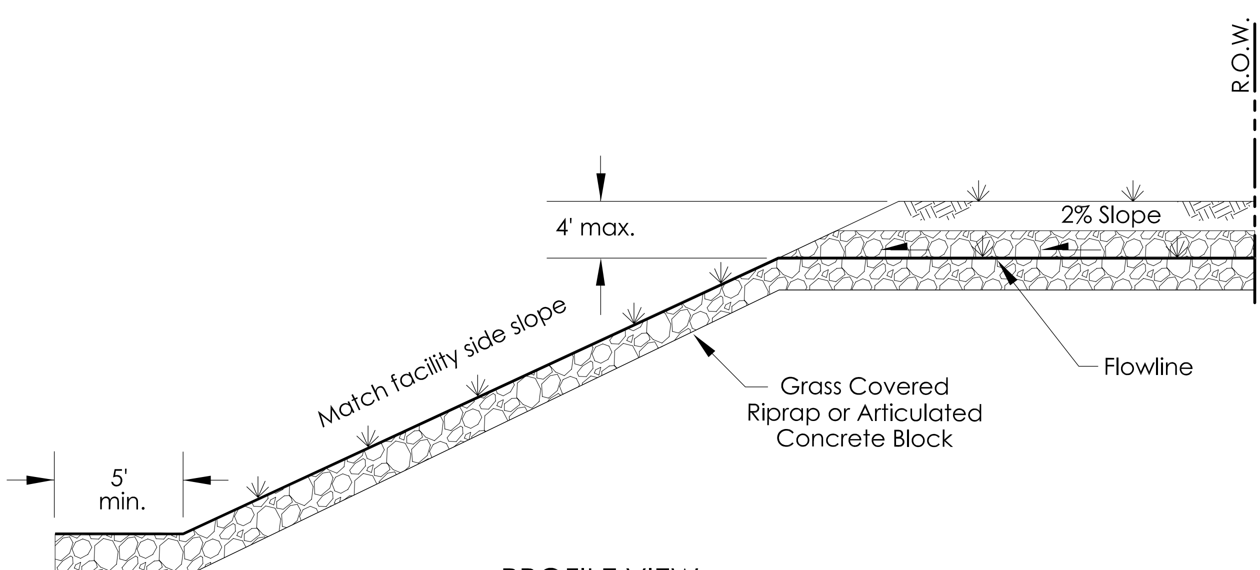
Criteria are:

- Size the swale to carry the design overflow appropriate for the situation or as required by the jurisdictional entity.
- Set the high bank elevation in the swale below the nearest and lowest slab elevation.
- Design the swale geometry such that inspection and maintenance vehicles in the maintenance berm can drive across the swale during dry periods. Criteria are:
  - 2 foot minimum bottom width.
  - 4 foot maximum depth.
  - Side slopes 4(H):1(V) or flatter.
- Line swales across the maintenance berm with concrete, articulated concrete blocks, riprap, or equivalent protection using the criteria in Section 10, Erosion and Sediment Control. Exposed riprap is not allowed across the maintenance berm since most vehicles cannot cross it.
- At the extreme event swale outfall, use concrete lining, articulated concrete blocks, riprap, or equivalent protection on the channel or detention basin side slope and into the bottom at least 5 feet.

Note: For articulated concrete blocks or riprap, make sure it is not visible on the surface by adding topsoil to fill the voids and at least one inch for articulated concrete blocks and 6 inches per riprap over the top to allow for settling. Establish turf grass on top.



PLAN VIEW



PROFILE VIEW

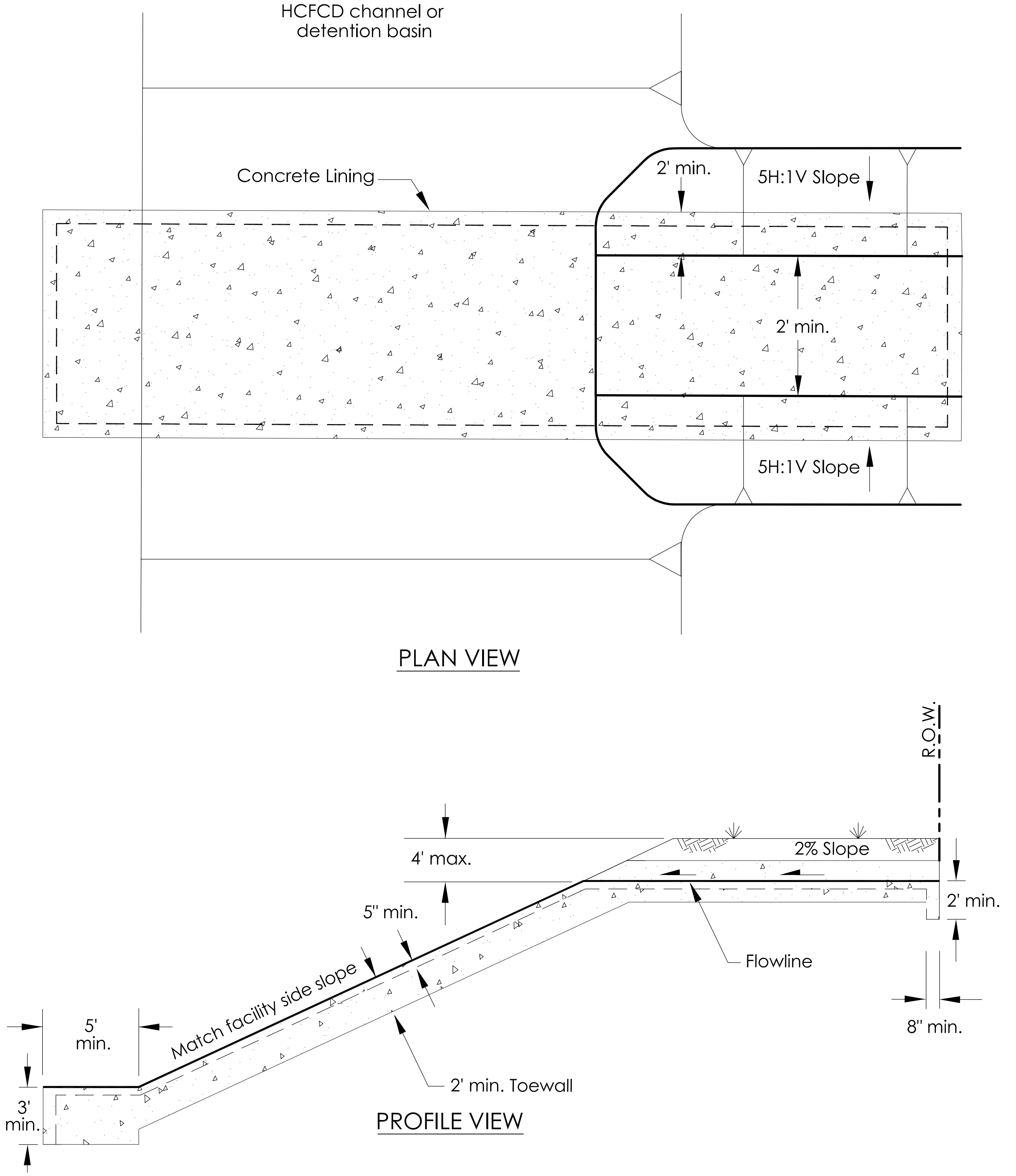
Harris County Flood Control District

POLICY, CRITERIA, & PROCEDURE MANUAL

TYPICAL EXTREME EVENT OVERFLOW - ARTICULATED CONCRETE BLOCK OR RIPRAP SWALE

DATE: 10/5/04

EXHIBIT 13-1



Harris County
Flood Control District

POLICY, CRITERIA, & PROCEDURE MANUAL

TYPICAL EXTREME EVENT OVERFLOW - CONCRETE- LINED SWALE

DATE: 10/5/04

EXHIBIT 13-2

SECTION 14 – PIPELINES, UTILITIES, AND ROADWAYS

14.1 Introduction

Overview 14.1.1

Pipelines, utilities, and roadways are allowed in HCFCD facilities provided the criteria and procedures in this manual are followed, and the utility or pipeline owner agrees to the conditions.

HCFCD does not maintain or operate pipelines, utilities, or roadways.

Review and Coordination 14.1.2

Follow the review and coordination process in Section 2.9, Non-Flood Control Features, for pipelines, utilities, and roadways proposed to be placed in, on, over, or under a HCFCD maintained facility.

Early coordination with HCFCD is recommended; particularly obtaining concurrence on the location within the HCFCD facility.

Criteria 14.1.3

HCFCD acceptance criteria for placing a pipeline, utility, or roadway within a HCFCD maintained facility are presented in Section 2.2.7, Non-Flood Control Features Accepted in a HCFCD Facility. Specific criteria and conditions are in this section.

Easements 14.1.4

The procedure for acquiring an easement within a HCFCD fee strip or easement is in Section 15.4, Easements for Pipelines, Utilities, and Roadways.

14.2 Crossings

Criteria and Conditions 14.2.1

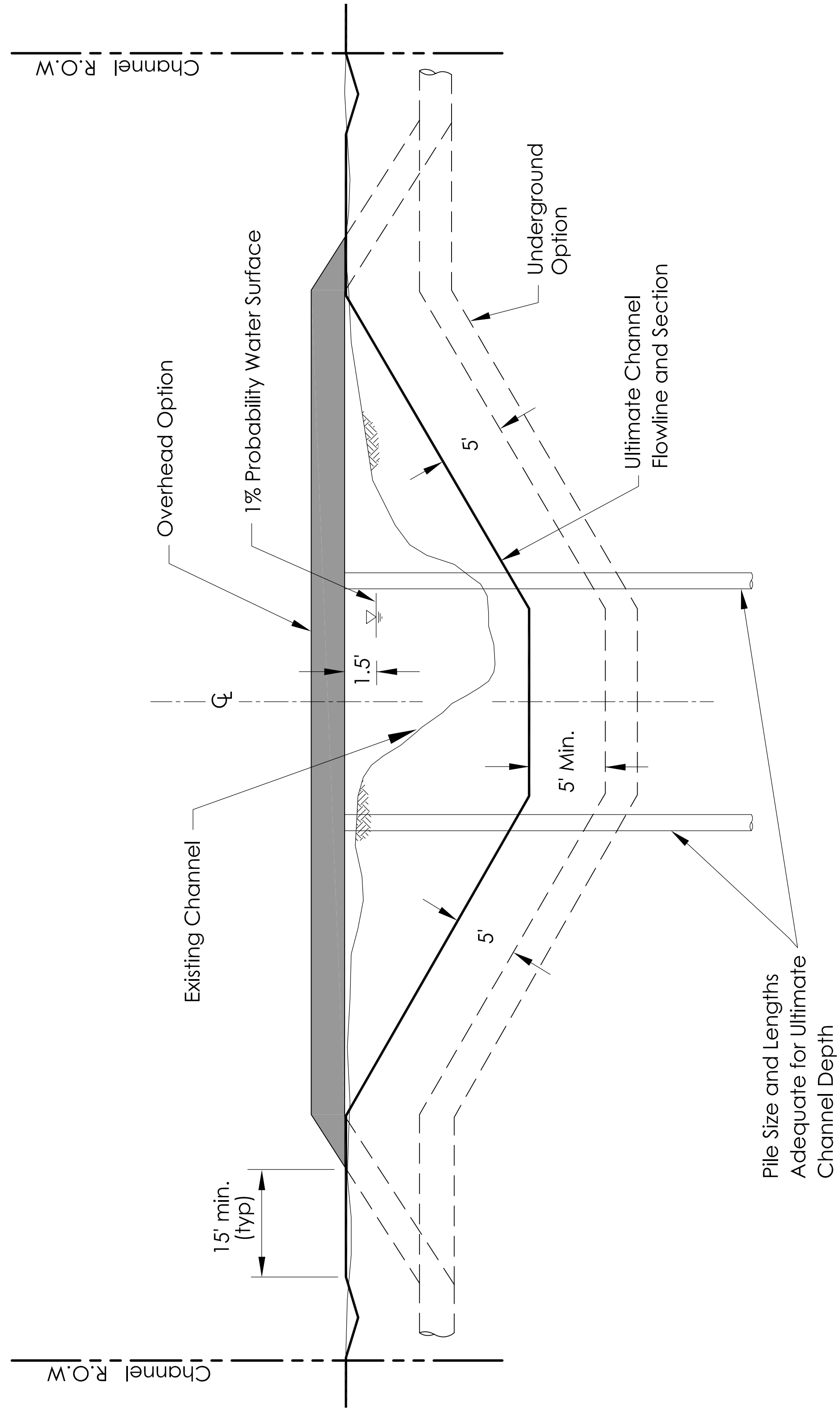
The owner of a pipeline, utility, or roadway must agree to the following specific criteria and conditions for crossings within HCFCD maintained facilities:

- Submit location of proposed crossing for HCFCD approval prior to preparing construction drawings.
- Submit hydraulic analysis to show no adverse impact to the HCFCD facility or flood levels if the crossing is overhead or exposed in the channel or detention basin.
- Locate pipes or conduits spanning the channel 1.5 feet or more above the existing or ultimate 1% exceedance water surface, whichever is higher, if possible without causing an impact on the existing or ultimate 1% exceedance water surface profile (see Exhibit 14-1)
- Design to minimize impact on the HCFCD facility maintenance and access.
- Maintain or reestablish existing backslope drainage systems.
- Manholes are not allowed in HCFCD right-of-way.
- Minimum cover over pipelines or buried utilities is 5 feet below the ultimate channel section as shown in Exhibit 14-1.
- An easement for the pipeline, utility, or roadway across HCFCD right-of-way is required from the underlying fee owner.
- Easement widths must encompass the pipeline, utility, or roadway plus the area disturbed by construction, repair, or rehabilitation.
- Haul off all trench excavation not used for backfill from HCFCD right-of-way and outside 1% exceedance (100-year) floodplain.
- Backfill within the channel or detention right-of-way shall be in accordance with the backfill requirements specified by the respective city, county, utility company, or the applicable HCFCD standard specification, whichever is more restrictive.
- Repair all damage to the HCFCD facility.
- Reestablish vegetation disturbed in the HCFCD or drainage right-of-way. This may include a maintenance period to restore to the condition prior to disturbance. Vegetation includes turf, trees, and shrubs.
- Remove abandoned lines within HCFCD right-of-way.

14.3 Parallel Pipelines and Utilities in HCFCD Facilities

Overview 14.3.1

Pipelines and utilities within HCFCD facilities and parallel to the channel or detention basin are not allowed.



Harris County Flood Control District

POLICY, CRITERIA, & PROCEDURE MANUAL

PIPELINE AND UTILITY CROSSINGS

DATE: 10/5/04

EXHIBIT 14-1

SECTION 15 - RIGHT-OF-WAY

15.1 Introduction

Overview 15.1.1

Establishing adequate right-of-way for HCFCD maintained facilities is essential for construction, expansion, and long-term operation, maintenance, and rehabilitation. In addition, easements for pipelines, utilities, and roadways across a HCFCD maintained facility are also necessary for those facilities.

Definitions 15.1.2

RIGHT-OF-WAY – An interest in real property, either in fee or easement.

HCFCD RIGHT-OF-WAY – Implies HCFCD has property rights to manage the HCFCD facility (see Section 1.1.5, Definitions).

ULTIMATE RIGHT-OF-WAY – The maximum right-of-way necessary to construct and maintain a channel or detention facility, assuming full upstream development, under stormwater management policies in effect for that watershed.

FEE, FEE SIMPLE, FEE TITLE – Full ownership of real property by an individual or entity.

EASEMENT – A limited interest in real property for a specific purpose, usually designated in the granting instrument or plat. Another entity or individual has fee title to the property.

DEDICATION – The act of a property owner who sets aside a portion of his property for the use of the public for a specific purpose. A dedication may be accomplished by plat or separate instrument and creates an easement.

CONVEYANCE – Transfer of a real property interest, either in fee or easement, from one party to another.

Continued on next page

15.1 Introduction, Continued

Real Estate Interest Options 15.1.3

HCFCD preferences and real estate interest options available are shown in the table below.

Real Estate Interest	HCFCD Preference
HCFCD Fee	Main stems and regional detention facilities.
HCFCD or Public Easement	Tributaries and detention basins with no multi-use features.
Public Easement	Tributaries and detention basins with multi-use features.

Note: Examples of multi-use features include parks, trails, trees, and water quality features.

15.2 Right-of-Way Determination

Existing Rights-of-Way 15.2.1

Determine existing rights-of-way and associated property rights for the HCFCD facility when a modification is proposed to an existing HCFCD maintained facility, or a development is proposed adjacent to an existing HCFCD maintained facility.

Channels 15.2.2

Guidelines for determining proposed channel rights-of-way are in Section 5.5, Right-of-Way.

Detention Basins 15.2.3

Guidelines for determining proposed detention basin rights-of-way are in Section 6.5, Right-of-Way.

Channel Enclosures 15.2.4

Guidelines for determining proposed rights-of-way for channel enclosures are in Section 12.2.5, Right-of-Way.

15.3 Right-of-Way Conveyance and Dedication

Introduction 15.3.1

Fee strips and easements are conveyed to HCFCD by separate instrument. Public drainage easements are dedicated by subdivision plat or separate instrument. Procedures for conveyance and dedication are presented below.

Separate Instrument Conveyance or Dedication 15.3.2

The process for conveying a fee strip or easement to HCFCD or dedicating a public easement by separate instrument is presented in the table below.

Step	Description
1	Applicant verifies proposed right-of-way width or area with the HCFCD Project Review Section or Property Management Department.
2	Applicant provides: • Deed for parent tract establishing current ownership. • Three (3) copies of the metes and bounds description on 8-1/2” x 11” white paper. • Three (3) copies of the tract plat on 8-1/2” x 11” white paper. • Environmental site assessment report for fee conveyances. Submittal requirements: • Must conform to HCFCD survey guidelines. • All copies must be sealed and signed by a Texas Registered Professional Land Surveyor. • Tract(s) must be monumented.
3	HCFCD Property Management Department reviews metes and bounds description and tract plat for compliance. (Returns to applicant for corrections, if necessary.)
4	HCFCD Property Management Department provides standard language instrument to applicant.
5	Applicant drafts conveyance or dedication instrument and submits to the HCFCD Property Management Department for review.
6	HCFCD Property Management Department forwards the instrument to the applicant for execution.
7	Applicant makes any corrections necessary and returns executed instrument to HCFCD Property Management Department.
8	HCFCD Property Management Department confirms instrument is properly executed, submits to the Harris County Attorney for review, forwards to Commissioners Court for acceptance, and then records instrument.

Continued on next page

15.3 Right-of-Way Conveyance and Dedication

Dedication Process – Subdivision Plat 15.3.3

The process for dedicating a public drainage easement for a HCFCD maintained facility by plat is:

- Applicant verifies proposed right-of-way width or area with HCFCD Project Review Section or Property Management Department.
- Applicant prepares plat for the dedication in accordance with the Plat Checklist in Appendix C.
- Applicant and HCFCD follow the current municipal or Harris County platting procedures.

15.4 Easements for Pipelines, Utilities, and Roadways

Requirement 15.4.1

Encompass new pipelines, utilities, and roadways located within a HCFCD maintained facility in an easement to facilitate inspection, maintenance, and rehabilitation of the feature.

Procedures 15.4.2

Procedures for coordinating pipelines, utilities, and roadways with HCFCD and establishing easement widths are presented in Section 14, Pipelines, Utilities, and Roadways.

Easements in New Subdivisions 15.4.3

For new subdivisions or developments established by platting, dedicate the easements for utilities and roadways located within a HCFCD maintained facility by the plat.

Right to Cross Paragraph 15.4.4

When a right-of-way is conveyed to HCFCD in fee, a right to cross paragraph can be included in the instrument to allow future crossings without having to obtain individual easements, but subject to HCFCD review and approval.

Obtaining an Easement from Underlying Fee Owner 15.4.5

If the right-of-way for an existing HCFCD maintained facility is a HCFCD easement or public drainage easement, then the owner of the pipeline, utility, or roadway must obtain an easement from the underlying fee owner.

Prior to signing the construction drawings or issuing the pipeline permit, a copy of the easement instrument is required.

Continued on next page

15.4 Easements for Pipelines, Utilities, and Roadways
Continued

Obtaining an Easement from HCFCD 15.4.6

If the right-of-way for an existing HCFCD maintained facility is a HCFCD fee strip, then the owner of a pipeline, utility, or roadway must obtain an easement from HCFCD. A separate instrument is required and the process is described in the table below.

Step	Description
1	Applicant secures approval of the proposed route or location from the HCFCD Property Management Department.
2	Applicant provides one copy of the construction drawings reviewed and signed by the HCFCD Project Review Section.
3	Applicant provides three copies of a metes and bounds description and three copies of a tract plat on 8-1/2" x 11" white paper: • Must conform to current HCFCD Survey Guidelines. • All copies must be sealed and signed by a Texas Registered Professional Land Surveyor. • Tract(s) must be monumented.
4	HCFCD Property Management Department forwards the metes and bounds description and tract plat to Harris County Right-of-Way Department and requests the easement be appraised and sold at the appraised value.
5	Harris County Right-of-Way Department obtains appraisal fee from applicant in advance.
6	Harris County Right-of-Way Department prepares the easement instrument and court order authorizing the sale of the easement to the Applicant.
7	HCFCD Property Management Department reviews the proposed deed and court order and authorizes the Harris County Right-of-Way Department to proceed with the sale.

Table continued on next page

15.4 Easements for Pipelines, Utilities, and Roadways
Continued

Obtaining an Easement from HCFCD, Continued 15.4.6

Table, continued

Step	Description
8	Commissioners Court approves the sale of the easement.
9	Harris County Right-of-Way Department concludes the transaction: 1. Collects the payment for the easement. 2. Records the easement instrument. 3. Returns the original instrument to the Applicant. 4. Sends copy of instrument to the HCFCD Property Management Department.

SECTION 16 – WATER QUALITY FEATURES

16.1 Introduction

Overview 16.1.1

Improving water quality in creeks, bayous, and channels in Harris County is a goal of the community and a requirement of the Texas Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (TPDES) permit issued by the Texas Commission on Environmental Quality (TCEQ) to Harris County, the City of Houston, HCFCD, and TxDOT. The permit and corresponding City of Houston ordinance and Harris County regulation requires industrial activities, construction sites, new development, and significant redevelopment to implement and maintain structural and nonstructural controls to reduce pollutants in stormwater run-off.

Review and Coordination Process 16.1.2

For water quality features placed in a HCFCD maintained detention basin to comply with the TPDES permit, use the review and coordination process presented in Section 2.8, New or Modified HCFCD Facilities.

HCFCD Maintenance 16.1.3

HCFCD maintenance responsibilities for water quality features in a HCFCD maintained detention basin are:

- Trash and debris removal.
- Excess sedimentation removal.
- Vegetation maintenance of grass and plants around the feature, not in the feature.
- Erosion and slope repairs.
- Outfall structure repairs.

16.2 Acceptance Criteria

Acceptance Criteria for HCFCD Maintenance 16.2.1

HCFCD will accept a water quality feature for maintenance in a detention basin provided:

- The water quality feature is constructed within a proposed or existing HCFCD maintained detention basin.
- The water quality feature and operation does not unduly interfere with the function, operation, maintenance, or rehabilitation of the HCFCD detention basin, or other multi-purpose uses such as environmental, recreation, or aesthetic features.
- The water quality feature is approved by the jurisdiction responsible for the water quality function of the feature.
- The appropriate vegetation establishment criteria are satisfied.
- The detention basin and water quality feature satisfy the acceptance criteria in Section 2.2.3, Acceptance for HCFCD Maintenance.

16.3 Design Criteria

Introduction 16.3.1

Design criteria related to the water quality feature in a HCFCD maintained detention basin are based on access and maintenance.

As methods and techniques for complying with the TPDES permit change, the HCFCD design criteria will be updated.

Floatable Collection Screen 16.3.2

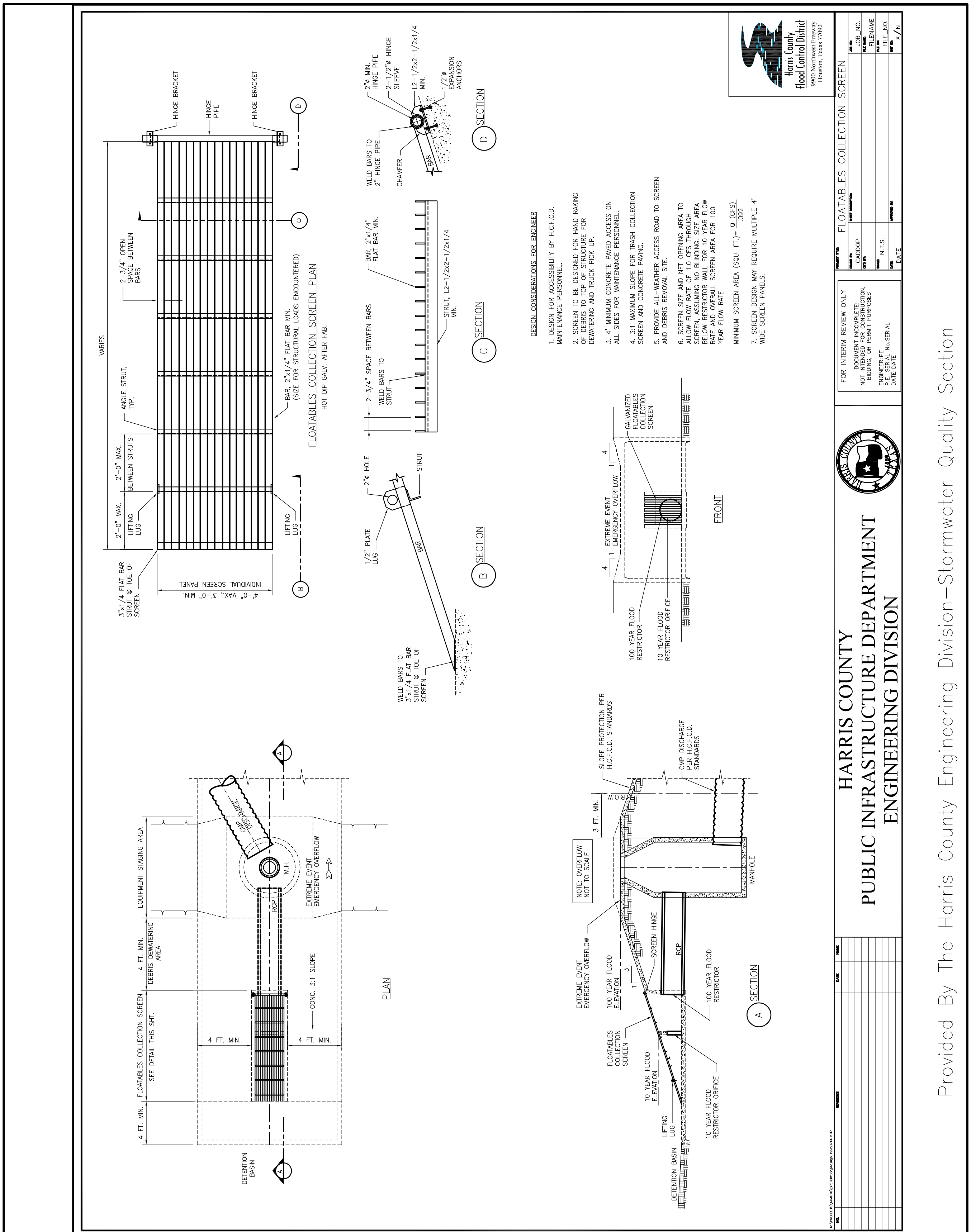
For floatables collection screens:

- Use the Exhibit 16-1 as a guide for design at specific locations.
- All other HCFCD design criteria are in effect.
- Provide an all weather access road to the debris removal site which can be from the top of bank above the screen. (See Section 16.3.3, Wet Bottom Features for access road criteria.)
- Vertical collection screens are not acceptable.

Wet Bottom Features 16.3.3

For wet bottom features:

- Include an access road to the water quality feature:
  - At least 15-feet wide.
  - At a grade no steeper than 7%.
  - Accessible under wet conditions (all weather surface: minimum 6-inch limestone gravel road per TxDOT standard or equivalent).
  - With a turnaround (minimum radius of 50 feet).
- Include a reinforced concrete pad where silt removal is to occur.
- Use the wet bottom design criteria in the Stormwater Quality Best Management Practices Manual.
- Include permanent markers indicating when sediment removal is needed and the limits of removal, if required.
- Include permanent marker indicating location of the water quality outflow restrictor.



POLICY, CRITERIA, & PROCEDURE MANUAL

FLOATABLES COLLECTION SCREEN - DESIGN GUIDE

DATE: 10/5/04

EXHIBIT 16-1

SECTION 17 – ENVIRONMENTAL AND ARCHEOLOGICAL COMPLIANCE

17.1 Environmental Compliance

Overview 17.1.1

Compliance with appropriate federal, state, and local environmental rules, laws, regulations, and permits is required when working in or modifying HCFCD maintained facilities.

Common environmental permits are the:

- Corps of Engineers' Section 404 and Section 10 permits.
- State of Texas Section 401 Water Quality Certification.
- Texas Commission on Environmental Quality (TCEQ) and Texas Pollutant Discharge Elimination System (TPDES) permit for construction and new development.

Existing HCFCD Maintained Facilities 17.1.2

When modifying existing HCFCD maintained facilities:

- Coordinate proposed changes to the facility and features with the HCFCD Property Management Department.
- Determine if existing features in the HCFCD facility were part of previous permit conditions.
- Prepare and obtain new or revised permits, where applicable.

New HCFCD Facilities 17.1.3

For new HCFCD facilities, comply with applicable federal, state, and local environmental rules, laws, regulations, and permits. Obtain permits, where applicable.

Continued on next page

17.1 Environmental Compliance, Continued

Review and Coordination Process 17.1.4

Use the review and coordination process in Section 2.8, New or Modified HCFCD Facilities, which includes the following for environmental compliance:

- Identification of environmental issues and permits in the preliminary design report.
- Prior to construction, submit one copy of all applicable permits obtained for the project, or a letter from the design engineer stating no permits are required for the project. Provide reports and correspondence associated with the permit.
- Following construction, written certification that the work was performed in conformance with the permits, if applicable.
- Provide documentation from the USACE that mitigation is complete, if applicable.

Water Quality Features 17.1.5

If a water quality feature is required to comply with a TPDES permit, HCFCD will accept the water quality feature for maintenance in a HCFCD maintained detention basin (not channel) provided the criteria in Section 16, Water Quality Features, are satisfied.

Mitigation 17.1.6

If mitigation such as a constructed wetland or tree and shrub planting is required for a Section 10/404 Permit or 401 Water Quality Certification, the mitigation can be placed in a HCFCD maintained facility provided:

- All acceptance criteria in Section 2.2.7, Non-Flood Control Features Accepted in a HCFCD Facility, are satisfied.
- All applicable procedures in this manual are followed.

17.2 Archeological Compliance

Overview 17.2.1

Compliance with Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act of 1966 and subsequent regulations is required when working in or modifying HCFCD maintained facilities. Currently, the Department of Antiquities, Texas Historical Commission oversees and permits archeological work. Identifying historic and prehistoric cultural resource sites is important so they can be avoided or mitigated.

The four investigational phases are listed below. Whether or not you proceed to the next phase depends on the findings:

1. Reconnaissance: Records research and visual field visit; Product – Letter Report.
2. Pedestrian Survey: Records research, shovel tests, and backhoe trenches; Product – Comprehensive Report.
3. National Register Testing: Delineation and determination if site is eligible for National Register of Historic Places; Product – Comprehensive Report.
4. Mitigation: Recover artifacts, archive, and record site data; Product – Comprehensive Report.

New HCFCD Facilities 17.2.2

For new HCFCD facilities, comply with Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act of 1966 and subsequent regulations, as applicable.

Continued on next page

17.2 Archeological Compliance, Continued

Review and Coordination Process 17.2.3

- Coordinate permit determinations, investigations, and conditions with the Texas Historical Commission (THC), Texas Archeological Research Laboratory (TARL), and HCFCD Environmental Services Department.
- When modifying existing HCFCD maintained facilities, coordinate with the HCFCD Property Management Department, THC, and TARL to obtain current or past permits or reports for the facility and to determine existing permit conditions.
- Prior to invasive investigations, obtain an antiquities permit from the THC.
- Use the review and coordination process in Section 2.8, New or Modified HCFCD Facilities, which includes the following for archeological compliance:
  - Identify if an archeological permit is needed or not in the preliminary design report.
  - Prior to construction, submit one copy of the antiquities permit obtained for the project or a letter from the design engineer stating no permit is required for the project. Provide reports and correspondence associated with the permit.
  - Following construction, written certification that the work was performed in conformance with the permit, if applicable.

SECTION 18 – ENVIRONMENTAL, RECREATION, AND AESTHETIC FEATURES

18.1 Introduction

Overview 18.1.1

HCFCD allows inclusion of environmental, recreation, and aesthetic features in HCFCD maintained facilities that recognize community and natural values, provided the features do not compromise the flood control function of the facility and are desired by the community.

Acceptance Criteria 18.1.2

General criteria for acceptance of non-flood control features in HCFCD maintained facilities are presented in Section 2.2.7, Non-Flood Control Features Accepted in a HCFCD Facility. Specific criteria are presented in subsequent sections.

Review and Coordination Process 18.1.3

The review and coordination process for environmental, recreation, and aesthetic features is presented in Section 2.9, Non-Flood Control Features.

Multi-Use Features/Right-of-Way 18.1.4

Where multi-use features are included within a new or expanded channel or detention basin right-of-way, additional right-of-way may be necessary if access for maintenance and rehabilitation is restricted. Coordinate with HCFCD as early as possible.

18.2 Environmental Features

Examples 18.2.1

Examples of environmental features are:

- Native grass plantings.
- Tall grass prairie creation in a detention basin.
- Wetland creation in a detention basin.
- Preservation of existing trees and shrubs.
- Habitat-type tree and shrub plantings in areas of excess channel right-of-way.
- Habitat-type tree and shrub plantings in a detention basin.
- Naturally designed low flow channels in detention basins and channels.

Criteria 18.2.2

Each project is different and is evaluated on a case-by-case basis. Close coordination with the HCFCD Property Management Department is necessary early in the planning phase when considering incorporation of environmental features. Allow sufficient time to coordinate and develop criteria specific to the proposed project.

Preservation 18.2.3

Preservation of existing natural habitat areas such as native prairie, trees, and shrubs is encouraged where possible. Planting new trees and shrubs is costly and can take many years to achieve size, habitat value, aesthetic value, and diversity. Leaving existing trees along roads and adjacent to subdivisions also has aesthetic and environmental benefits.

Continued on next page

18.2 Environmental Features, Continued

Specific Criteria for Tree and Shrub Plantings 18.2.4

Specific criteria for proposed tree and shrub plantings are:

- Plant trees in a channel only if their effect on water surface levels are accounted for in the design and there is no negative impact on water surface levels or erosion.
- Maintain a continuous minimum maintenance access of 20-feet wide along both sides of a grass-lined or partially grass-lined channel and around an entire detention basin. The access can be curvilinear provided curves allow for equipment maneuverability. It does not have to be continuous along the top of bank.
- Minimum spacing is 10 feet for habitat planting, 15 feet for non-habitat planting, and 20 feet for the maintenance access corridor.
- Do not plant trees and shrubs in backslope drainage systems.
- Trees and shrubs may be planted along the top of bank only if spaced 20 feet apart to allow equipment access to the entire side slope.
- Include plant species (common and botanical), size, number, and spacing in planting plans sealed by a landscape architect.
- For planting standards and specifications contact HCFCD.

Trees 18.2.5

Adaptable, native trees are recommended to reduce maintenance costs and increase survivability. Some trees to consider are:

Shumard Oak	Willow Oak
Water Oak	Nuttal Oak
Sweetgum	Bald Cypress
River Birch	Cedar Elm
Green Ash	Southern Magnolia
Texas Palm	Drummond Red Maple
Black Gum	Red Cedar
Sycamore	American Holly

Shrubs 18.2.6

Some native shrubs to consider are:

Wax Myrtle	Yaupon (female)
Redbud	Parsley (Green Hawthorne)
Red Buckeye	Button Bush
Beauty Berry	Dwarf Palmetto
Roughleaf Dogwood	

18.3 Recreation Features

Examples 18.3.1

Examples of recreation features are:

- Hike and bike trails.
- Nature trails and other passive recreation features.
- Sports fields in detention basins.
- Picnic and open field play areas in detention basins.
- Fishing ponds.

Criteria 18.3.2

Each project is different and is evaluated on a case-by-case basis. Close coordination with the HCFCD Property Management Department is necessary early in the planning phases when considering incorporation of recreational features. Allow sufficient time to coordinate and develop criteria specific to the proposed project.

Specific Criteria for Trails 18.3.3

Specific criteria for proposed trails are:

- Design and construct the trail so maintenance equipment can drive on or over the trail if it is in the 20 foot maintenance access corridor.
- Do not put trails in backslope drainage systems.
- Maintain conveyance in the backslope swale if the trail crosses the backslope swale.
- Design trail such that water does not pond adjacent to the trail from local runoff.
- Do not place bollards or permanent structures in the HCFCD right-of-way which would prohibit HCFCD access.
- Railing is not permitted along the top of bank.
- Gates are permissible at access points provided they include a HCFCD lock.
- No utilities, utility lines, or irrigation lines are permitted in the HCFCD right-of-way.
- Trails can be in channels or detention basins provided they do not hinder maintenance equipment access.

18.4 Aesthetic Features

Examples 18.4.1

Examples of aesthetic features are:

- Preservation of existing trees.
- Landscape-type tree and shrub plantings.
- Horizontal and vertical curvilinear contouring of detention basins.
- Variations of the side slopes of detention basins.
- Variations of the side slopes and horizontal alignment of channels.
- Composite channel sections.
- Aesthetic design of hydraulic structures and erosion control.

Specific Criteria 18.4.2

Each project is different and is evaluated on a case-by-case basis. Close coordination with the HCFCD Property Management Department is necessary early in the planning phase when considering incorporation of aesthetic features. Allow sufficient time to coordinate and develop criteria specific to the proposed project.

SECTION 19 – REPORT REQUIREMENTS

19.1 Introduction

Overview 19.1.1

A drainage or design report is important to confirm a proposed project is designed in accordance with the policies, guidelines, and criteria in this manual and sound engineering practice. The report communicates the justification of the drainage plan or design for review and approval purposes, and is a reference document for others in the future who want to perform additional work in, on, over, under, or adjacent to the same HCFCD facility.

Purpose of Reports 19.1.2

The purpose of a drainage or design report is to document, identify, and resolve as many design issues as possible early in the project development phase in order to facilitate completion of the construction drawings and a successful project.

The length of the report is not important provided the applicable design topics are covered clearly and completely.

It is suggested that reports over ten pages be bound.

Report Content 19.1.3

Prepare clear, concise, and complete reports for the proposed project that:

- Cover applicable topics.
- Explain the decisions made.
- Indicate where and why criteria were not followed.
- Summarize pertinent information and data.
- Include tables, maps, exhibits, photographs, calculations, etc.

Exhibits 19-1 and 19-2 are examples of a plan view and profile view for a proposed channel conveyance project.

Texas State Board of Registration for Professional Engineers Requirement 19.1.4

All reports submitted to HCFCD must be properly identified, sealed, signed, and dated as required by the Texas State Board of Registration for Professional Engineers.

Reports submitted for preliminary review must be clearly labeled as preliminary and comply with Texas State Board requirements.

19.2 Report Outline

Report Outline 19.2.1

To facilitate preparation and review of drainage and design reports, an outline for a typical new development project is provided below. Include all applicable sections.

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

(For projects that include detention, include the detention summary table in Section 19.3.1, Detention Summary Table)

SECTION 1 - INTRODUCTION

1.1 Project Name and Purpose
1.2 Project Limits
1.3 Project Objectives
1.4 Assumptions and Constraints
1.5 Prior Studies

SECTION 2 - EXISTING CONDITIONS

2.1 Location and Topography
2.2 Land Use
2.3 HCFCD Facilities and Unit Numbers
2.4 Right-of-Way
2.5 Pipelines and Utilities

SECTION 3 - HYDROLOGY AND HYDRAULICS

3.1 Analysis Objective
3.2 Hydrologic Methodology
3.3 Hydraulic Methodology
3.4 Pre-Project Conditions

SECTION 4 - PROPOSED DRAINAGE PLAN

4.1 Description
4.2 Hydrological Analysis
4.3 Hydraulic Analysis
4.4 Channel and/or Detention Layout
4.5 Right-of-Way Requirements
4.6 Special Erosion Control Features
4.7 Stormwater Quality Features
4.8 Potential Pipeline and Utility Conflicts
4.9 Geotechnical Requirements
4.10 Environmental Issues
4.11 Maintenance Access Plan Requirements
4.12 Other Considerations

Outline Continued on next page

19.2 Report Outline, Continued

Report Outline Continued 19.2.1

MAPS AND EXHIBITS

- Vicinity Map
- Drainage Area Map
- Project Area Map, Showing Existing and Proposed:
  - Land Use
  - Topography/Grading
  - Drainage Facilities (Public and/or Private)
  - Right-of-Way
  - Floodplain Limits
  - Stationing Used in Hydraulic Calculations
- Hydraulic Profile Showing:
  - Existing and Proposed Flowlines, Bottom Widths, and Side Slopes
  - Typical Natural Ground Elevations at the Right-of-Way Lines
  - Existing and Proposed Bridge, Culvert, Utility, and Pipeline Crossings
  - Locations of Major Confluences
  - Drop Structures, Transitions, Inflow and Outflow Structures, Stormwater Quality Features, and other Items Influencing the Plan
  - Existing and Proposed 1% and 10% Exceedance Probability Water Surface Profiles and Other Frequencies As Appropriate
  - Datum and Year of Adjustment
- Existing and Proposed Cross-Sections, Including Datum and Year of Adjustment
- Existing and Proposed Hydrographs at Critical Locations

APPENDIX

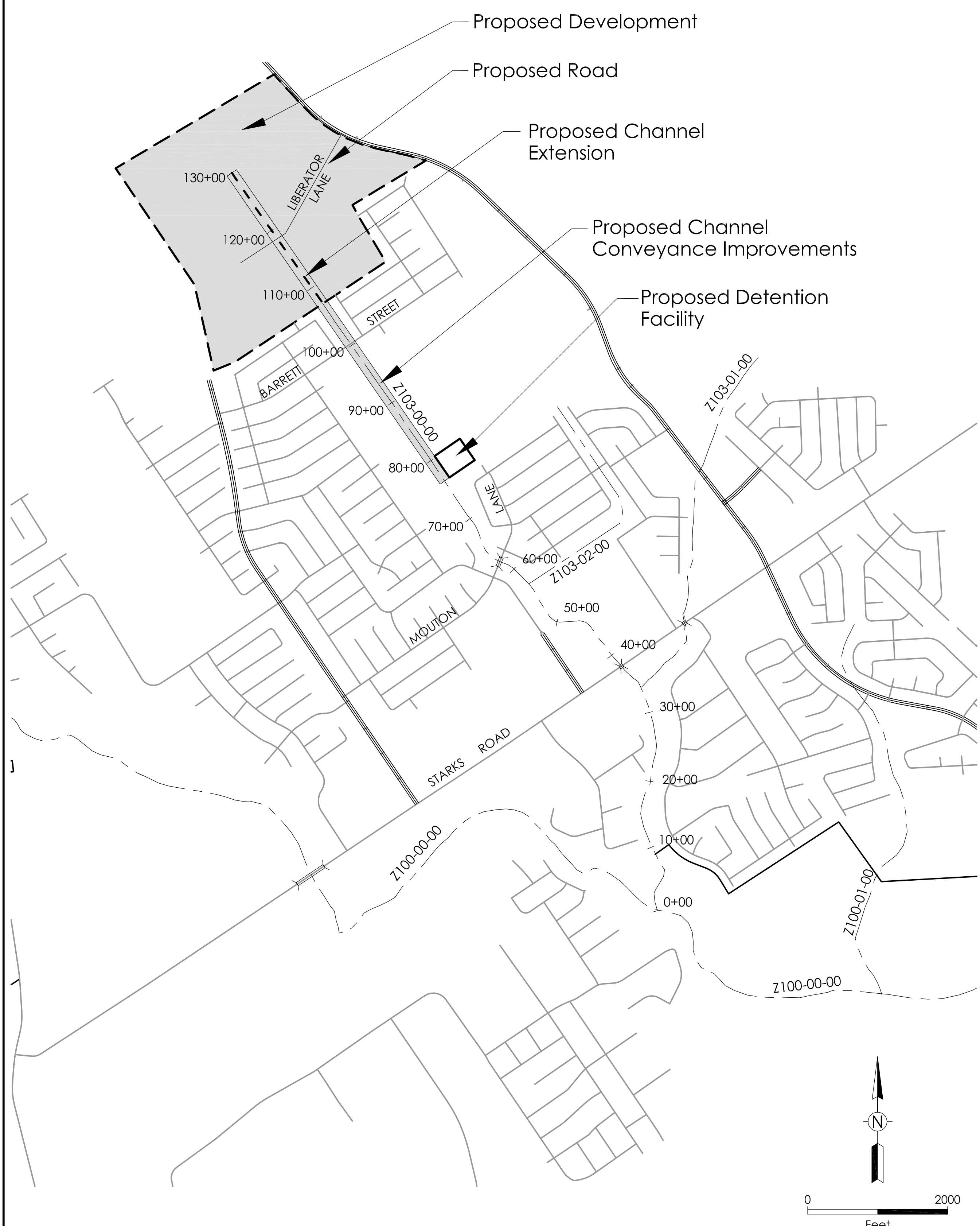
- Detailed Hydrological Calculations
- Detailed Hydraulic Calculations
- Geotechnical Report
- Environmental Site Investigation/Assessment Report
- Maintenance Access Plan

19.3 Detention Summary

Detention Summary Table 19.3.1

When a detention facility is part of the proposed project, include the following detention summary table.

Project Name			
Detention Basin Drainage Area	acres		
Detention Storage Rate	acre-feet/acre		
Detention Storage Required	acre-feet		
Detention Storage Provided	acre-feet		
	__% (__-yr)	**10% (10-yr)**	**1% (100-yr)**
Design Water Surface Elevation (___ Datum, ____ Adjustment)			
Maximum Allowable Outflow (cfs)			
Maximum Outflow Provided (cfs)			



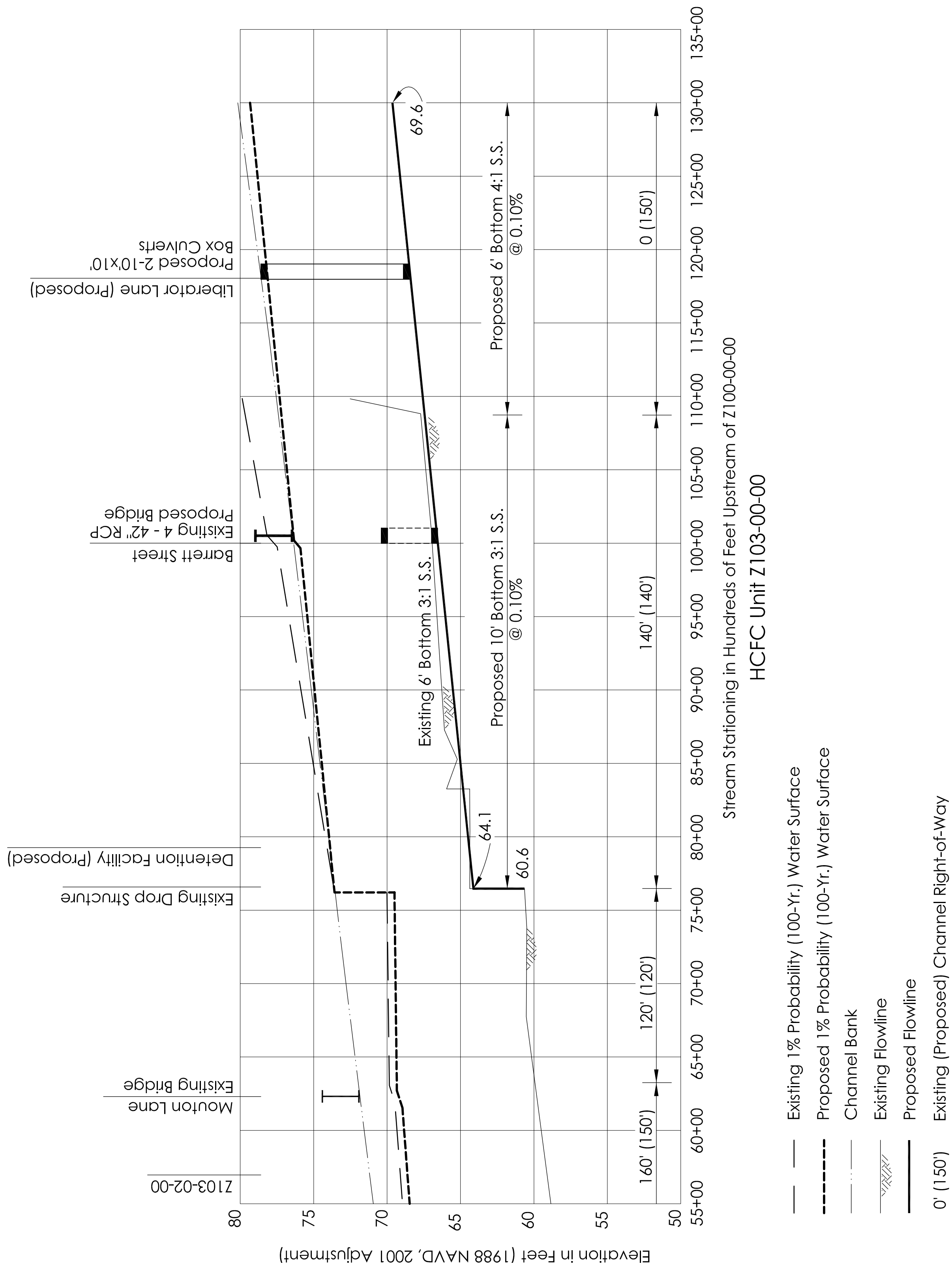
Harris County Flood Control District

POLICY, CRITERIA, & PROCEDURE MANUAL

CHANNEL CONVEYANCE IMPROVEMENT PLAN VIEW

DATE: 10/5/04

EXHIBIT 19-1



Harris County Flood Control District

POLICY, CRITERIA, & PROCEDURE MANUAL

CHANNEL CONVEYANCE IMPROVEMENT PROFILE VIEW

DATE: 10/5/04 | **EXHIBIT 19-2**

APPENDIX A – DESIGN CRITERIA SUMMARY

A.1 General

Introduction

Routine criteria for the physical design of HCFCD features are presented in this appendix as a quick look-up. For explanations and more details, refer to the sections referenced.

A.2 Channels

Flowline Slope
(See Section 5.3.2)

Flowline slope criteria are as follows:

- Minimum 0.05%.
- Maximum controlled by maximum velocity (see Section 4.4, Velocities).

  Note: Use a flowline slope greater than the minimum where possible to minimize standing water in the channel bottom and maximize capacity for a range of flows.

Trapezoidal Section
(See Section 5.4.2)

The most common channel shape is trapezoidal and the most common lining is grass. Concrete lining is used where right-of-way is limited or expensive, conveyance efficiency is critical, or erosion potential is high. Concrete lining does not provide structural support for the underlying soil.

The table below contains the criteria for both grass-lined and concrete-lined trapezoidal channel sections. See Exhibits 5-1 and 5-2 for typical sections.

Feature/Item	Grass-Lined	Concrete-Lined
Minimum bottom width	6 feet	6 feet
Bottom configuration	See Section 5.4.3	See Standard Concrete Lining Detail Sheet
Side Slopes no steeper than	4:1	2:1
Backslope drainage system	Yes	No

Additional criteria for concrete-lined channels:

- Minimum concrete lining thickness is 5 inches.
- Concrete toe walls are required on all sides to reduce the chance of flow under the lining and decrease the chance of lining failure.
- Access stairways are required for side slopes 2.5:1 and steeper. Locate stairways on the upstream side of road crossings and at intervals less than 1,500 feet.
- Weep holes are required to accommodate subsurface drainage.
- See HCFCD Standard Concrete Lining Detail Sheet in Appendix D, Standards and Details.

Continued on next page

A.2 Channels, Continued

Bottom Configuration - Trapezoidal Grass-Lined (See Section 5.4.3)

Use the table below to design the bottom of trapezoidal grass-lined channels.

Center depression = distance to depress channel centerline below toe of slope.

The purpose is to more accurately replicate the stable channel bottom shape that will naturally form, reduce erosion at the toe of slope, and reduce slope stability problems (see Exhibit 5-1).

Bottom Width	Center Depression	Pipe Outlet Invert*
6 feet ≤ BW ≤ 20 feet	0.5 foot	1 foot above flowline
20 feet < BW ≤ 60 feet	1.0 foot	At toe of slope
BW > 60 feet	3% cross slope	At toe of slope

* At elevations indicated or 1 foot above normal water level, whichever is higher.

Grass-Lined Bench Section (See Section 5.4.4)

The design considerations and criteria for grass-lined and concrete-lined channels apply to bench sections.

Criteria for benches:

- Place at least 5 feet above the normal water level and at least 3 feet below the top of bank.
- Minimum width – 10 feet.
- Minimum cross slope toward channel – 2%.

Two typical bench sections are shown in Exhibit 5-3.

Rectangular Concrete Lined Section (See Section 5.4.5)

Criteria are:

- Minimum bottom width is 8 feet.
- Minimum height of vertical walls is 4 feet.
- Equipment access ramps to the channel bottom are required for maintenance and rehabilitation work.
- Access stairways are required. Recommended locations are on the upstream side of road crossings and at intervals less than 1500 feet.
- See Standard Concrete Lining Detail Sheet in Appendix D, Standards and Details.

A typical section is shown in Exhibit 5-4.

Continued on next page

A.2 Channels, Continued

Minimum Berm Widths (See Section 5.5.3)

Minimum berm widths on each side are shown on the typical sections in Exhibits 5-1 through 5-5 and presented in the table below:

Channels That Are	The Minimum Berm Width Is
Grass-lined with a top width > 60 feet or a depth > 7 feet	30 feet
Grass-lined with a top width ≤ 60 feet or a depth ≤ 7 feet	20 feet[1]
Grass-lined where side slopes are 8(horizontal):1(vertical) or flatter	10 feet[2]
Grass-lined with the 20-foot maintenance access on a bench	10 feet
Lined with riprap or articulated concrete blocks or partially concrete-lined	Same as grass-lined channel
Fully concrete-lined	20 feet one side, 10 feet other side[1]

[1] Backslope swale system not needed.
[2] Maintenance access is on the side slope.

Miscellaneous

See Section 5.6, Confluences
See Section 5.7, Horizontal Transitions
See Section 5.8, Bends

A.3 Stormwater Detention Basins

Side Slopes (See Section 6.4.3)

For grass-lined detention basins:

- The steepest side slope allowed is 3(horizontal):1(vertical) for long term stability and maintenance.
- Perform a geotechnical investigation to confirm the steepest side slope allowable.
- Where side slopes are 5(horizontal):1(vertical) or flatter and there is a 20-foot minimum maintenance access in the bottom at the toe of slope.
  - The maintenance access at the top of slope can be eliminated.
  - A backslope drainage system is required unless one of the exceptions in Section 11.1.2, Where to Use, applies.
  - Top of slope must be a minimum of 10 feet from the right-of-way line.

For concrete-lined slopes, follow the recommendations in this manual regarding concrete-lined channels.

A.3 Stormwater Detention Basins, Continued

Dry Bottom Design (See Section 6.4.5)

Criteria for a well-graded (or dry) bottom are presented in the table below and shown in Exhibits 6-2 and 6-4.

Feature		Criteria
Outfall Pipe	Outlet Invert	For flat bottom channels, one foot above channel flowline or one foot above the normal water surface, whichever is higher. For channels with center depression, use table in Section 5.4.3, Bottom Configuration-Trapezoidal Grass-Lined.
	Inlet Invert	A minimum of 0.5 foot above outlet invert and minimum 3 feet per second velocity when hydraulic gradient = flowline gradient.
Pilot Channel	Starting Flowline	At outfall pipe inlet invert. If no outfall pipe, a minimum of 1.5 feet above the receiving channel flowline or normal water surface.
	Flowline Gradient	Grass - Minimum 0.002 feet per foot (0.2%). Concrete – Minimum 0.001 feet per foot (0.1%).
	Grass-Lined or Concrete-Lined	One-foot minimum depth and side slopes of 3:1 or flatter.
	Concrete Grade Control Structures	Use at intersections with wetlands, deep pools, and other pilot channels. Base design on the interceptor structure standard detail.
	Location	A minimum of 20 feet away from the toe of the basin side slope.
Inflow Pipe	Invert	At pilot channel flowline or higher.
Transverse or cross slopes		Minimum 0.01 feet per foot (1%).

Continued on next page

A.3 Stormwater Detention Basins, Continued

Wet Bottom Design
(See Section 6.4.10)

Criteria for a wet bottom are presented in the table below and shown in Exhibits 6-3 and 6-4.

The minimum water surface area for a permanent deep pool in a HCFCD maintained facility is one acre.

Feature	Criteria	
Outfall Pipe	Outlet Invert	Same as Section 6.4.5, Dry Bottom Design.
	Inlet Invert	• Same as Section 6.4.5, Dry Bottom Design • Visible for inspection and maintenance from at least one end of the pipe
Risers	Inlet	Visible for inspection and maintenance
Inflow Pipe	Outlet End	Use criteria of the entity responsible for the inflow pipe. If HCFCD, visible for inspection and maintenance
Maintenance Shelf	Height	1 foot above static water surface
	Cross Slope	Minimum 0.01 feet per foot (1.0%)
	Width	Minimum 10 feet
Deep Pool	Depth	Minimum 6 feet; Maximum depends on soils, geometry, and habitat goals
	Side Slope	No steeper than 3:1 (see Section 6.4.3, Side Slopes)
	Bottom Slope	Flat
Wetland	Depth	0 – 18 inches
	Bottom Slope	Flat or mild slope

Continued on next page

A.3 Stormwater Detention Basins, Continued

Inflow Structures (See Section 6.6.2)

- For overland inflow, see Section 13.2, Extreme Event Overland Flow Swales.
- For storm sewer pipe inflow, see Section 11.3, Pipe Outfalls.

  Concrete pipe may be used provided:

  - Concrete slope paving is placed at the end of the pipe in accordance with the HCFCD Concrete Channel Lining Standard Detail Sheet in Appendix D,or
  - A headwall is placed at the end of the pipe in accordance with locally accepted headwall standards published by TxDOT or Harris County.
- Box culverts may be used provided a headwall is placed at the end of the box in accordance with locally accepted headwall standards.

Miscellaneous

See Section 6.6, Inflow Structures
See Section 6.7, Outflow Structures
See Section 6.13, Emergency Overflow
See Section 6.15, Pumped Detention Systems

A.4 Erosion Control

Turf Grass Establishment Criteria
(See Section 10.3.2)

Turf establishment is required on all areas within HCFCD maintained facilities disturbed by construction, except channel bottoms and where structural erosion control measures are used.

Criteria for turf grass established by the developer or public entity is as follows:

- Establish turf grass as quickly as possible to minimize erosion and sedimentation.
- The means for establishing turf grass are in HCFCD Standard Specification Section 02921 - Turf Establishment.
- Turf grass establishment is required for final acceptance at the end of the one year warranty period. Minimum acceptance criteria is:
  - 75% coverage of live Bermuda grass on disturbed areas.
  - No erosion or rills deeper than 4”.

Continued on next page

A.4 Erosion Control, Continued

Concrete Lining Criteria (See Section 10.4.3)

Criteria are presented in the table below. See Appendix D, HCFCD Standard Concrete Channel Lining Detail Sheet, for a typical section and plan view.

Feature	Criteria
Side slopes no steeper than	2(H):1(V)
Upper limit of lining	1/3 up side slope minimum
Concrete thickness on slope and bottom	5 inches minimum
Minimum reinforcing steel	#4 bars on 12-inch centers each way or 6”x6”xW4.5xW10 welded wire fabric
Minimum toe wall depth	Channel bottom – 3 feet Side slope – 2 feet Top of lining – 2 feet
Toe wall thickness	8 inches
Top of lining	See HCFCD Standard Concrete Lining Detail Sheet in Appendix D

Concrete Lining Criteria Continued (See Section 10.4.4)

- Geotechnical investigations are required to confirm side slopes. Channel linings do not provide structural support for the soil.
- Partially concrete-lined channels require backslope drainage systems.
- Concrete toe walls are required on all sides to reduce the chance of flow under the lining and decrease the chance of lining failure.
- Riprap is required in channels a minimum of 20 feet upstream and downstream of the paving across the bottom and one-third up the side slopes to decrease flow velocities.
- Access stairways are required for side slopes 2.5:1 and steeper. Locate stairways on the upstream side of road crossings and at intervals less than 1500 feet.
- Detailed construction drawings are required where removing, modifying, or replacing existing concrete lining is proposed for a project. Example: Installing a new storm sewer outfall through concrete lining.

Continued on next page

A.4 Erosion Control, Continued

Riprap Criteria
(See Section 10.5.3)

Criteria are presented in the table below. See HCFCD Standard Storm Sewer Outfall and Riprap Detail Sheet in Appendix D for a typical section and plan view.

Feature	Criteria
Side slopes no steeper than	2(H):1(V)
Upper limit of riprap	1/3 up side slope minimum
Minimum riprap mat thickness	18 inches
Side slope finish	Finish leveling with topsoil and no riprap visible on surface
Minimum limit into channel or detention bottom	1.5 times the mat thickness from toe of slope
Minimum toe wall depth at toe of slope and in bottom	1.5 times the mat thickness

Riprap Criteria Continued
(See Section 10.5.4)

- Use HCFCD standard riprap sizes, gradations, and mat thickness in HCFCD Standard Specification Section 02378 – Riprap and Granular Fill, where applicable.
- See Appendix D, Standard Storm Sewer Outfall and Riprap Detail Sheet.
- Geotechnical investigations are required to confirm side slopes.
- Riprap-lined channels require backslope drainage systems.
- For minimum riprap extent at pipe outfalls, drop structures, bends, etc., see the sections in this manual for those specific features.
- Detailed construction drawings are required where removing, modifying, or replacing existing riprap is proposed for a project. Example: Installing a new storm sewer outfall through riprap.

A.5 Backslope Drainage Systems

Where to Use
(See Section 11.1.2)

Backslope drainage systems are required for HCFCD maintained channels and detention basins except where:

- The side slope is concrete lined to the top of bank.
- The depth at the toe of the side slope is less than 5 feet.
- The ground slopes 2% or steeper away from the top of bank to an adjacent curb and gutter street or roadside ditch.
- The ground slopes 2% or steeper from the top of bank to an adjacent jurisdictional wetland that will remain.

Criteria
(See Section 11.1.3)

Criteria for backslope swale design are in the table below.

Feature	Criteria
Depth from natural ground at edge of right-of-way	0.5 feet minimum
Depth from top of channel or detention basin bank	1 foot minimum
Depth of swale	2 feet maximum
Depth at interceptor structure	2.5 feet
Swale Side slope	1.5(H):1(V)
Swale gradient, typical	0.2%
Swale gradient, dispersive clays	0.4%
Swale centerline	5.5 feet inside right-of-way line
Interceptor structure spacing, typical	800 feet maximum (400 feet from swale summit)
Interceptor structure spacing, dispersive clays	400 feet maximum (200 feet from swale summit)
Berm width for the backslope drainage system	10 feet minimum

Continued on next page

A.5 Backslope Drainage Systems, Continued

Criteria Continued
(See Section 11.1.3)

- Design and construct interceptor structures in accordance with HCFCD Standard Interceptor Structure Detail Sheet in Appendix D.
- Include design details of interceptor structures for pipe sizes larger than the ones shown on the HCFCD Standard Interceptor Structure Detail Sheet in Appendix D.
- Developed property is not allowed to drain to backslope swales, except as noted below:
  - To avoid retaining walls and steep earthen slopes at the back of residential lots that adjoin a HCFCD maintained facility, one-half or less of adjacent residential lots may be sloped to drain to a backslope drainage system.
  - Earthen slopes over 6 inches high and steeper than 3(H):1(V) are not allowed adjacent to a backslope swale.
  - Where undeveloped acreage drains into the backslope swale system, no more than 10 acres (15 cfs) can drain into one standard backslope interceptor structure. If necessary, include additional interceptor structures and/or larger pipes than the 24 inch minimum to carry the total offsite flow (submit a drainage area map). Other interceptor structures are available to collect offsite flow as shown on the HCFCD Standard Interceptor Structure Detail Sheet in Appendix D.
  - Urban interceptor structures can be used in developed areas with limited right-of-way if HCFCD approval is obtained prior to submitting construction drawings.

A.6 Pipe Outfalls

Design Criteria
(See Section 11.3.3)

- Design and construct outfall pipes in grass-lined channels or detention basins in accordance with HCFCD Standard Storm Sewer Outfall and Riprap Detail Sheet in Appendix D.
- Design and construct outfall pipes in concrete-lined channels or detention basins in accordance with HCFCD Standard Concrete Channel Lining Detail Sheet. in Appendix D.
- Exception to standard outfall pipe details in detention basins - pipe invert can match pilot channel flowline.
- Install riprap erosion protection in grass-lined channels for pipes 48 inches and larger, wastewater treatment plant outfall pipes, and where the design velocity out of the pipe exceeds the maximum for the soil type in the Section 4.4.1, Maximum Velocities table. Minimum riprap layout is shown on the Standard Storm Sewer Outfall and Riprap Detail Sheet in Appendix D.
- Use corrugated metal pipe (galvanized steel or aluminum) or HDPE pipe with a minimum 24-inch diameter for outfall pipes within a HCFCD facility right-of-way. Storm sewer inflow pipes into detention basins can be reinforced concrete pipe (see Section 6.6.2, Inflow Structures).
- Place a standard manhole or junction box just outside the ultimate channel or detention basin right-of-way.
- Place all storm sewer inlets outside HCFCD facility right-of-way.
- Locate storm sewer outfalls 48 inches and larger on the downstream side of bridges and culverts.
- Angle pipes and boxes downstream a minimum of 30 degrees starting at the last manhole and measured from line perpendicular to the channel.
- Pave the corrugated metal pipe invert of effluent outfalls from wastewater treatment plants with concrete or use plastic pipe designed for wastewater effluent.
- Use the pipe adjustment details shown on the HCFCD Standard Storm Sewer Outfall and Riprap Detail Sheet in Appendix D, where applicable and include custom pipe adjustment details where the standard does not apply.

A.7 Pipeline, Utility, and Roadway Crossings

Criteria and Conditions **(See Section 14.2.1)**

The owner of a pipeline, utility, or roadway must agree to the following specific criteria and conditions for crossings within HCFCD maintained facilities:

- Submit location of proposed crossing for HCFCD approval prior to preparing construction drawings.
- Submit hydraulic analysis to show no adverse impact to the HCFCD facility or flood levels if the crossing is overhead or exposed in the channel or detention basin.
- Locate pipes or conduits spanning the channel 1.5 feet or more above the existing or ultimate 1% exceedance water surface, whichever is higher, if possible without causing an impact on the existing or ultimate 1% exceedance water surface profile (see Exhibit 14-1).
- Design to minimize impact on the HCFCD facility maintenance and access.
- Maintain or re-establish existing backslope drainage systems.
- Manholes are not allowed in HCFCD right-of-way.
- Minimum cover over pipelines or buried utilities is 5 feet below the ultimate channel section as shown in Exhibit 14-1.
- An easement for the pipeline, utility, or roadway across HCFCD right-of-way is required from the underlying fee owner.
- Easement widths must encompass the pipeline, utility, or roadway plus the area disturbed by construction, repair, or rehabilitation.
- Haul off all trench excavation not used for backfill from HCFCD right-of-way and outside 1% exceedance (100-year) floodplain.
- Backfill within the channel or detention right-of-way shall be in accordance with the backfill requirements specified by the respective city, county, utility company, or the applicable HCFCD standard specification, whichever is more restrictive.
- Repair all damage to the HCFCD facility.
- Reestablish vegetation disturbed in the HCFCD or drainage right-of-way. This may include a maintenance period to restore to the condition prior to disturbance. Vegetation includes turf, trees, and shrubs.
- Remove abandoned lines within HCFCD right-of-way.

APPENDIX B – FORMS

1. Preliminary Assessment of HCFCD Requirements
2. Request for Variance from HCFCD
3. Application of Acceptance of Maintenance of a Drainage/Detention Facility by HCFCD
4. 48–Hour Pre-Construction Notification
5. Certification of Construction Completion

PRELIMINARY ASSESSMENT OF HARRIS COUNTY FLOOD CONTROL DISTRICT REQUIREMENTS

Submitted By: ____________________ Phone: ________________ Email: ____________________

Company: ____ Date: ____________________

Proposed Project Description

Name: ____ Request #: _______________

Type: ____

Location: ____ (include map)

Size: ____

Existing Condition (show information on map, if available)

Subject Property Land Use: ____

Adjacent Land Use: ____

HCFCD Maintained Facilities ____

Drainage Route: ____

Historic Flooding: ____

Effective Flood Plain and Floodway: ____

Topography: ____

Existing Roads: ____

Proposed Project Information

For new land developments, include proposed drainage plan.

For non-flood control features, show what is proposed and where.

Existing HCFCD Maintained Facilities Effected: ____

New HCFCD Maintained Facility Proposed? _______________________ Where? _______________

Special Design Considerations/ Other Information: ____

____

____

____

____

(Factors that could affect the storm water management plan, such as jurisdictional wetlands, limited outfall depth, existing drainage problems, existing channel or detention conditions, etc.)

Acceptance Criteria

Prior to consideration for HCFCD maintenance, a final review of the following criteria and items required will be conducted.

HCFCD Criteria Item:
• The channel or detention basin receives storm water from a public street or public storm sewer system.
• Sealed construction drawings approved by HCFCD.
• Project constructed in accordance with the sealed construction drawings.
• Responsible engineer submits a construction certification/request for post construction inspection.
• Substantially complete construction inspection letter issued by HCFCD.
• Access to the facility available for HCFCD inspection and maintenance purposes.
• Right-of-way interest conveyed to the HCFCD or dedicated to the public for both the facility and access to the facility.
• Appropriate HCFCD turf establishment criteria satisfied.
• Facility passes the One-Year Warranty Period inspection.

HCFCD Response/Requirements:

____

____

____

____

____

____

____

By: ______________________________ Date: ____________________

Internal Use

Date of HC CC facility Acceptance ________________ (Date)

Property Management ______________________________ (Sign and Date)

DEV-ID # __________________

REQUEST FOR VARIANCE
FROM HARRIS COUNTY FLOOD CONTROL DISTRICT

Harris County Flood Control District

Submitted By: ____________________________ Phone: ______________ Email: ________________

Company: ____ Date: ________________

Proposed Project Description

Name:____ Request #_________________________

Type: ____

Location:____(include map)

Existing Condition (show information on map or drawing)

HCFCD Maintained Facilities:____

Existing Right-of-Way for HCFCD facility: ____

Topography: ____

Other Pertinent Data Related to Variance Request:

____

____

Variance Request

Specific criteria you want to vary: ____

____

Explain why the criteria needs to be varied or is not applicable: _______________________________

____

Explain how the basis for the criteria will be satisfied: ____

____

List attachments supporting variance request (preliminary design report excerpt, construction drawings, calculations, photographs, maps, etc.):

HCFCD to fill in this area *DEV ID #* ______________

Date	Reviewer	Dept./Section	Action Taken

Justification of Decision: ____

____

Approval of Final Decision: ______________________________ ______________________

(Signature) (Date)

APPLICATION FOR ACCEPTANCE of Maintenance of a Drainage/Detention Facility by Harris County Flood Control District

Harris County Flood Control District

1. APPLICANT INFORMATION (Please print or type)

Applicant's Name ________________________________ Date ____________________

Applicant's Company ________________________________ Agent for Owner? Yes ☐ No ☐

Applicant's Mailing Address_________________________ City ___________ State ______ Zip _____

Phone __________________ Fax __________________ Email __________________

Property Owner's Name ____________________________________Phone _______________
(If entity, provide full legal description, e.g., XYZ Inc., a Texas Corporation)

2. DRAINAGE/DETENTION FACILITY INFORMATION

Subdivision or Development Name: _________________________Key Map Page & Block # __________

Type of Facility:_________________________ (New Channel, Detention Basin, Channel Improvements, etc.)

____.

HCFCD Unit No. : _________________________ Request No.______________

3. ACCEPTANCE CRITERIA:

This is a final review of the criteria and items required. The answers to these questions do not determine acceptance. They merely provide the necessary data for an informed decision. If any item is checked "No", attach variances or other documentation.

HCFCD Criteria Item:	Yes	No
a. Does the channel or detention basin receive storm water from a public street or public storm sewer system?		
b. Have the sealed construction drawings been approved by HCFCD? Date ______________		
c. Was the project constructed in accordance with the sealed construction drawings? **Attach copy of Record Drawings**		
d. Has the responsible engineer submitted a construction certification/request for post const. inspection? **Attach copy**		
e. Was a substantially complete construction inspection letter issued by HCFCD? **Attach copy**		
f. Is access to the facility available for HCFCD inspection and maintenance purposes?		
g. Has the appropriate R.O.W. interest been conveyed to the HCFCD or dedicated to the public for both the facility and access to the facility? **Provide copy of recorded plat or separate instrument**.		
h. Has the appropriate HCFCD turf establishment criteria been satisfied?		
i. Has facility passed the One-Year Warranty Period inspection? **Attach copy of HCFCD Post Warranty verification letter**		

_________________________________ APPLICANT'S SIGNATURE

______________ DATE

Internal Use

Date of HC CC facility Acceptance __________ (Date)

Property Management ____________________ (Sign and Date)

DEV-ID # _____________

48 HOUR PRE-CONSTRUCTION NOTIFICATION

Harris County Flood Control District

GENERAL INFORMATION

Project Name ______________________________ Date ________________
HCFCD Unit No.______________________________ Request No.____________
Brief Description _________________________________Key Map Page___________

❑ ***OUTFALL*** ❑ ***CHANNEL*** ❑ ***DETENTION*** ❑ ***UTILITY*** ❑ ***OTHER***

Fill in dates in the table below.

ITEM	PROP. OR EST.	ACTUAL
Construction Start		
Construction Completion		

CONTACT INFORMATION

Requestor ______________________________ ***Phone No.*** ________________

Contractor ______________________________ ***Phone No.*** ________________

Superintendent:	Phone No.:	Cell No.:	Pager No.:	Email:

Consultant Firm __________________________ ***Phone No.*** ________________

Engineer:	Phone No.:	Cell No.:	Pager No.:	Email:
Inspector:	Phone No.:	Cell No.:	Pager No.:	Email:

Certification that all applicable permits have been obtained ______________________
Superintendent Signature

ATTACHMENTS REQUIRED

- Construction Drawings
- Certification to Enter HCFCD Right-of-Way
- Copy of Right-of-Way for non-Flood Control Feature, if applicable
- List copies of permits attached ________________________________
____

Complete and submit this form and attachments to: Charlotte Jenkins, HCFCD Property Management Development Coordination and Inspection Section, 9900 Northwest Freeway, Houston, Texas, 77092. Email crj@hcfcd.co.harris.tx.us, Fax Number: 713/684-4129, Phone Number: 713/684-4116.

Assigned To________________________________ DEV- ID # ____________

Certification of Construction Completion

There is not a standard form for the Certification of Construction Completion.

Do the following:

1. Submit a letter signed and sealed by the Owner's Engineer certifying that
   - the elevations and grades were taken by an on-site survey on a certain date
   - all features and appurtances are constructed to the grade shown on the record drawings and in compliance with specifications.
   - all pipes, structures, etc. are of the size and dimensions shown on the record drawings and
   - all improvements are capable of performance as designed by the engineer and approved by the HCFCD.

2. For work in existing HCFCD maintained facilities, certify the facility was restored to as good or better condition than prior to construction.

3. Note all variances previously granted and variances requested as part of this submittal, if any.

APPENDIX C - CHECKLISTS

C.1 – Projects with Storm Sewer Outfalls

C.2 – Channel Construction Drawings

C.3 – Detention Basin Construction Drawings

C.4 – Bridge and Culvert Construction Drawings

C.5 – Wastewater Treatment Plant Construction Drawings

C.6 – Pipeline/Utility Crossing Construction Drawings

C.7 – Recreation (including trails), Environmental, and Aesthetic Feature Construction Drawings

C.8 – Plat Checklist

Checklist C.1 – Projects with Storm Sewer Outfalls

Plan Title ____ **Plan Date** _________

Item	√ or N.A.
1. Plan Title.	
2. Vicinity Map, North Arrow, Scale(s), and Legend.	
3. Date Prepared and Revised.	
4. Official Benchmark Datum and Year of Survey Adjustment.	
5. HCFCD Reference Unit Number(s).	
6. Signed and Sealed by a licensed Texas Professional Engineer.	
7. Standard HCFCD Notes for Construction Drawings.	
8. Standard Detail Sheets, as applicable.	
9. Overall Layout Map Showing Floodplain and Floodway Limits Outside of Channel/Detention Right-of-Way.	
10. Plan View and Cross Section View of Storm Sewer Outfall(s) into Channel or Detention Basin.	
11. Existing, Proposed, and Ultimate HCFCD or Drainage Right-of-Way on Plan View and Cross Sections.	
12. Right-of-way information, including deed recording volume and page, clerk's file number, grantee (e.g. HCFCD, Harris County, TxDOT, City, Public, etc.), type (e.g. easement or fee strip), and copies of the recorded deeds.	
13. Existing and Ultimate Channel/Detention Cross Section, including Channel/Detention High Banks, Toes, Centerline, Backslope Swales, Backslope Interceptor Structures.	
14. 100-Year Water Surface on Channel/Detention Section. (Reference Source)	
15. Flood Plain and Floodway Limits Outside of Channel/Detention Right-of-Way.	
16. Existing and Proposed Utility Easements Adjacent to and Within Project.	
17. Other information required for specific site conditions or project.	

- Drainage or Design Report reviewed. ___N/A ___Yes, Date ____________
- Geotechnical Report reviewed. ___N/A ___Yes, Date ____________
- Include this checklist with each submittal. Check (√) if included or mark "N/A" if item is not applicable to the project.

Engineer ____ Date Submitted ______________

Checklist C.2 - Channel Construction Drawings

Plan Title ______________________________ **Plan Date** __________

Item	√ or N.A.
1. Plan Title.	
2. Vicinity Map, North Arrow, Scale(s), and Legend.	
3. Date Prepared and Revised.	
4. Official Benchmark Datum and Year of Survey Adjustment.	
5. HCFCD Reference Unit Number(s).	
6. Signed and Sealed by a licensed Texas Professional Engineer.	
7. Standard HCFCD Notes for Construction Drawings.	
8. Standard Detail Sheets, as applicable.	
9. Existing Site Topography Including Offsite Elevations a Minimum of 20 Feet Beyond Right-of-Way.	
10. Existing and Proposed Channel High Banks, Toes, and Flowline on Plan View and Natural Ground at Right-of-Way Edge along Profile.	
11. Existing and Proposed Cross sections, Including Ultimate, If Applicable.	
12. Existing, Proposed, and Proposed HCFCD or Drainage Right-of-Way on Plan View and Cross Sections.	
13. Right-of-way information, including deed recording volume and page, clerk's file number, grantee (e.g. HCFCD, Harris County, TxDOT, City, Public, etc.), type (e.g. easement or fee strip), and copies of the recorded deeds.	
14. Proposed Backslope Swales on Plan, Profile, and Cross Sections..	
15. Proposed 10-Year and 100-Year Water Surface Profile (Reference Source). Periodic tic marks are acceptable.	
16. Existing and Proposed Pipe Outfalls.	
17. Bridge and Culvert Crossings.	
18. Spoil Disposal Location, if Adjacent to Channel.	
19. Erosion Protection.	
20. Adjacent Streets, Subdivisions, Easements, Etc.	
21. Drop Structure Details, including Upstream and Downstream Erosion Protection.	
22. Concrete Channel Details.	
23. Bend and Transition Details.	
24. Location and Identification of Existing Easements and Utilities (Pipeline, HL&P, Roadway, Etc.); Written Approval of Entity Indicating Approval of Proposed Construction.	
25. Maintenance Access Plan.	
26. Other information required for specific site conditions or project.	

- Drainage or Design Report reviewed. ___N/A ___Yes, Date ____________
- Geotechnical Report reviewed. ___N/A ___Yes, Date ____________
- Include this checklist with each submittal. Check (√) if included or mark "N/A" if item is not applicable to the project.

Engineer ______________________________ Date Submitted _______________

Checklist C.3 - Detention Basin Construction Drawings

Plan Title ______________________________ **Plan Date** _________

Item	√ or N.A.
1. Plan Title.	
2. Vicinity Map, North Arrow, Scale(s), and Legend.	
3. Date Prepared and Revised.	
4. Official Benchmark Datum and Year of Survey Adjustment.	
5. HCFCD Reference Unit Number(s).	
6. Signed and Sealed by a licensed Texas Professional Engineer.	
7. Standard HCFCD Notes for Construction Drawings.	
8. Standard Detail Sheets, as applicable.	
9. Existing and Proposed Site Topography Including Offsite Elevations a Minimum of 20 Feet Beyond Right-of-Way.	
10. Existing and Proposed Basin High Banks, Toes, and Flowline on Plan View (Include Profile View for Linear Detention Basins).	
11. Existing and Proposed Cross Sections, Including Ultimate, If Applicable.	
12. Existing and Proposed HCFCD or Drainage Right-of-Way on Plan View and Cross Sections.	
13. Right-of-way information, including deed recording volume and page, clerk's file number, grantee (e.g. HCFCD, Harris County, TxDOT, City, Public, etc.), type (e.g. easement or fee strip), and copies of the recorded deeds.	
14. Proposed Backslope Swales on Plans and Cross Sections.	
15. Proposed 10-Year and 100-Year Water Surface Elevations. (Reference Source)	
16. Emergency Overflow.	
17. Spoil Disposal Location, if Adjacent to Basin.	
18. Inlet and Outlet Detail, Including Erosion Protection.	
19. Pilot Channel Detail.	
20. Maintenance Access Indicated.	
21. Adjacent Streets, Subdivisions, Easements, Etc.	
22. Location and Identification of Existing Easements (Pipeline, HL&P, Roadway, Etc.); Written Approval of Entity Indicating Approval of Proposed Construction.	
23. Service Area of Basin (Map and Acreage).	
24. Summary Table of Detention Basin Volume and Release Rate Computations.	
25. Maintenance Access Plan.	
26. Other information required for specific site conditions or project.	

- Drainage or Design Report reviewed. ___N/A ___Yes, Date _____________
- Geotechnical Report reviewed. ___N/A ___Yes, Date _____________
- Include this checklist with each submittal. Check (√) if included or mark "N/A" if item is not applicable to the project.

Engineer ____________________________________ Date Submitted _______________

Checklist C.4 - Bridge and Culvert Construction Drawings

Plan Title ____________________ **Plan Date** __________

Item	√ or N.A.
1. Plan Title.	
2. Vicinity Map, North Arrow, Scale(s), and Legend.	
3. Date Prepared and Revised.	
4. Official Benchmark Datum and Year of Survey Adjustment.	
5. HCFCD Reference Unit Number(s).	
6. Signed and Sealed by a licensed Texas Professional Engineer.	
7. Standard HCFCD Notes for Construction Drawings.	
8. Standard Detail Sheets, as applicable.	
9. Existing and Proposed HCFCD or Drainage Right-of-Way on Plan View.	
10. Right-of-way information, including deed recording volume and page, clerk's file number, grantee (e.g. HCFCD, Harris County, TxDOT, City, Public, etc.), type (e.g. easement or fee strip), and copies of the recorded deeds.	
11. Existing Site Topography Including Offsite.	
12. Plan, Profile, and Section Views, with Existing and Proposed Low Chord and Top of Road Elevations Shown on Section View.	
13. Headwalls, Wingwalls and Footings.	
14. Concrete Channel Lining/Erosion Protection Details.	
15. Detours and Guardrails affecting channel maintenance access.	
16. Existing, Proposed, and Ultimate Channel Sections.	
17. Existing and Ultimate 10-Year and 100-Year Water Surface Elevations. (Reference Source)	
18. Existing and Proposed Outfall Pipes and Roadside Ditch Interceptor Structures.	
19. Channel Transition Detail, Plan and Section Views.	
20. Existing and Proposed Backslope Swales and Outfalls.	
21. Utility Crossings.	
22. Show Maintenance Access to HCFCD Channels.	
23. Other information required for specific site conditions or project.	

- Drainage or Design Report reviewed. ___N/A ___Yes, Date _____________
- Geotechnical Report reviewed. ___N/A ___Yes, Date _____________
- Include this checklist with each submittal. Check (√) if included or mark "N/A" if item is not applicable to the project.

Engineer ____________________ Date Submitted ________________

Checklist C.5 - Wastewater Treatment Plant Construction Drawings

Plan Title ______________________________	**Plan Date** ________
Item	**√ or N.A.**
1. Plan Title.	
2. Vicinity Map, North Arrow, Scale(s), and Legend.	
3. Date Prepared and Revised.	
4. Official Benchmark Datum and Year of Survey Adjustment.	
5. HCFCD Reference Unit Number(s).	
6. Signed and Sealed by a licensed Texas Professional Engineer.	
7. Standard HCFCD Notes for Construction Drawings.	
8. Standard Detail Sheets, as applicable.	
9. Existing and Proposed HCFCD or Drainage Right-of-Way on Plan View.	
10. Right-of-way information, including deed recording volume and page, clerk's file number, grantee (e.g. HCFCD, Harris County, TxDOT, City, Public, etc.), type (e.g. easement or fee strip), and copies of the recorded deeds.	
11. Existing Site Topography Including Offsite Elevations.	
12. Site Layout.	
13. Existing Backslope Swales.	
14. Site Drainage Plan.	
15. Pipe Outfall Profile and Channel Section for Storm Sewer and Effluent Line.	
16. 100-Year Water Surface Elevation and Source.	
17. Flood Plain and Floodway Limits Outside of Channel Right-of-Way.	
18. Adjacent Streets, Subdivisions, Easements, etc.	
19. Outfall Channel Information. (Include Base Flow Level in Channel).	
20. Other information required for specific site conditions or project.	

- Drainage or Design Report reviewed. ___N/A ___Yes, Date ____________
- Geotechnical Report reviewed. ___N/A ___Yes, Date ____________
- Include this checklist with each submittal. Check (√) if included or mark "N/A" if item is not applicable to the project.

Engineer ____ Date Submitted _______________

Checklist C.6 - Pipeline/Utility Crossing Construction Drawings

Plan Title ____ **Plan Date** _________

Item	√ or N.A.
1. Plan Title.	
2. Vicinity Map, North Arrow, Scale, and Legend.	
3. Date Prepared and Revised.	
4. Official Benchmark Datum and Year of Survey Adjustment.	
5. HCFCD Reference Unit Number(s).	
6. Signed and Sealed by a licensed Texas Professional Engineer.	
7. Standard HCFCD Notes for Construction Drawings.	
8. Plan and Profile of Crossing. (Utility Plans No Larger than 8.5"x14")	
9. Crossing Located on Plan Using Distance(s) from Identifiable Landmark(s).	
10. Existing Site Topography Including Offsite Elevations.	
11. Existing, Proposed, and Ultimate Channel Section.	
12. Existing and Proposed Pipeline or Utility.	
13. Existing and Proposed HCFCD or Drainage Right-of-Way on Plan View.	
14. Right-of-way information, including deed recording volume and page, clerk's file number, grantor, grantee (e.g. HCFCD, Harris County, TxDOT, City, Public, etc.), type (e.g. easement or fee strip), and copies of the recorded deeds, as applicable.	
15. Existing and Future 100-Year Water Surface for Elevated Crossings.	
16. Owners of Utilities and Emergency Telephone Number.	

Please submit all pipeline and private utility crossing plans to Utility Coordinator, Harris County Flood Control District, 9900 Northwest Freeway, Suite 220, Houston, TX 77092, 713-684-4000.

- Drainage or Design Report reviewed. ___N/A ___Yes, Date ____________
- Geotechnical Report reviewed. ___N/A ___Yes, Date ____________
- Include this checklist with each submittal. Check (√) if included or mark "N/A" if item is not applicable to the project.

Engineer ____ Date Submitted _______________

Checklist C.7 – Recreation (including trails), Environmental, and Aesthetic Feature Construction Drawings

Plan Title ______________________________ **Plan Date** _________

Item	√ or N.A.
1. Plan Title.	
2. Vicinity Map, North Arrow, Scale, and Legend.	
3. Date Prepared and Revised.	
4. Official Benchmark Datum and Year of Survey Adjustment.	
5. HCFCD Reference Unit Number(s).	
6. Signed and Sealed by a licensed Texas Professional Engineer.	
7. Standard HCFCD Notes for Construction Drawings.	
8. Existing and Proposed HCFCD or Drainage Right-of-Way on Plan View.	
9. Right-of-way information, including deed recording volume and page, clerk's file number, grantor, grantee (e.g. HCFCD, Harris County, TxDOT, City, Public, etc.), type (e.g. easement or fee strip), and copies of the recorded deeds, as applicable.	
10. Existing Site Topography Including Backslope Swales and Outfalls.	
11. Existing Recreation, Environmental or Aesthetic Features.	
12. Feature Located on Plan Using Distance(s) from Identifiable Landmark(s).	
13. Dimensions of the Feature and Proposed Materials.	
14. For plantings, the number, sizes, species name (botanical and common), and spacing sealed by a landscape architect.	
15. Existing, Proposed, and Ultimate Channel Section or Detention Basin Layout.	
16. Existing and Future 10-Year and 100-Year Water Surface Elevations.	
17. Maintenance Access Plan for Feature.	
18. Owner or Sponsor of Feature Labeled.	
19. Other information required for specific site conditions or project.	

- Drainage or Design Report reviewed. ___N/A ___Yes, Date ____________
- Geotechnical Report reviewed. ___N/A ___Yes, Date ____________
- Include this checklist with each submittal. Check (√) if included or mark "N/A" if item is not applicable to the project.

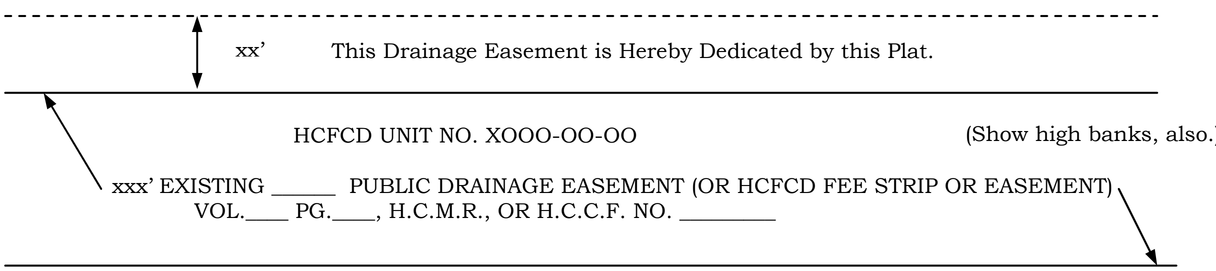
Engineer ________________________________ Date Submitted _______________

C.8 - Plat Checklist

1. Identify Existing Drainage Right-of-Way (Within or Adjacent to Plat Boundary)
   - Type (Fee Strip or Drainage Easement)
   - Grantee (e.g. HCFCD, Harris County, City, TxDOT, Public, etc.)
   - Correct Recording Information – Use Volume and Page, H.C.M.R., or H.C.C.F. No.
   - Accurate Delineation – Label Width and Indicate Limits
   - HCFCD Unit Reference Number
   - Location of Existing Channel or Detention Basin High Banks

2. Identify Public Drainage Easement Being Dedicated By This Plat
   - Label as "Public Drainage Easement"
   - Accurate Delineation – Label Width and Indicate Limits
   - HCFCD Unit Reference Number
   - Location of Proposed Channel or Detention Basin High Banks
   - Dedication Note: "This Drainage Easement is Hereby Dedicated by This Plat."

   Right-of-Way Identification Example:



3. Include Site Drainage Plan Note, if required by HCFCD. "Site drainage plans for the future development of this reserve must be approved by the Harris County Flood Control District."

APPENDIX D – STANDARDS AND DETAILS

1. HCFCD Standard Notes for Construction Drawings
2. HCFCD Standard Interceptor Structure Detail Sheet
3. HCFCD Standard Storm Sewer Outfall and Riprap Detail Sheet
4. HCFCD Standard Concrete Lining Detail Sheet
5. HCFCD Geotechnical Investigation Guidelines

STANDARD HCFCD NOTES FOR CONSTRUCTION DRAWINGS

1. Notify the Harris County Flood Control District, Property Management Department in writing at least 48 hours prior to construction. Submit the HCFCD 48 hour pre-construction notification form and a copy of the approved construction drawings to HCFCD, 9900 Northwest Freeway, Houston, Texas 77092, Attn: Property Management Dept.

2. Engineer shall submit certification letter and record drawings to the Harris County Flood Control District, Property Management Department, requesting inspection of items constructed in Harris County Flood Control District right-of-way. Prior to requesting inspection, the drainage right-of-way and/or easements shall be staked and flagged.

3. Protect, maintain, and restore existing backslope drainage systems.

4. Backslope swale and interceptor structure elevations and locations shown on plans are approximate. Final elevations and locations shall be field verified by the engineer prior to installation.

5. Establish turf grass on all disturbed areas within the channel or detention right-of-way, except the channel bottom and where structural erosion measures are used. Minimum acceptance criteria are 75% coverage of live Bermuda grass and no erosion or rills deeper than 4”.

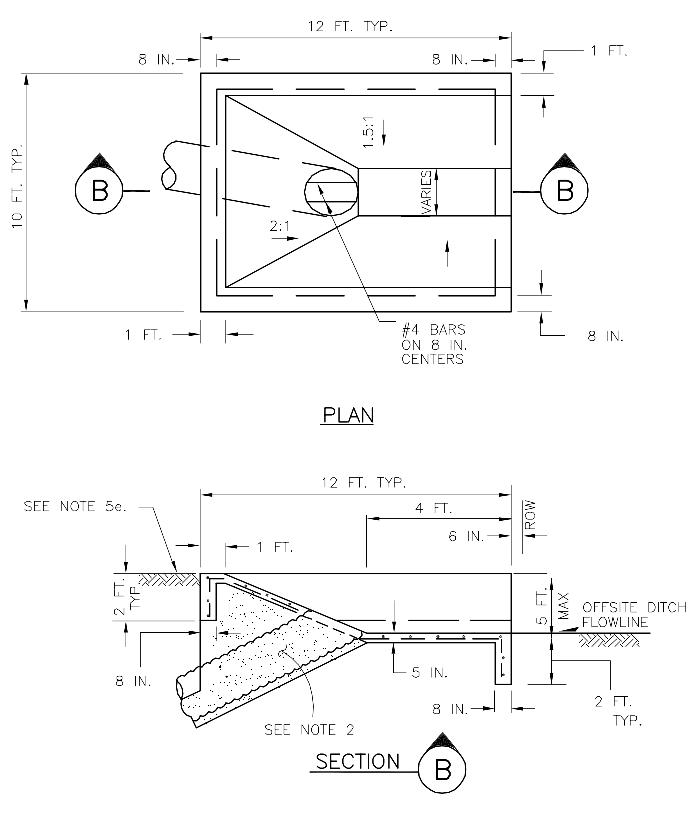
6. Backfill in accordance with the Harris County Flood Control District Standard Specification, Section 02315 - Excavating and Backfilling, or equivalent.

7. Excavate channel flowline to design elevation as shown on plans and downstream, as necessary, to ensure no water in storm sewer during "dry" conditions.

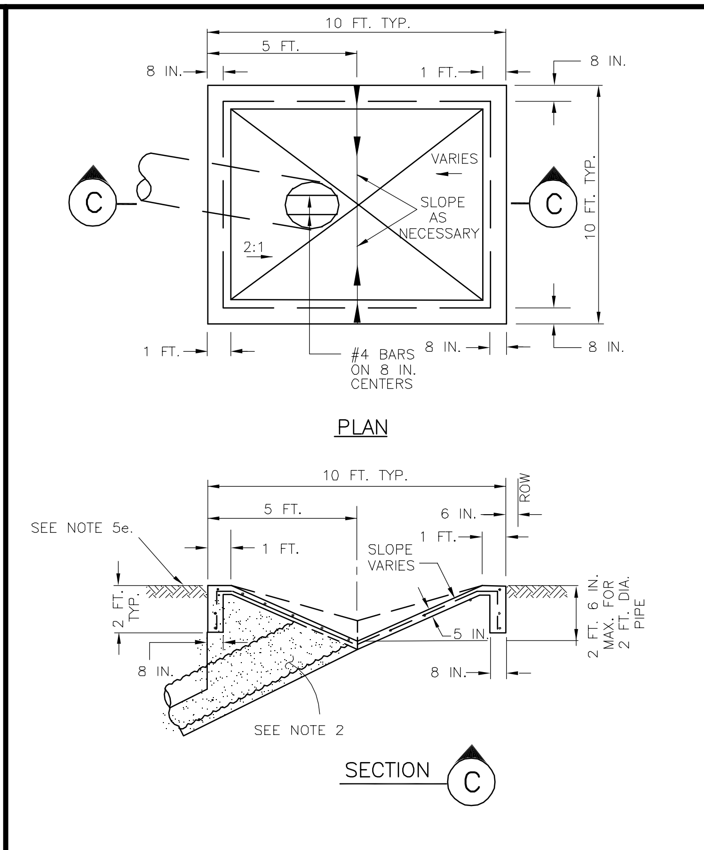
8. Maintain flow in channel during construction and restore channel to original condition.

9. Remove all excavated material from the Harris County Flood Control District or drainage right-of-way. No fill is to be placed within a designated flood plain area without first obtaining a fill permit from the appropriate jurisdictional authority.

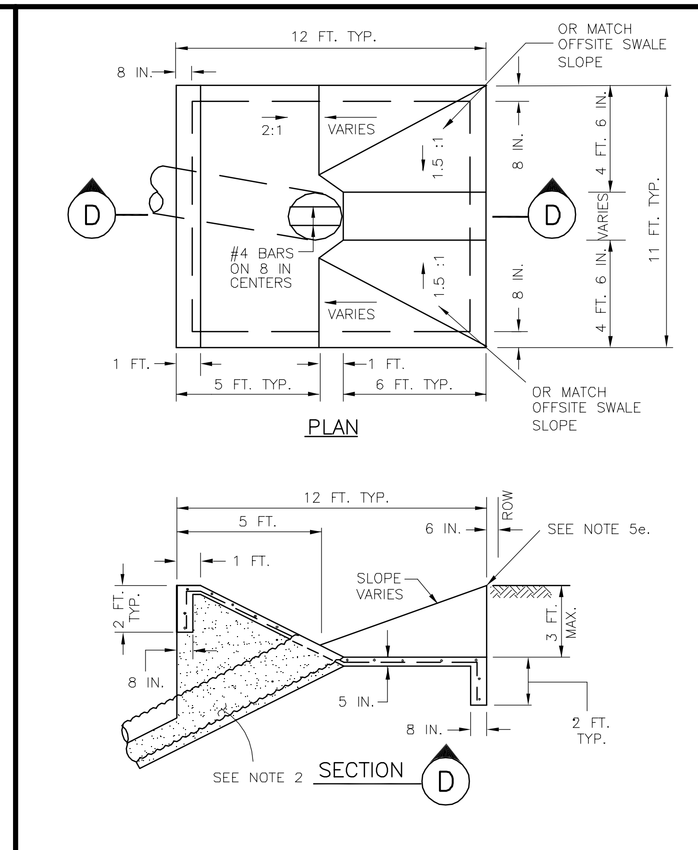
10. Obtain and comply with all applicable City, County, State, and Federal permits and approvals, with assistance from Engineer, if necessary.



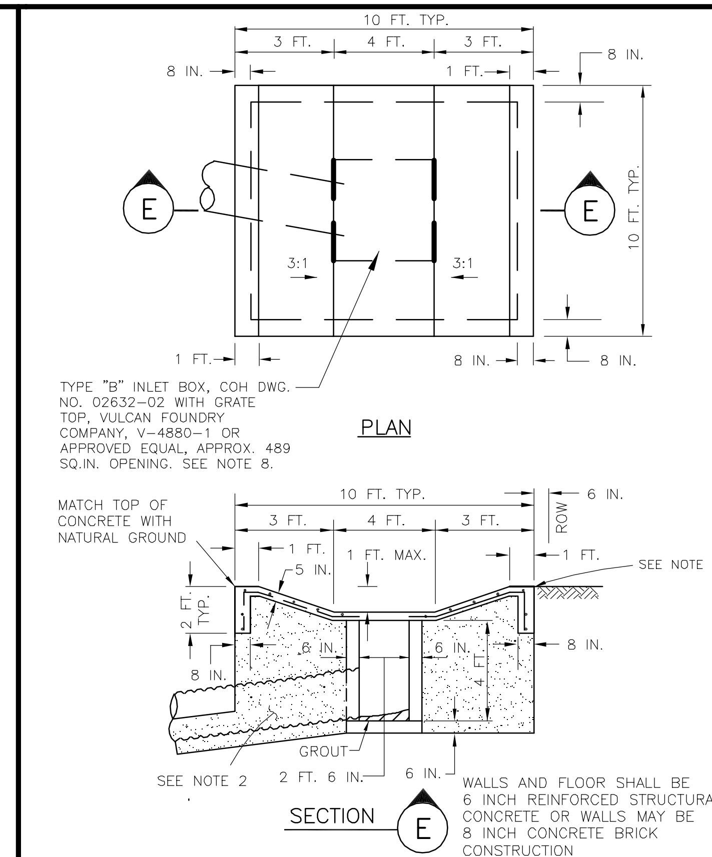
TYPICAL OFFSITE DITCH INTERCEPTOR STRUCTURE
(42 INCH MAX.)



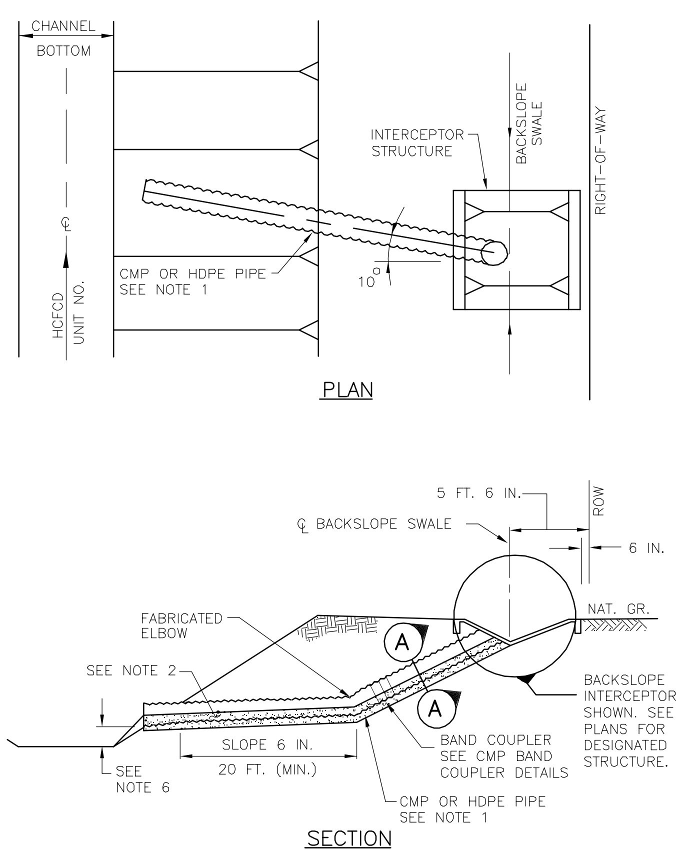
TYPICAL BACKSLOPE INTERCEPTOR STRUCTURE
(24 INCH & 30 INCH ONLY)



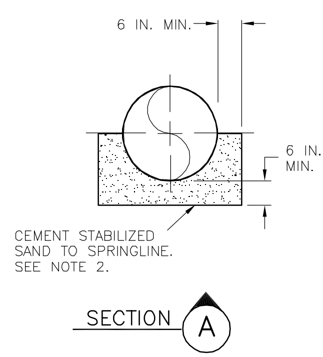
COMBINATION BACKSLOPE AND OFFSITE DITCH INTERCEPTOR
(42 INCH MAX.)



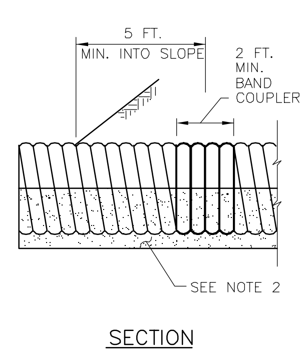
URBAN BACKSLOPE INTERCEPTOR STRUCTURE
(24 INCH ONLY)



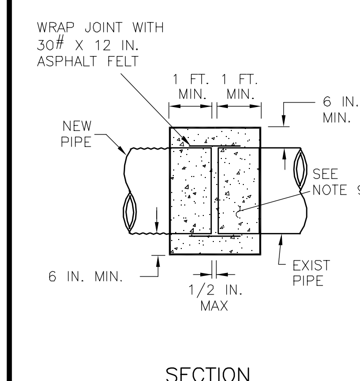
TYPICAL INTERCEPTOR OUTFALL STRUCTURE LAYOUT

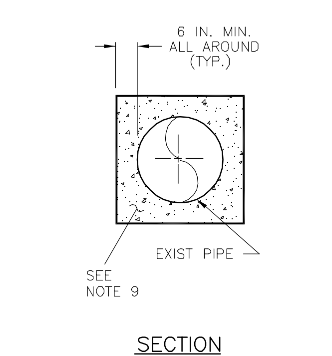


BEDDING FOR CMP

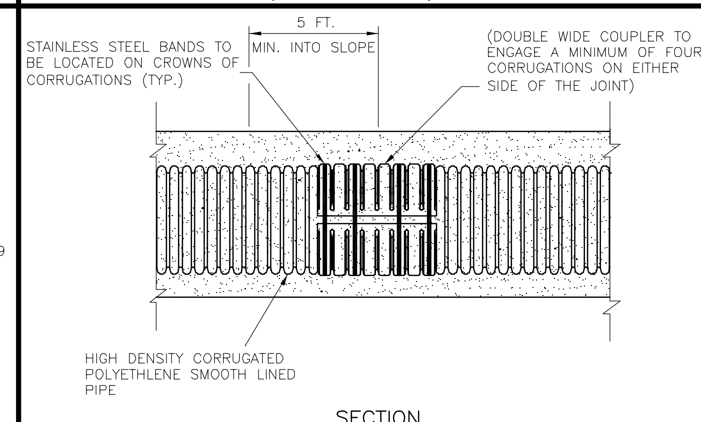


CMP BAND COUPLER DETAIL

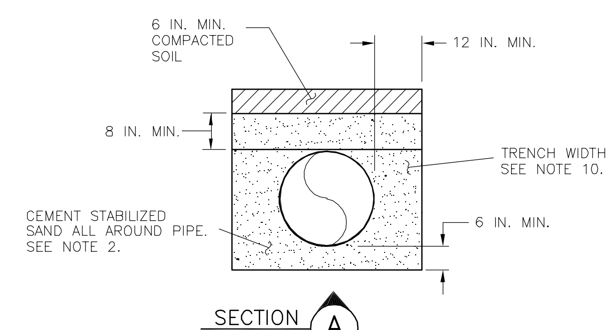




TYPICAL CONCRETE COLLAR DETAIL



HDPE PIPE BAND COUPLER DETAIL



BEDDING FOR HDPE PIPE

INTERCEPTOR STRUCTURE DETAIL NOTES:

1. INTERCEPTOR OUTFALL PIPES WITHIN THE HCFCD RIGHT-OF-WAY SHALL BE CORRUGATED METAL PIPE (CMP) IN ACCORDANCE WITH SPECIFICATION SECTION 02642-CORRUGATED METAL PIPE, HIGH DENSITY POLYETHLENE (HDPE) PIPE IN ACCORDANCE WITH SPECIICATION SECTION 2505-HIGH DENSITY POLYETHYLENE, OR APPROVED EQUAL.
2. PROVIDE AND PLACE CEMENT STABILIZED SAND IN ACCORDANCE WITH SPECIFICATION SECTION 02321-CEMENT STABILIZED SAND.
3. EXCAVATION, FILL AND BACKFILL FOR STORM SEWER OUTFALLS SHALL BE IN ACCORDANCE WITH SPECIFICATION SECTION -02316-STRUCTURAL EXCAVATING AND BACKFILLING.
4. CONCRETE SHALL BE STRUCTURAL CONCRETE IN ACCORDANCE WITH SPECIFICATION SECTION 03310-CONCRETE.
5. INTERCEPTOR STRUCTURES:
   a ADJUST LENGTH AND WIDTH IN FIELD AS NECESSARY.
   b. 2-FEET DEEP X 8-INCH WIDE TOE ALL AROUND THE STRUCTURE.
   c. STEEL REINFORCING-#4 BARS (GRADE 40) AT 12 INCHES ON CENTER EACH WAY.
   d. ANY INTERCEPTOR OUTFALL PIPE LARGER THAN MAXIMUM SIZE INDICATED REQUIRES A SEPARATE DETAIL.
   e. MATCH TOP OF CONCRETE WITH NATURAL GROUND.
6. SET FLOWLINE OF OUTFALL PIPES 1 FOOT ABOVE CHANNEL FLOWLINE OR 1 FOOT ABOVE NORMAL WATER SURFACE ELEVATION.
7. SEE CONCRETE CHANNEL LINING DETAIL SHEET FOR CMP OR HDPE OUTFALL DETAILS TROUGH CONCRETE CHANNEL LINING.
8. CONCRETE PAD AROUND TYPE "B" INLET: PAID FOR AS CONCRETE INTERCEPTOR STRUCTURE PER UNIT PRICE SCHEDULE.
9. BACKSLOPE SWALE AND INTERCEPTOR STRUCTURE ELEVATIONS AND LOCATIONS SHOWN ON THE PLANS ARE APPROXIMATE. FINAL ELEVATIONS AND LOCATIONS SHALL BE FIELD VERIFIED BY THE ENGINEER PRIOR TO INSTALLATION.
10. MINIMUM TRENCH WIDTH SHALL BE NOT LESS THAN THE GREATER OF WIDTH OF THE PIPE OUTSIDE DIAMETER PLUS 16 IN. OR THE PIPE OUTSIDE DIAMETER TIMES 1.25 PLUS 12 IN. (SEE ASTM D2321)

THIS DETAIL SHEET HAS BEEN PREPARED FOR USE ON HCFCD PROJECTS OR PROJECTS TO BE MAINTAINED BY THE HCFCD WHEN COMPLETED BY OTHERS. AN ENGINEER WHO INCORPORATES THE DETAILS ON THIS SHEET BECOMES RESPONSIBLE FOR ITS USE IN THE END PRODUCT IN ACCORDANCE WITH RULE §137.33 (b) AND (c) OF THE TEXAS STATE BOARD OF REGISTRATION FOR PROFESSIONAL ENGINEERS.

P.E. SEAL AND SIGNATURE

REV	DESCRIPTION	DATE	APPR

PROJECT ID#

PROJECT TITLE

INTERCEPTOR STRUCTURE DETAILS

PREPARED:

CHECKED:

APPROVED:

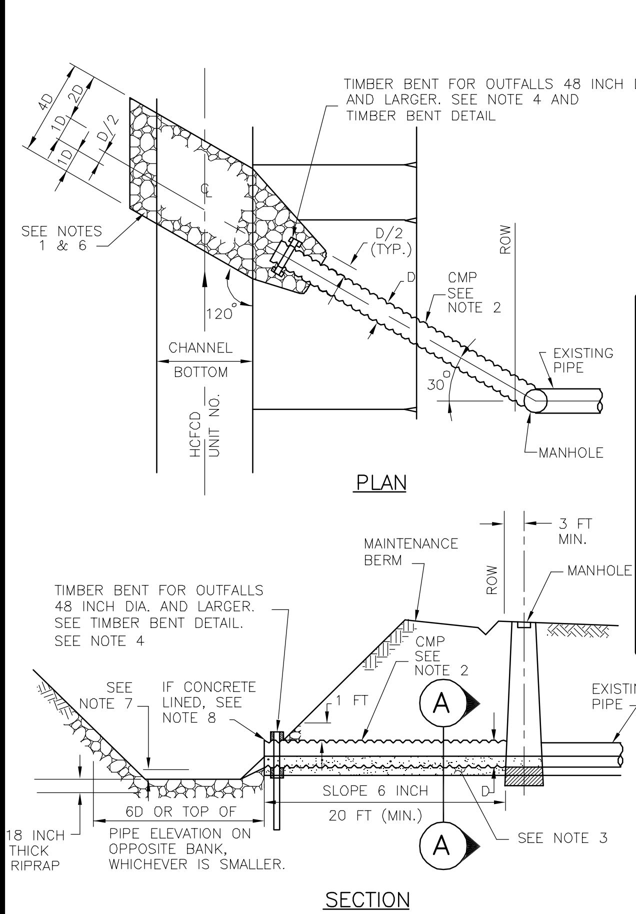
COMPANY INFORMATION AND LOGO GOES HERE

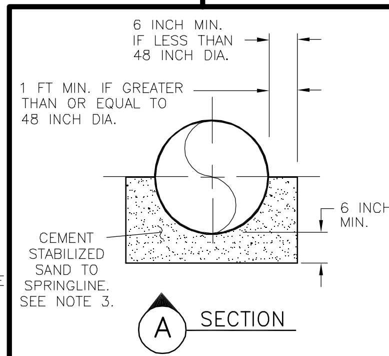
Harris County Flood Control District
9900 Northwest Freeway
Houston, Texas 77092

DATE: 10-5-04
SCALE: NTS

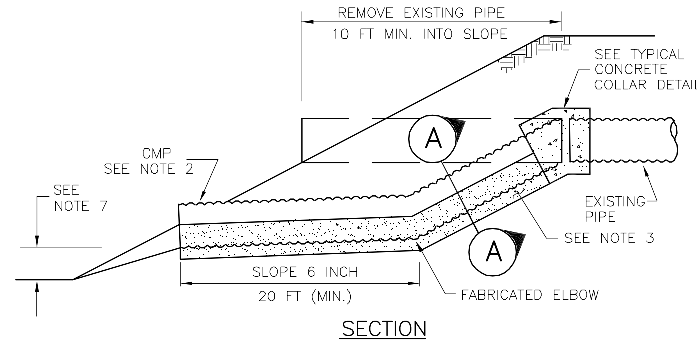
SHEET NUMBER
— OF —

STD\INTERCEPTOR STRUCTURE DETAILS

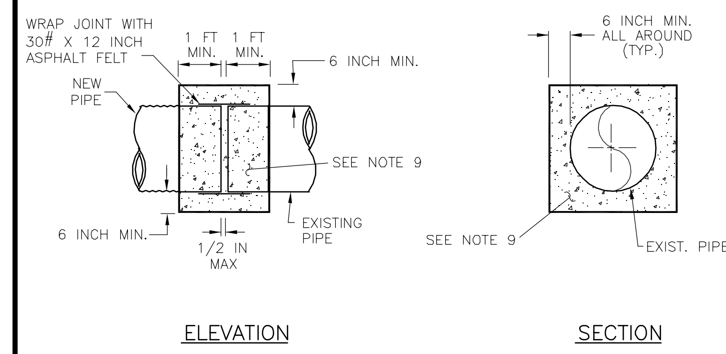




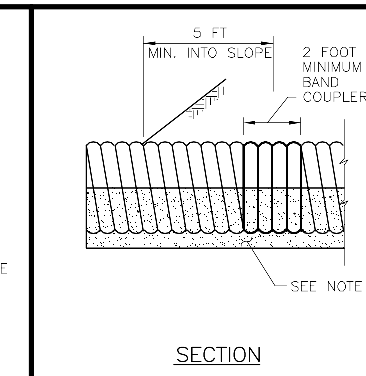
TYPICAL STORM SEWER OUTFALL STRUCTURE LAYOUT



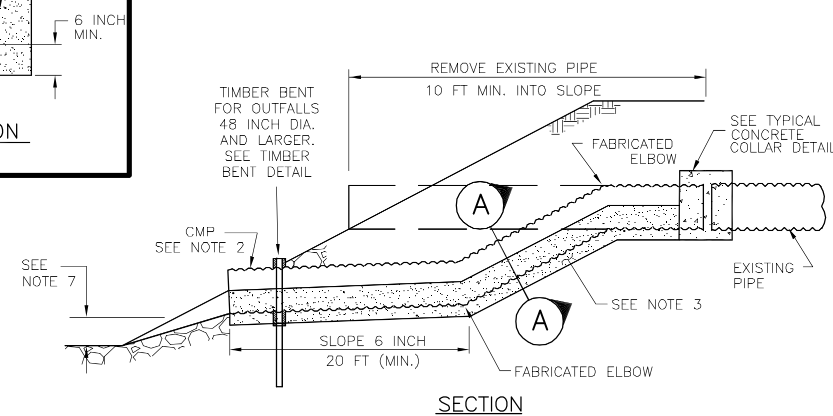
PIPE ADJUSTMENT DETAIL
24–INCH TO 42–INCH DIAMETER



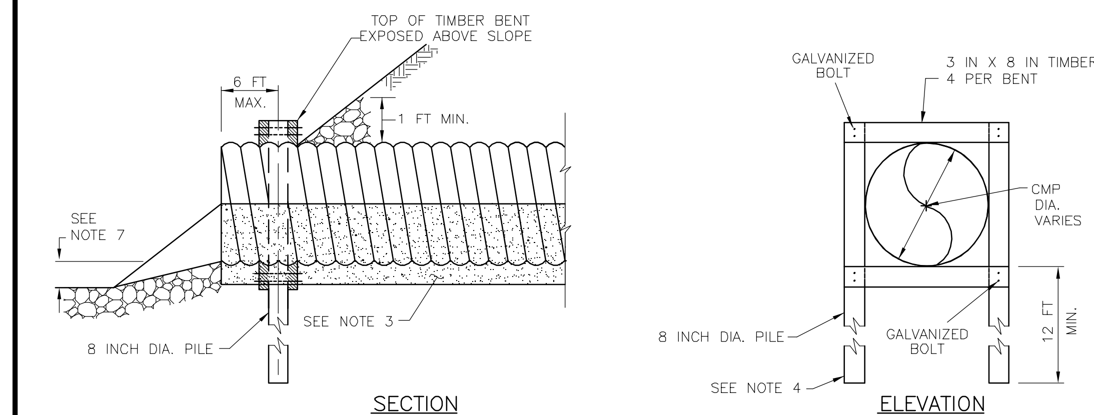
TYPICAL CONCRETE COLLAR DETAIL



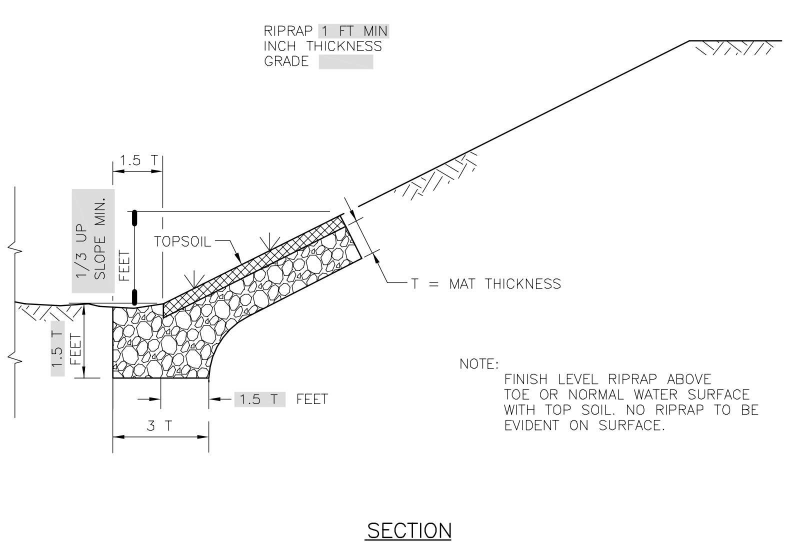
CMP BAND COUPLER DETAIL



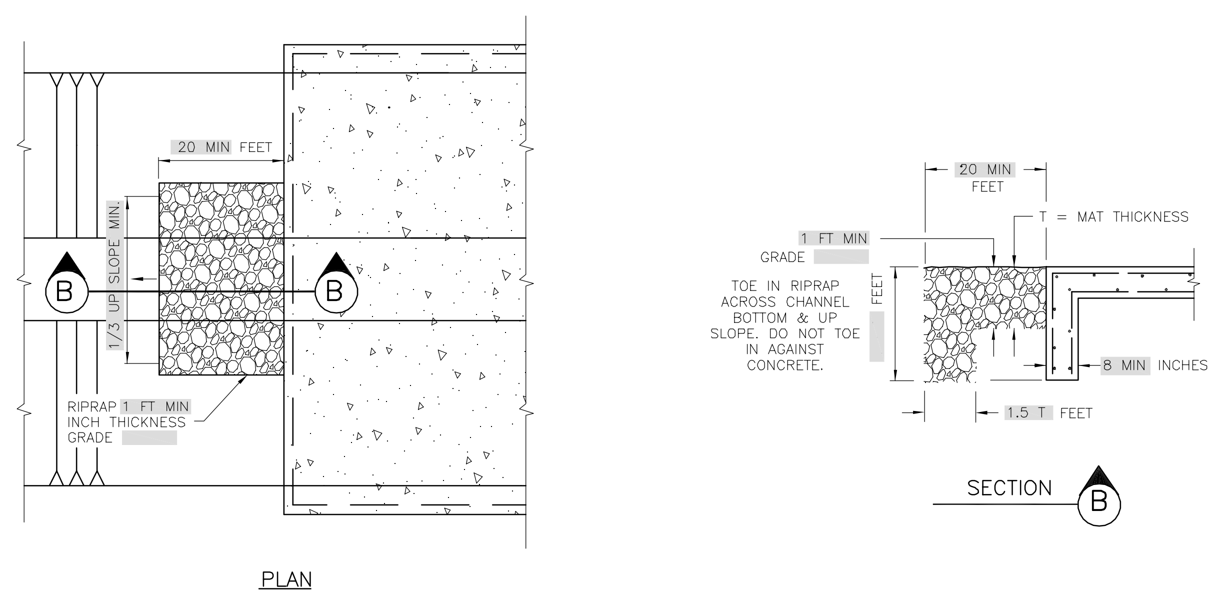
PIPE ADJUSTMENT DETAIL
48–INCH AND LARGER DIAMETER



TIMBER BENT DETAIL
FOR 48–INCH AND LARGER OUTFALLS



TYPICAL RIPRAP LINING–SIDE SLOPE ONLY



TYPICAL RIPRAP AT CHANNEL LINING

STORM SEWER OUTFALL DETAILS

1. INSTALL OUTFALLS 48 INCHES OR LARGER DIAMETER AND TREATMENT PLANT OUTFALLS OF ANY DIAMETER WITH RIPRAP EROSION PROTECTION, DIMENSIONED AS SHOWN IN "TYPICAL STORMSEWER OUTFALL STRUCTURE LAYOUT."
2. STORM SEWER OUTFALL PIPES WITHIN THE HCFCD RIGHT–OF–WAY SHALL BE CORRUGATED METAL PIPE (CMP) IN ACCORDANCE WITH SPECIFICATION SECTION NO. 02642–CORRUGATED METAL PIPE.
3. PROVIDE AND PLACE CEMENT STABILIZED SAND IN ACCORDANCE WITH SPECIFICATION SECTION NO. 02321–CEMENT STABILIZED SAND.
4. TIMBER BENTS SHALL BE IN ACCORDANCE WITH SPECIFICATION SECTION NO. 02464–TIMBER BENTS.
5. EXCAVATION, FILL AND BACKFILL FOR STORM SEWER OUTFALLS SHALL BE IN ACCORDANCE WITH SPECIFICATION SECTION NO. 02316–STRUCTURAL EXCAVATING AND BACKFILLING.
6. RIPRAP SHALL BE IN ACCORDANCE WITH SPECIFICATION SECTION NO. 02378–RIPRAP AND GRANULAR FILL.
7. SET FLOWLINE OF OUTFALLS 1 FOOT ABOVE CHANNEL FLOWLINE OR 1 FT ABOVE NORMAL WATER SURFACE ELEVATION.
8. SEE CONCRETE CHANNEL LINING DETAIL SHEET FOR CMP OUTFALL DETAILS THROUGH CONCRETE CHANNEL LINING.
9. STRUCTURAL CONCRETE WITH FIBERMESH REINFORCEMENT OR #4 BARS (GRADE 40) 12 INCH O.C. EACH WAY.

THIS DETAIL SHEET HAS BEEN PREPARED FOR USE ON HCFCD PROJECTS OR PROJECTS TO BE MAINTAINED BY THE HCFCD WHEN COMPLETED BY OTHERS. AN ENGINEER WHO INCORPORATES THE DETAILS ON THIS SHEET INTO HIS WORK MUST SEAL THIS SHEET AND BECOME RESPONSIBLE FOR ITS USE IN THE END PRODUCT IN ACCORDANCE WITH RULE §131.166 (c) AND (m)1 OF THE TEXAS STATE BOARD OF REGISTRATION FOR PROFESSIONAL ENGINEERS.

P.E. SEAL AND SIGNATURE

REV	DESCRIPTION	DATE	APPR

PROJECT ID#

PROJECT TITLE

STORM SEWER AND RIP RAP DETAILS

PREPARED:

CHECKED:

APPROVED:

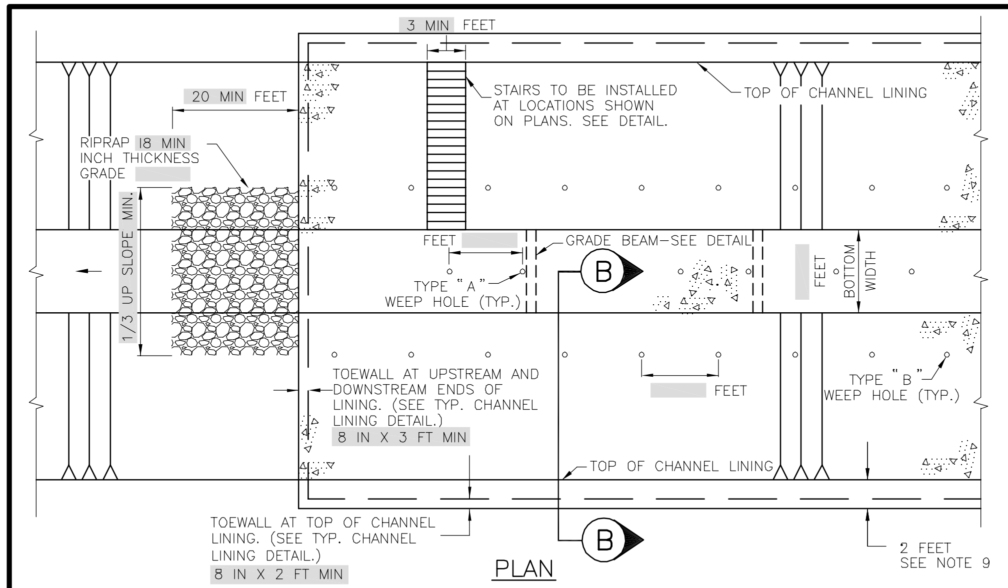
COMPANY INFORMATION AND LOGO GOES HERE

Harris County Flood Control District
9900 Northwest Freeway
Houston, Texas 77092

DATE: 10–5–04
SCALE: NTS

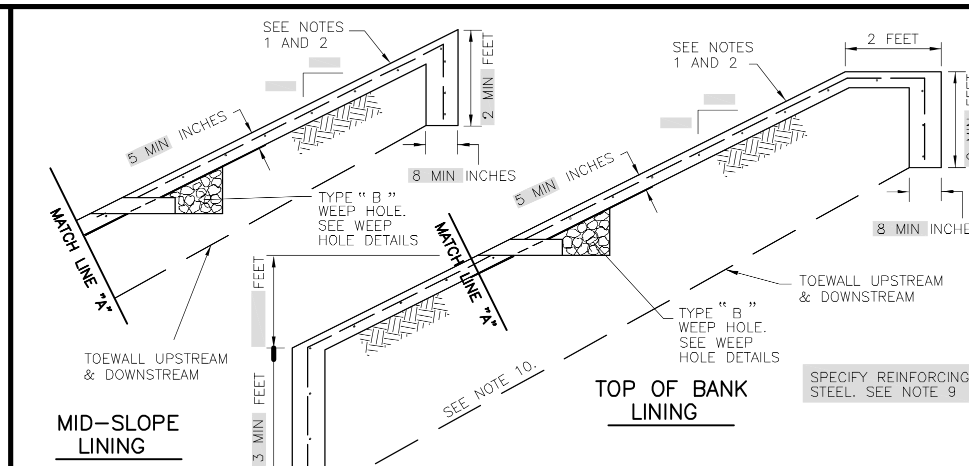
SHEET NUMBER
— OF —

STD\STORM SEWER OUTFALL DETAILS



PLAN

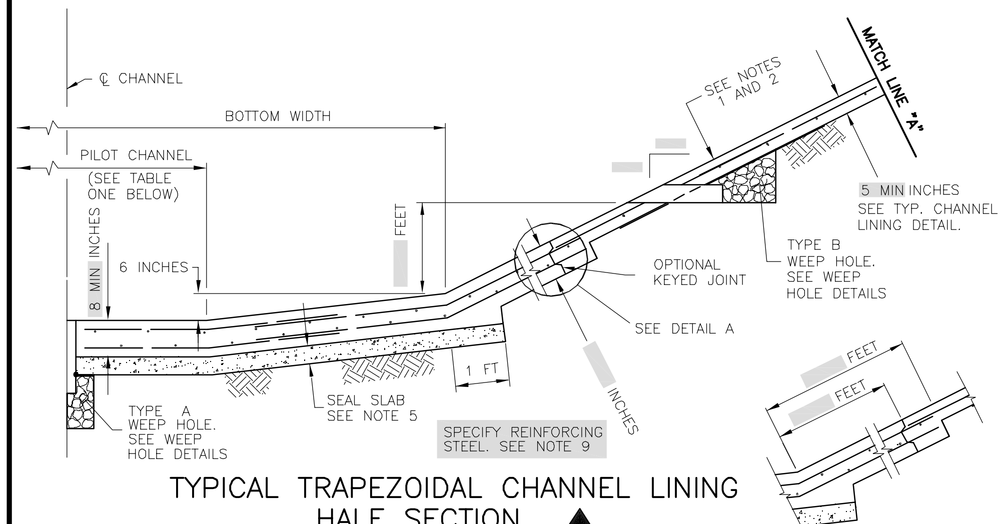
TYPICAL TRAPEZOIDAL CHANNEL LINING



MID-SLOPE LINING

TOP OF BANK LINING

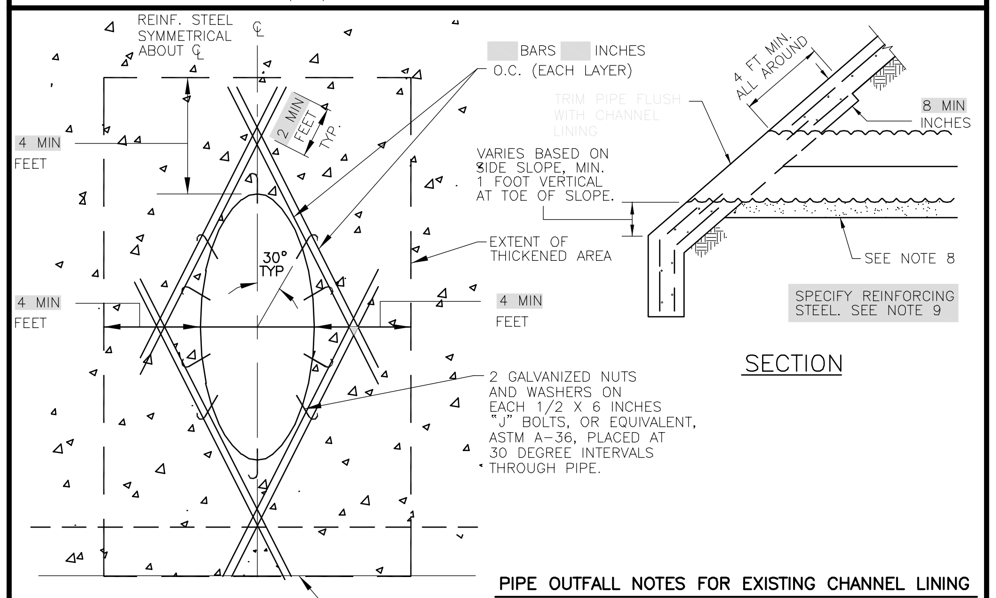
TYPICAL CHANNEL LINING DETAIL



TYPICAL TRAPEZOIDAL CHANNEL LINING HALF SECTION

B

DETAIL A



PLAN

SECTION

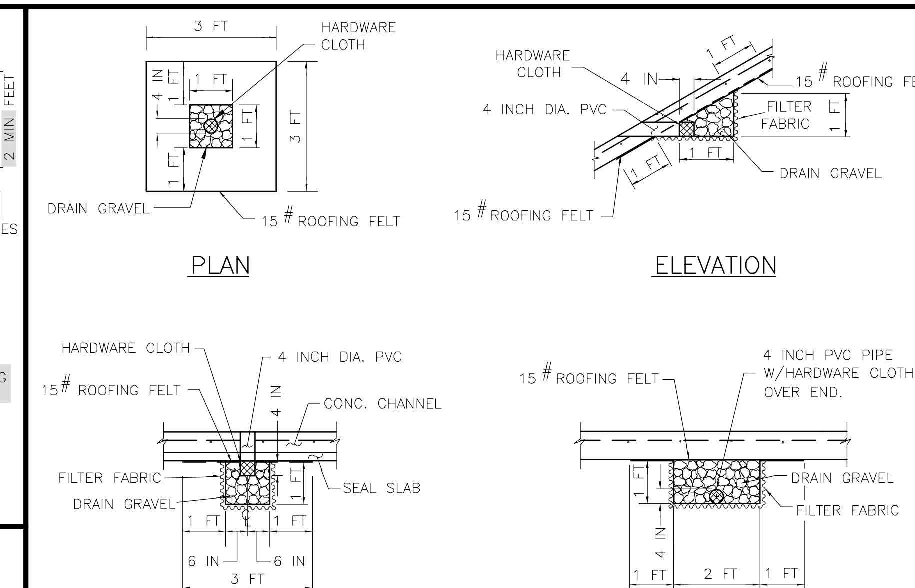
PIPE OUTFALL NOTES FOR EXISTING CHANNEL LINING

1. WHEN PLACING THROUGH EXISTING CHANNEL LINING, SAW-CUT 1 INCH AND REMOVE 4 FEET ALL AROUND.
2. EXPOSE A MIN. OF 18 INCHES OF STEEL.

SPECIFY REINFORCING STEEL. SEE NOTE 9

PIPE OUTFALL DETAILS

(FOR OUTFALLS 24-42 INCH DIA.)



PLAN

ELEVATION

SECTION

TYPE "A" WEEP HOLE

SECTION

TYPE "B" WEEP HOLE

WEEP HOLE NOTES:

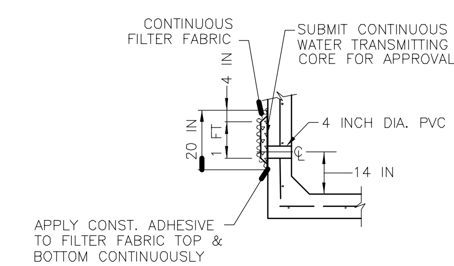
1. MATERIALS:
   a. PIPE: 4 INCH DIA. SCH. 40 PVC
   b. DRAIN GRAVEL:

SIEVE SIZE	% FINER
1 IN	100
3/4 IN	70 – 100
3/8 IN	20 – 90
NO. 4	0 – 60
NO. 8	0

   c. HARDWARE CLOTH: MIN. OPEN 1/8 IN, MAX. OPEN 1/4 IN
   d. FILTER FABRIC:

MIN. AOS	SIEVE NO.	120 MIN
MAX. AOS	SIEVE NO.	50 MAX
WEIGHT	OZ/SY	4 OZ. MIN

2. CUT WEEP HOLE PIPE FLUSH WITH CONCRETE SURFACE.
3. TYPE "A" AND "C" WEEP HOLES FOR LOW FLOW CHANNEL TO BE STAGGERED.



SECTION

TYPE "C" WEEP HOLE

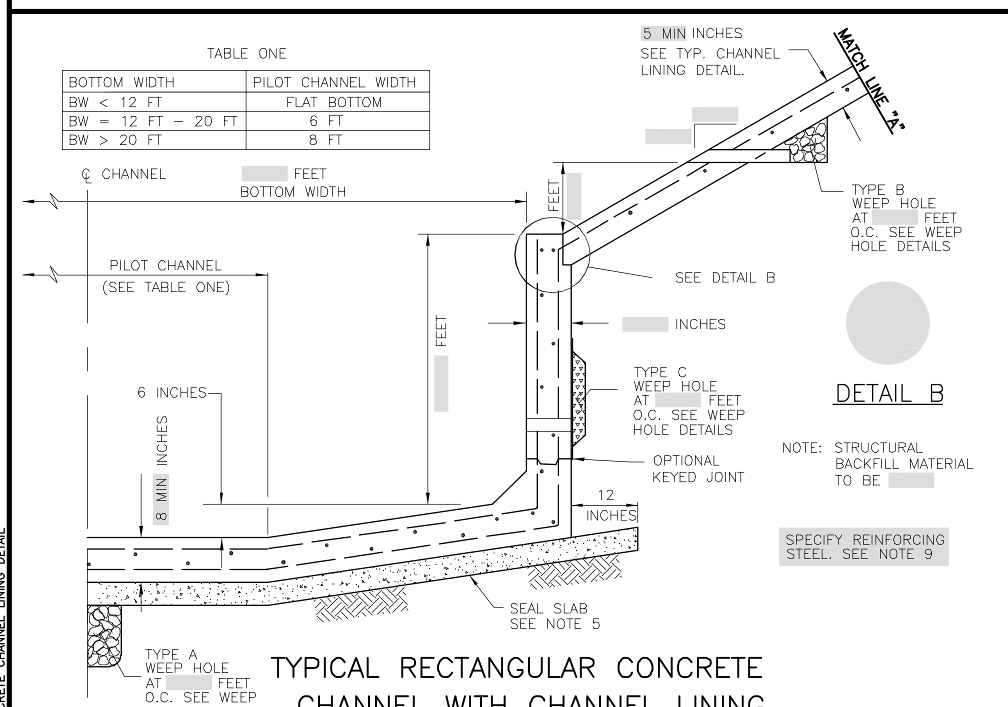
WEEP HOLE DETAILS

GENERAL NOTES:

1. STRUCTURAL CONCRETE FOR CONCRETE CHANNEL LINING AND NONSTRUCTURAL CONCRETE FOR SEAL SLAB SHALL BE IN ACCORDANCE WITH SPECIFICATION SECTION NO. 03310-CONCRETE.
2. REINFORCING STEEL SHALL BE IN ACCORDANCE WITH SPECIFICATION SECTION NO. 03310-CONCRETE.
3. EXCAVATION AND BACKFILL FOR CONCRETE CHANNEL LINING SHALL BE IN ACCORDANCE WITH SPECIFICATION SECTION NO. 02316-STRUCTURAL EXCAVATING AND BACKFILLLING.
4. RIPRAP SHALL BE IN ACCORDANCE WITH SPECIFICATION SECTION NO. 02378-RIPRAP AND GRANULAR FILL.
5. A NON-REINFORCED 4 INCH MINIMUM NONSTRUCTURAL CONCRETE SEAL SLAB WILL BE REQUIRED BENEATH THE BOTTOM OF CONCRETE CHANNELS.
6. STRUCTURAL CONCRETE GRADE BEAMS SHALL BE INSTALLED TRANSVERSLEY AT 20 FOOT MAX. CENTERS ON CONCRETE LINED CHANNELS WITH BOTTOM WIDTHS EQUAL TO OR GREATER THAN 20 FEET.
7. JOINTS:
   A PLACE CONSTRUCTION AND/OR EXPANSION JOINT IN CONCRETE LOW-FLOW AND TRAPEZOIDAL BOTTOM SECTINS AT 20 FOOT MIN., 60 FOOT MAX. SPACING CONTINUOUSLY THROUGH CHANNEL LINING.
   B. PLACE CONTROL JOINT ON SLOPES AT 20 FOOT SPACING.
8. CEMENT STABILIZED SAND SHALL BE PROVIDED AND PLACED IN ACCORDANCE WITH SPECIFICATION SECTION NO. 02321-CEMENT STABILIZED SAND.
9. #4 AT 12 INCH O.C. MINIMUM OR EQUIVALENT WELDED WIRE FABRIC.
10. UPSTREAM AND DOWNSTREAM TOE WALL 3 FOOT MIN. DEPTH AT BOTTOM OF SLOPE AND 8 INCHES THIICK.

TABLE ONE

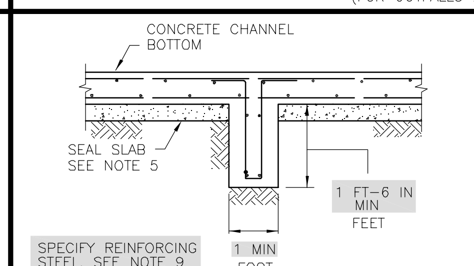
BOTTOM WIDTH	PILOT CHANNEL WIDTH
BW < 12 FT	FLAT BOTTOM
BW = 12 FT – 20 FT	6 FT
BW > 20 FT	8 FT



DETAIL B

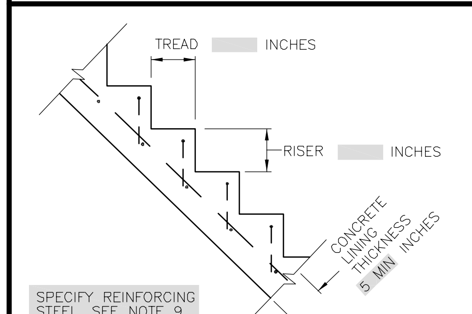
NOTE: STRUCTURAL BACKFILL MATERIAL TO BE

TYPICAL RECTANGULAR CONCRETE CHANNEL WITH CHANNEL LINING HALF SECTION

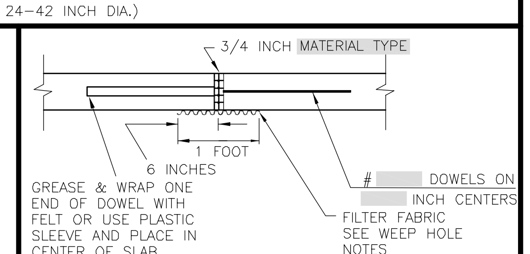


GRADE BEAM DETAIL

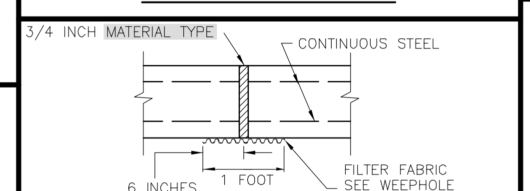
(SEE NOTE 6)



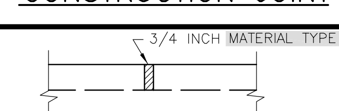
STAIR DETAIL



EXPANSION JOINT



CONSTRUCTION JOINT



HALF JOINT

(SLOPES ONLY)

CONTROL JOINT

THIS DETAIL SHEET HAS BEEN PREPARED FOR USE ON HCFCD PROJECTS OR PROJECTS TO BE MAINTAINED BY THE HCFCD WHEN COMPLETED BY OTHERS. AN ENGINEER WHO INCORPORATES THE DETAILS ON THIS SHEET BECOMES RESPONSIBLE FOR ITS USE IN THE END PRODUCT IN ACCORDANCE WITH RULE §137.33 (b) AND (c) OF THE TEXAS STATE BOARD OF REGISTRATION FOR PROFESSIONAL ENGINEERS.

P.E. SEAL AND SIGNATUARE

REV	DESCRIPTION	DATE	APPR

PROJECT ID#

PROJECT TITLE

CONCRETE CHANNEL LINING DETAILS

PREPARED:

CHECKED:

APPROVED:

COMPANY INFORMATION AND LOGO GOES HERE

Harris County Flood Control District
9900 Northwest Freeway
Houston, Texas 77092

DATE: 10-5-04
SCALE: NTS

SHEET NUMBER
— OF —

STD\CONCRETE CHANNEL LINING DETAIL

Harris County
Flood Control District

GEOTECHNICAL INVESTIGATION GUIDELINES

JANUARY 2004

9900 Northwest Freeway
Houston, Texas 77092
(713) 684-4050

HARRIS COUNTY FLOOD CONTROL DISTRICT
GEOTECHNICAL INVESTIGATION GUIDELINES

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
PART 1 - PURPOSE	1
PART 2 - PRELIMINARY INVESTIGATION	2
2.1 REVIEW OF EXISTING INFORMATION	2
2.1.1 Site Geology	2
2.1.2 Fault Evaluation	2
2.2 VISUAL INSPECTION AND SURVEY OF SITE	2
2.2.1 General Site Characterization	2
2.2.2 Ground Survey	3
2.2.3 Channel Hydraulics	4
PART 3 - FIELD INVESTIGATION	5
3.1 SOIL BORING AND SAMPLING	5
3.1.1 Boring Depth, Spacing, and Ground Water Measurements	5
3.1.2 Sampling Methods and Intervals	6
3.1.3 Relevant Data and Format of Boring Logs and Data Files	6
3.1.4 Location Map and Soil Profile Drawing(s)	6
3.1.5 Environmental Concerns	7
3.1.6 Site Restoration	7
3.2 PIEZOMETERS	7
3.3 GROWTH FAULT INVESTIGATION	8
PART 4 - LABORATORY ANALYSIS	9
4.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS AND STANDARDS	9
4.2 SOIL CHARACTERIZATION	9
4.2.1 Description and Classification of Soils	9
4.2.2 Minimum Series of Tests	10

TABLE OF CONTENTS (cont'd)

		Page
4.3	**LAB TESTING FOR SPECIFIC INVESTIGATIONS**	10
	4.3.1 Determination of Select Fill Properties	10
	4.3.2 Slope Stability/Failure Investigations	10
	4.3.3 Bridge Foundation Design	11
	4.3.4 Retaining Wall Design	11
PART 5 - ENGINEERING ANALYSIS AND RECOMMENDATIONS		12
5.1	**BORROW MATERIAL ANALYSIS**	12
5.2	**SLOPE STABILITY ANALYSIS**	12
	5.2.1 Post-Failure Slope Analysis	13
	5.2.2 Examples of Slope Design and Remediation Alternatives	14
	5.2.2.1 Slope Geometry	14
	5.2.2.2 Retaining Structures	14
	5.2.2.3 Mechanical Stabilization	14
	5.2.2.4 Soil Reinforcement	15
	5.2.2.5 Soil Improvement	15
	5.2.2.6 Geosynthetics	15
	5.2.2.7 Drainage	16
	5.2.2.8 Cost Estimates for Special Systems	16
5.3	**EROSION**	16
	5.3.1 Erosion Evaluation	16
	5.3.2 Design Considerations	16
	5.3.3 Erosion Control Measures	17
5.4	**DRILLED SHAFT AND DRIVEN PILE ANALYSES**	17
5.5	**SEEPAGE AND BOTTOM BLOWUP ANALYSES**	18
5.6	**RETAINING WALL AND LATERAL EARTH PRESSURE ANALYSES**	18

5.7 INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE REQUIREMENTS 19

5.7.1 Inspection Requirements 19

5.7.2 Maintenance Schedules 19

5.8 CONSTRUCTABILITY CONSIDERATIONS 19

PART 6 – CONTENT AND REPORT FORMAT 20

APPENDICES

Sample Piezometer Installation Report

Soils Classification Charts

Boring Log Format Information

GEOTECHNICAL INVESTIGATION GUIDELINES FOR HARRIS COUNTY FLOOD CONTROL DISTRICT HOUSTON, TEXAS

PART 1 - PURPOSE

The purpose of the information in this document is to implement a uniform approach to geotechnical investigations. The intent is not to displace the engineering methods and judgement of the engineer, but rather to define a minimum level of service to be provided and a degree of uniformity in the format of reports.

These standards will assist both the geotechnical engineering community and the District by:

1. Streamlining the review process by clearly outlining the type of information required and the format of the report.
2. Integrating the experience of the District with that of the geotechnical engineer to yield more creative and sound engineering designs.
3. Maintaining consistency in the quality and content of the reports from various consultants.
4. Enabling the District to evaluate the long term performance of particular designs and the assumptions used in the design.
5. Allowing the creation of a soils database that will expand the utility of the geotechnical data for both present and future projects.

Improvements and revisions will be made to this document over time as necessary to clarify or otherwise improve the information herein. Comments from the geotechnical engineering community and other government agencies are encouraged.

PART 2 - PRELIMINARY INVESTIGATION

2.1 REVIEW OF EXISTING INFORMATION

This phase is intended to familiarize the consultant with the previous condition of the site and thus help in better defining the extent of the geotechnical history. All existing and available data related to the site conditions should be gathered and reviewed. This investigation should include the review of reconnaissance reports, previous geotechnical reports, channel construction plans, site maps and related drawings, geological and fault maps of the area, aerial photographs if available, flood and channel flow record data, and other geotechnical reports performed for projects in the vicinity of the current site. Information may be obtained through various federal, state, and local government agencies such as the U.S. Geological Survey, Soil Conservation Service, Texas Department of Transportation, and local universities. The District has several reference items including aerial photos, USGS maps, and SCS Soils Survey maps. These items may be utilized at the HCFCD office but may not be taken off the District premises.

2.1.1 Site Geology

The site geology description should address parameters of significance to the design, construction or restoration required at the site. Soil formations, soft or unsuitable soils, unusual conditions that are geologically known to exist in the area of the site should be described. Although general knowledge and personal experience may be included, the geological description should focus on researched data related to the project.

2.1.2 Fault Evaluation

If a fault is determined to impact the project, the location, width, dip, and strike of the fault(s) should be provided. More importantly, an evaluation of the impact of fault movement on the site structures or the flow conditions is to be included. Information based on general knowledge of the regional fault mapping and distribution may be included, but the focus should be on specific problems related to the project.

2.2 VISUAL INSPECTION AND SURVEY OF THE SITE

2.2.1 General Site Characterization

For channels and basins, the consultant should conduct a site inspection to become familiar with the existing conditions. The dimensions of the channel cross section should be measured or obtained from the District. Existing structures in the immediate vicinity of the site should be geographically located vis-a-vis the channel banks to determine their potential impact on any failed zone and to assess potential damage to their integrity due to loss of soil. The density, distribution, and type of vegetation should be noted. These parameters can define the adequacy of a system for protecting the channel from erosion and can also be used to determine the allowable velocity in the channel. Other erosion control systems, such as concrete channel lining, articulated concrete blocks, rip rap cover or geosynthetic products should be identified and examined. The zone of interest should be clearly assessed and its extent should be defined. In the case of a slope failure, a precise description of the failed zone can aid in determining the failure mechanism. Photographs of the failed area are beneficial to understanding the mode of failure. The specific mode of slope failures should be identified. Surface cracks commonly known as tension cracks should be identified. If erosion is present, the erosion characteristics should be noted and the severity of the damage should be evaluated.

For bridges, the site characterization should include an examination of existing bridges for signs of settlement, horizontal displacement, other evidence of movement, or soil loss from beneath foundations.

Prior to entering the site area, it will be the responsibility of the consultant to assure that the HCFCD has arranged for right-of-entry to the site. It will be important that no personnel entry to the site and no drilling/sampling operations be scheduled prior to the HCFCD's obtaining right-of-entry to the site area. It will be the responsibility of the consultant to adequately locate any cables, buried pipelines, or other utilities at the site and to conduct the field investigation so that any site cables, pipelines, and utilities are not damaged. The consultant shall notify the HCFCD at least 48 hours prior to the start of the field work so that a HCFCD representative can accompany the field crew during the field investigation.

2.2.2 Ground Survey

Survey information will be provided by the HCFCD if available. Otherwise, the consultant will be responsible for arranging survey services pertaining to the geotechnical investigation. If no survey is available, the borings should be located as a measured distance from at least two recoverable objects such as fence corners, utility poles, etc. Surveyed cross sections may be required for slope stability analysis. The Geotechnical engineer or consultant should discuss any special survey requirements with the HCFCD.

After the completion of the field work, the consultant shall stake the borings so that the borings can be located by a surveyor or HCFCD personnel. The stakes at the boring locations should extend at least three feet above the ground surface. Survey flagging should be tied to the stakes and the stakes marked with the boring number.

2.2.3 Channel Hydraulics

Channel geometry, slope and special conditions that might impact channel velocity should be indicated. Such conditions could be channel widening, abrupt change in channel slope, or sharp curves which can induce excessive erosion at localized points of the channel.

PART 3 - FIELD INVESTIGATION

3.1 SOIL BORING AND SAMPLING

The location and number of soil borings are typically determined as a joint effort by the consultant and the HCFCD. Generally, the drilling equipment and sampling methods are left to the discretion of the consultant. The presentation format of the data in the report and in electronic database form must adhere to HCFCD standards.

3.1.1 Boring Depth, Spacing, and Ground Water Measurements

Soil boring and sampling should be conducted in order to obtain sufficient information about the subsurface soil stratigraphy and ground water conditions. Borings should be strategically located in the immediate vicinity of the area of interest and away from any existing underlying or overhead utility lines. The number of borings should be selected to optimize the data relative to the site conditions in the area of interest. Borings drilled for channels should be drilled at a maximum spacing of 500 to 750 feet. A minimum five borings should be drilled for the first five acres of a detention pond site and an additional boring should be drilled for each additional five acres for detention basin sites. A minimum of two borings should be drilled for bridges.

The borings should extend to a depth that will adequately define the substrata soil variations and determine the water bearing layers. As a minimum, the borings should extend to a depth equal to 1.5 times the ultimate depth of the channel or basin. If the channel or basin is located adjacent to another existing channel or basin, the boring depths for borings drilled adjacent to the existing drainage facility should be governed by the deeper channel or basin. For roadway bridges, the borings should extend at least 70 feet below the existing or proposed channel or basin bottom. For pedestrian bridges, the borings should extend at least 40 feet below the existing or proposed channel or basin bottom. Boring depths should be increased by the consultant if unusual soil conditions are detected at the site. Borings drilled for bridges should not be terminated in a sand layer, but should be extended until clay is encountered.

The depth at which ground water is encountered during drilling shall be measured and recorded. Upon the completion of drilling, the boring shall be covered in order to minimize the flow of surface into the boring. About 24 hours after the boring has been drilled, the depth to ground water in the boring and the depth to which the boring is open shall be measured and recorded.

3.1.2 Sampling Methods and Intervals

Undisturbed samples should be recovered in cohesive soils using Shelby Tube samplers. For granular soils Standard Penetration Split-Barrel samplers should be used instead. The sequence of sampling should be continuous at least for the upper 20 feet of the boring, to the depth of the failed zone, or to the depth of the channel and intermittent at 5 ft. intervals thereafter. If layer interfaces are to be accurately determined, the sampling frequency can be increased. Similarly, if unusual conditions are encountered, the sampling should be continuous to define the extent of the anomalous layer. All drilling and sampling should comply with the appropriate ASTM standard method.

Special sampling procedures, such as excavating test pits or test trenches, should be incorporated into the field program if deemed necessary by the consultant and should be included in the scope of work. Test pits or test trenches are useful for locating the slope failure plane and for extracting soil samples from various locations within the slope. It may be necessary to use specialized drilling equipment such as portable rigs and swamp buggy rigs in some areas, especially for drilling through steep slopes.

3.1.3 Relevant Data and Format of Boring Logs and Data Files

Geographical locations and depths of borings, time, weather conditions, and methods of drilling should be reported. The elevation of the borings should be shown on the boring logs relative to either the survey datum or to the top bank. Northing coordinates (y coordinates) and easting coordinates (x coordinates) should be shown on the boring logs when provided by the surveyor. For granular materials, blow counts for the SPT samples should be recorded. For cohesive soils, Pocket Penetrometer readings should be taken at the site from undisturbed Shelby Tube samples. Soil descriptions should be based on visual inspection of the samples and the requirements of ASTM D2488. Soil descriptions should include texture of the materials, color, and inclusions such as nodules, stains, organic materials, etc. Layer variations should be recorded when applicable.

The consultant should record the water bearing layers, the depth to ground water during drilling, the depth to ground water about 24 hours after the completion of drilling, and the depth of the open borehole about 24 hours after the completion of drilling. Piezometric water level readings should be presented in tabular form with their corresponding reading dates. Any unusual situation such as perched water tables should be reported and seasonal ground water fluctuations should be accounted for.

3.1.4 Location Map and Soil Profile Drawing(s)

A boring location map and soil profile drawing(s) must be included in the report. The location map should be on sheets no larger than 11" X 17" and can be constructed from a variety of sources such as Baca maps, ground surveys, and USGS Quad maps. The boring map should clearly show landmarks such as cross streets, outfall channels, or any other permanent feature that can be used to describe the location. Each boring must have reference points or ties so that the exact location of the boring can be recovered. The ties can be a distance to two or more permanent objects or x-y coordinates with a recoverable reference point.

The soil profile drawing(s) should show the subsurface soil and ground water conditions along a line of borings for the full depth of the borings. A sufficient number of soil profile drawings shall be provided by the consultant so that a reasonable representation of the subsurface soil and ground water conditions at the site is presented based on the borings drilled.

3.1.5 Environmental Concerns

During sampling activities, soil and water samples from borings and/or piezometers located in areas that have the potential of being contaminated should be checked for volatile organics and hydrocarbons. If contaminated materials are encountered at the site, termination or changes in field activities are left to the discretion of the consultant. The consultant is responsible for adhering to all pertinent federal, state, and local regulations and laws.

3.1.6 Site Restoration

It is the responsibility of the consultant to clean up the site upon completion. In the case of borings through pavements, similar or equivalent materials should be used to restore the site. Backfilling of borings or sealing off piezometers should be conducted by using non-shrink grout placed with a tremie pipe. Backfilling with natural soils is acceptable if materials are not contaminated and methods are in agreement with regulations regarding ground water protection.

3.2 PIEZOMETERS

When required, piezometers should be installed in order to determine water levels and repeated measurements should be taken. Readings should be taken three times within a period of one month. The piezometer should consist of a 3 inch PVC pipe, installed in an oversized diameter borehole. A PVC screen should be placed to allow water level measurements. Select sand should be used to plug the annulus to 3 feet above the measured water level. A plug should be placed on top of the sand using bentonite pellets. A typical piezometer installation report is included in the Appendix.

3.3 GROWTH FAULT INVESTIGATION

Based on the fault evaluation in the preliminary investigation phase, a field study may be necessary if a fault is determined to have an adverse effect on the project. If evidence of a problematic growth fault is encountered at the site, the fault can be located by geophysical borings, seismic reflection measurements or/and elevation surveys. The location and width of the fault zone, strike, and dip of the fault should be determined. Prediction of the movement of the fault should be formulated and the impact of fault activity on channel flow should be assessed.

PART 4 - LABORATORY ANALYSIS

4.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS AND STANDARDS

The purpose of the laboratory analysis is to define the soil classification, soil stratigraphy, and the relevant engineering properties of the soils. Tests should be conducted and combined with geologic information to classify the soils and determine the stratification. The selection of appropriate laboratory tests beyond the minimum series of tests (outlined below) is typically left to the discretion of the consultant. However, the laboratory testing plan should be discussed with the HCFCD prior to the field phase in order to verify the scope of the investigation.

Laboratory tests should be conducted in substantial accordance with the corresponding ASTM standards. Other standards should be defined and referenced. For soil description, only ASTM classification nomenclature is acceptable. The ASTM standard soil designation is given in the Appendix. Boring logs should bear all relevant standard data for classification purposes and be submitted in the format shown in the Appendix. All soil data from the boring logs, field tests, and lab tests shall be submitted in a database format approved by the HCFCD on a 3 ½ inch diskette or a compact disk. This database must be compatible with input files used by “gINT” LogWriter software.

4.2 SOIL CHARACTERIZATION

4.2.1 Description and Classification of Soils

The physical description of the soil layers should include texture, color and any noticeable inclusions. The subsurface stratification should be clearly defined and soils should be classified according to the appropriate ASTM standards and to laboratory classification tests. **WHEREVER A SOIL SAMPLE OR SOIL TYPE IS REFERENCED IN THE REPORT (BORING LOGS, LAB TEST RESULTS, ETC.) THE GROUP NAME AND SYMBOL ARE TO BE PROVIDED IN STRICT ACCORDANCE WITH THE FLOW CHART IN ASTM D2487.** The HCFCD requires that the boring log soil descriptions be in the order of the ASTM classification and group symbol [e.g. Fat Clay (CH)], followed by the consistency [e.g. stiff, very stiff, loose, etc], followed by a descriptor for plasticity [e.g. slight plasticity, highly plastic, etc], followed by the color, followed by a description of the moisture conditions. An example of boring log soil descriptions required by the HCFCD is provided on the boring log in the Appendix. The consistency of cohesive soils shall be described as very soft, soft, firm, stiff, very stiff, or hard. The consistency of cohesionless soils including silts shall be described as very loose, loose, medium dense, dense, and very dense. Soil descriptions should also be shown on soil profiles taken through the boring locations so as to represent the site subsurface soil conditions.

4.2.2 Minimum Series of Tests

Relevant soil parameters should be given for every layer. These parameters include strength data, classification test results, and moisture content. For cohesive soils, Atterberg limits, dry density, and minus 200 sieve tests should all be performed on the sample within each distinct layer. For granular soils, minus 200 sieve tests should be conducted. Engineering properties such as shear strength can be estimated using pocket penetrometer and/or torvane tests for cohesive soils and SPT blow counts for granular soils. A combination of Crumb, Pinhole, and Double Hydrometer tests should be performed in order to determine the presence of dispersive soils at the site.

4.3 LAB TESTING FOR SPECIFIC INVESTIGATIONS

Certain types of investigations will require additional laboratory analysis beyond the minimum series of tests. Typical HCFCD investigations are select fill evaluation, slope stability/failure investigations, bridge foundation design, and retaining walls. All specialized laboratory data should be presented in graphs or in charts on separate forms.

4.3.1 Determination of Select Fill Properties

Consultants may be asked to perform a geotechnical investigation to determine properties of soils at potential borrow sites for use as select fill material. The borrow material may be used in a variety of typical HCFCD maintenance projects such as erosion repairs, slope failure repairs, and structural fill. **Because the soil will be excavated and recompacted at another location, shear strength tests should be done using remolded samples rather than undisturbed samples.**

4.3.2 Slope Stability/Failure Investigations

For slope stability analyses, unconsolidated undrained and consolidated undrained triaxial tests with pore pressure measurements should be conducted to evaluate shear strength properties. Stress-Strain curves should be included especially for the case of post failure analyses. Because soil strength in channels tend to naturally decrease over time and the fact that slope repair projects typically consist of recompacted soils, the residual shear strength of the soil in slope failure areas should be determined. Residual shear strength should be used to analyze slope stability for soils that are susceptible to strength loss with time as a result of shrinkage/swelling due to moisture content variations and the plasticity characteristics of the soil, or for soils that are susceptible to progressive slope failures.

4.3.3 Bridge Foundation Design

For the design of bridge foundations, the consultant will be required to conduct unconsolidated undrained triaxial tests in order to determine shear strengths used to define the drilled shaft or driven pile shaft friction and end bearing capacities. In addition, if cohesionless soils occur at the bridge foundation areas, the consultant shall determine the percentage of soil that passes the No, 50 sieve so that a hydraulic engineer can estimate scour around the bridge foundations.

4.3.4 Retaining Wall Design

The design of retaining walls requires the determination of short term and long term lateral earth pressures. In order to develop the input parameters for the short and long term lateral earth pressure analyses, the consultant shall perform consolidated undrained triaxial tests with pore pressure measurements.

PART 5 - ENGINEERING ANALYSIS AND RECOMMENDATIONS

The goal of the engineering analysis is to provide the HCFCD with enough detailed information to guide the design of the project. This information should be an interpretation of the field and laboratory data applied to the purpose of the project. Design information may include the results of slope stability analyses, erosion analyses, drilled shaft or piling analyses, shallow foundation analyses, ground water mitigation evaluations, earth pressure distribution analyses, retaining wall analyses, and general soil suitability evaluations. In many cases, the consultant will be required to propose several design alternatives with a specific design recommendation. The alternatives should be compared on the basis of cost, constructability, and design life. Constraints on the design will be given by the HCFCD, although the consultant should attempt to identify additional constraints. The recommendation should be accompanied by a detailed design drawing showing the configuration, dimensions, quantities, and type of material to be used.

The sections below provide requirements for seven common types of geotechnical engineering projects: borrow material analyses, slope stability/failure analyses, erosion analyses, drilled shaft and driven pile analyses, retaining wall analyses, seepage and excavation bottom blowup analyses, evaluations of requirements for inspection and maintenance, and constructability evaluations.

5.1 BORROW MATERIAL ANALYSIS

The consultant’s engineering analysis of potential borrow material should address each of the following questions:

1. Does the soil meet the current HCFCD fill specification?
2. What types of applications is the fill best suited for?
3. What applications is the fill least suitable for?
4. Does the soil meet TxDOT fill specifications?

Borrow material analysis should consider typical HCFCD applications such as erosion repair, slope failure repair, and use as topsoil. Classification tests, dispersive tests and permeability tests needed in identifying the dispersive nature of the soils as a select fill should be thoroughly investigated. Also, the sensitivity of the soil to loss of shear strength in a disturbed condition should be considered. Recommendations for the suitability of the materials for uses such as those described above should be made relative to soil strength, shrinkage cracking, and erodability.

5.2 SLOPE STABILITY ANALYSIS

Methods selected by the consultant for the slope stability analyses should be noted in the report. All relevant assumptions and limitations should be clearly mentioned.

Input parameters such as cohesion, angle of internal friction, etc. should also be presented and explained as to the source of each parameter. Unless otherwise approved by the HCFCD, the consultant shall be required to determine analysis input parameters from laboratory tests conducted on soil samples obtained from on site borings or test pits/trenches. If such data are not available, the consultant may make engineering assumptions based on properties of similar soils and similar case histories or from literature research. An allowable factor of safety should be defined for the adopted method. The configuration of other parameters such as critical ground water elevations is left to the discretion of the consultant. The HCFCD requires that slope stability analyses be performed for short term, rapid drawdown, and long term conditions. The HCFCD's criteria for safety factors against slope failures are 1.3 for the short term (end of construction) condition, 1.25 for the rapid drawdown condition, and 1.5 for the long term condition.

5.2.1 Post-Failure Slope Analysis

The purpose of the post-failure analysis is to determine the soil strengths, ground water levels, and external conditions that caused the slope failure. This information is then used to model the proposed repair. The cross section of the slope prior to failure should be used in the model. The configuration of the prior cross section can be estimated from adjacent cross sections, previous construction plans, etc. The variables in the model should be adjusted until the model produces a critical failure plane matching the failure plane observed in the field. The following questions should be addressed in the analysis:

1. What caused the slope failure? Was it due to a natural decrease in soil strength or an external event such as a water main break or erosion of the channel?
2. What is the failure mode for the existing failure? Is it rotational, shallow sloughing, a wedge failure, etc.?
3. What is the location of the failure plane?
4. Does the failure plane in the post-failure model match the actual location of the failure plane?
5. Do the model's back calculated soil strength parameters match the laboratory results?
6. Does the proposed repair address and mitigate all factors that caused the original failure?
7. What is the steepest slope that is stable without structural reinforcement?

Repairs of the failed zone should be planned and conducted carefully so no further failures are induced. Materials at the site should be considered for use if they are suitable. Remedial techniques such as load reduction, soil improvement, the use of geosynthetic products, retaining structures, and anchors should be considered. A stability analysis should be performed on the proposed design in order to ensure an adequate factor of safety.

5.2.2 Examples of Slope Design and Remediation Alternatives

Below is a list of options and design criteria the consultant should consider. However, the design alternatives that may be presented in the report are not limited to those below. The list is intended only as a guide for determining possible repair alternatives. The consultant should determine which alternatives are feasible and include only those in the report. The consultant should discuss possible repair alternatives with the HCFCD prior to performing the analysis.

5.2.2.1 Slope Geometry

Slope flattening and slope benching are possible geometrical enhancements to a slope to improve its safety factor. The consultant should present calculations to assess the extent of the improvement obtained by adopting the methods mentioned in this section.

5.2.2.2 Retaining Structures

Typical retaining structures can be cantilever or gravity walls, driven pile walls, tied back walls, and drilled-in-place concrete shaft walls. The consultant should justify the use of the retaining structure and define the type of structure for the particular application. For all methods, the consultant should provide the estimated earth pressure distribution acting against the structure and address the global stability against overturning. Sliding at the toe of a retaining wall should be addressed . For drilled shafts, the spacing, diameter, and depth of the shafts should be specified. For tied back walls, the post tensioning force, diameter, angle of inclination, and length of the anchors should be provided. The type of grouting technique and the allowable level of corrosion should be indicated. The length of the anchors should extend beyond the surface of the potential failure. Long term load capacity of the anchors should be discussed, especially if soft cohesive materials are present.

5.2.2.3 Mechanical Stabilization

Counterberms can be used to increase the resisting forces. Dimensions and locations of the counterberms should be indicated. Stability against sliding due to the weight increase and the impact of such structures on channel flow should be evaluated. If shear keys are used to improve sliding resistance, trenching recommendations should be provided. Mechanical stabilization can also be conducted by using backfill materials with metallic strips, or a geosynthetic geogrid for load transfer purposes. In addition to the evaluation of the stability against sliding and/or overturning, the consultant should evaluate the internal stability of the system.

5.2.2.4 Soil Reinforcement

Soil nailing methods such as metal rods driven in the ground or placement of grout in predrilled holes can be used as slope reinforcement. The consultant should evaluate the resistance of the rods against tensile stresses, shear stresses, and bending moments due to potential slope movements. Design parameters such as length, size, and spacing should be indicated. The analysis should also consider the internal and external stability of the system for the assumed potential surface failure.

5.2.2.5 Soil Improvement

Earth material properties can be improved by replacing existing materials or by adding materials to improve shear resistance properties. Materials such as concrete rubble, limestone riprap, concrete channel lining, articulated concrete blocks, gabion mattresses, and geosynthetic systems have been used in HCFCD channels. The consultant should justify the use of these materials based on design requirements, availability, and cost considerations. Soil hardening techniques should be used mostly when slopes show signs of deterioration or potential failures. When cement is used to stabilize soil materials, soil-cement ratios should be indicated and compaction levels specified. Subsurface drainage should be included in the design since the pervious properties of natural materials are generally reduced with cement additives. If jet grouting is used, the sequence of grouting, the number of holes and pressure of grouting should be specified and should be based on the knowledge of the slip surface. Pore pressure build up should be considered when grouting. If lime columns are used to increase cohesive soil strength properties, the shear strength of the stabilized soils should be computed and the lime volumes and the spacing of the columns should be provided based on the potential failure surfaces and the existing soils.

5.2.2.6 Geosynthetics

Geosynthetic systems can be used to reinforce slopes, especially after failure has occurred. The consultant should specify the soil parameters, compaction levels, the type of geosynthetic products, the length and thickness of the layers, anchoring system, and the geometry of the slope. General stability considerations should be addressed as specified in the previous methods.

5.2.2.7 Drainage

Proper drainage of natural or stabilized cuts is important in order to reduce the destabilizing effect of the hydrostatic forces and the seepage forces. Furthermore, proper drainage will reduce erosion and piping. Surface drainage should consider site specific parameters such as subsurface soils, vegetation, geometry of the ground surface (i.e., steepness of the slope being drained) and rainfall intensity. Subsurface drainage should be considered by the consultant especially for non-natural slopes and should be intended to improve the factor of safety against failure by decreasing the hydrostatic forces. Drainage blankets, horizontal drains, and cut-off drains are among the techniques that could be used. Design of such drains should be conducted based on the knowledge of the subsurface water conditions. Filter fabric should be used to avoid clogging of the drains and subsequent deterioration of their long term performance. Construction details and spacing of the drains should be indicated by the consultant.

5.2.2.8 Cost Estimates for Special Systems

For special systems such as geosynthetics, retaining structures, etc. the consultant should provide a cost estimate based on current values of materials and their quantities.

5.3 EROSION ANALYSIS

5.3.1 Erosion Evaluation

The type of erosion and origins of the erosion should be defined. Examples of erosion include toe erosion from channel flow, rilling or gullying from overbank flow, piping, and sapping due to ground water flow.

5.3.2 Design Considerations

The consultant will be provided the estimated channel flow velocities. The consultant should provide a general indication of the soil's susceptibility to erosion by channel flow, ground water flow, rainfall, or runoff by using these flow velocities and the existing soil conditions and ground water conditions as defined by the consultant. The dispersive nature of the earth materials existing on the banks and the bottom of the channel should be defined.

5.3.3 Erosion Control Measures

Vegetation can be used as a natural cover for soil erosion protection. Mats, blankets, or soil confinement systems can also be used to support the growth of the vegetation or directly as erosion control systems. Recommendations for soil preparation should take into account the system manufacturer's design specifications. Surface protection measures such as riprap, concrete channel lining, articulated concrete blocks, gabion mattresses, and shotcrete can be used to prevent infiltration by rainfall or erosion by flow of fluids. The consultant should provide conceptual design recommendations concerning the type of erosion protection system that will be most appropriate for the given site conditions.

For the special case of utility, tunnel or underground structures crossing channels, additional protective systems need to be adopted to avoid potential scouring around the structures. If cut-off walls are adopted, the consultant should provide the depth, the width and the location of the wall.

5.4 DRILLED SHAFT AND DRIVEN PILE ANALYSES

For drilled shaft and driven pile analyses, the consultant is required to perform axial bearing capacity, lateral load-deflection, settlement, and scour analyses. Depending upon the needs of the designer, the consultant may be required to provide design diagrams showing:

- drilled shaft depth versus allowable unit accumulative skin friction,
- drilled shaft depth versus allowable total accumulative skin friction,
- drilled shaft depth versus allowable unit end bearing,
- drilled shaft depth versus allowable total end bearing,
- drilled shaft depth versus allowable total accumulative combined skin friction and end bearing,
- drilled shaft depth versus allowable unit shaft friction for tension (uplift) loads,
- drilled shaft lateral deflection versus lateral load, and
- drilled shaft bending moments and shear stresses with depth for assumed lateral/axial loads.

The consultant will be required to provide estimates of local scour ("pier scour") around drilled shaft and driven pile foundations and present recommendations for scour protection.

Drilled shaft and driven pile analyses should take into consideration the influence of group effect, settlement, negative skin friction, and the effect of soil shrink-swell potential on the load carrying capability of the drilled shafts and piles. The analyses should also take into consideration the presence of existing foundations and the influence of existing foundations on the load carrying capability of the drilled shafts and driven piles.
Any expected difficulties that may be encountered during the drilled shaft or driven pile installation should be determined and monitoring requirements defined for the drilled shaft and driven pile installation.

5.5 SEEPAGE AND BOTTOM BLOWUP ANALYSES

Depending upon the project requirements, the consultant may be required to analyze the capability of a wet pond to retain water and recommend measures that may be used to minimize excess seepage losses. The seepage analyses should define the estimated seepage losses as a result of the infiltration of the wet pool water through the pool side slope and bottom soils. The consultant may be required to provide recommendations for any needed treatment of the wet pool soils to assure retention of the pool waters.

The consultant should analyze the potential for bottom blowup at basin or wet pool bottoms as a result of the presence of a high ground water table. If the analysis of bottom stability and/or potential bottom blowup indicates that an unstable bottom will occur during construction, the consultant should provide recommended measures needed to adequately control ground water during construction operations and any needed treatments required to provide for stable working surfaces during construction.

5.6 RETAINING WALL AND LATERAL EARTH PRESSURE ANALYSES

Retaining wall analyses should include analyses to determine the local and global stability of the retaining walls, the allowable bearing pressure at the base of the retaining walls, the retaining wall settlement, sliding of the retaining walls, and overturning of the retaining walls. An earth pressure distribution diagram for both short term and long term conditions should be provided as part of the retaining wall analyses, and/or the consultant should provide design input parameters including active earth pressure coefficients, passive earth pressure coefficients, coefficients for earth pressure at rest, the dry unit weight, wet unit weight, and submerged unit weight of the soil adjacent to the retaining wall, and equivalent fluid unit weights. The consultant shall perform bearing capacity and lateral earth pressure analyses for reinforced concrete box culverts and headwalls. Provide recommended allowable bearing pressures for use in the design of the box culverts and headwalls. Provide design input parameters as described above for retaining walls and a lateral earth pressure diagram or diagrams to be used by the designer in the design of the walls of the box culverts and headwalls.

5.7 INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE REQUIREMENTS

5.7.1 Inspection Requirements

If the project will require a structured inspection routine, the consultant should provide a recommended inspection program based on the nature of the project, on the potential or expected problems during construction, or long term behavior of the earth structure. If specialized equipment is required, the application, installation methods, locations, and data to be collected should be specified. An inspection schedule covering construction and post-construction phases of the project should be provided by the consultant. Technical data records should be provided to check design assumptions and readjust maintenance schedules. Recommendations for piezometric level readings should be specified to check subsurface drainage performance.

5.7.2 Maintenance Schedules

Recommended maintenance schedules should be submitted for structures or systems requiring periodic maintenance. The goal of a maintenance program is to prolong the life of a system and thus lower long term costs.

5.8 CONSTRUCTABILITY CONSIDERATIONS

The consultant should address potential problem that may occur during construction. Such problems could be related to unstable soils that are not capable of supporting construction equipment, detention basin and wet pool bottom stability and blowup, slope stability during excavation, ground water inflow, soil compaction, soil improvement or slope repair, especially in the case of heavy equipment operating near excavation areas during construction. The consultant should identify appropriate construction equipment and techniques required by the consultant's proposed design.

PART 6 - CONTENT AND FORMAT OF REPORT

The geotechnical report should be in substantial accordance with the following format presented in a Table of Contents format.

Transmittal letter with P.E. stamp and approval signatures.

EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

INTRODUCTION
Name of department and person authorizing the report
Date of authorization
Brief background information about the project

PURPOSE & SCOPE OF WORK
Description of the work to be done in the report
Reiteration of scope of work
Description of the proposed facilities including length, depth, width, acreage, and other detailed descriptions

SITE EXPLORATION
Physical description of area
Geology
Faults

FIELD WORK
Soil borings and sampling
Piezometer installation
Environmental issues

LABORATORY TESTING
Tests performed
Table of results
Basis for selection of soil parameters for analysis purposes
Interpretation of lab results

DESCRIPTION OF SUBSURFACE SOIL AND GROUND WATER CONDITIONS
Description of soil stratigraphy
Description of ground water conditions
Description of soil properties for each soil layer and source of the properties

ENGINEERING ANALYSIS
Description of engineering methods & assumptions
Borrow material analysis
Slope stability analysis
Post-failure analysis
Discussion of repair alternatives
Erosion analysis
Drilled shaft and driven pile analyses
Seepage and bottom blowup analyses
Retaining wall analyses
Inspection and maintenance requirements
Constructability considerations
Interpretation of engineering results

SUMMARY AND RECOMMENDATIONS
General summary of investigation
Recommendations for design
Recommendations for control of ground water
Constructability considerations
Rough estimate of cost and material quantities

APPENDICES
Site Map
Boring Location Map
Fault Map (if applicable)
Lab Test Results
Boring Logs in gINT Format
Soil Profile Drawing(s) Showing Soil and Ground Water Conditions
Engineering Data
Slope Stability Computer Output
Hand Calculations
Construction Details
3 ½ Inch Diskette or Compact Disk Containing Boring Logs

All drawings shall be at a convenient scale (i.e. at a scale available on a standard engineer scale). All boring logs must be in gINT format

The consultant is required to submit three copies of a formal draft report for review and three copies of a formal final report incorporating review comments**.** The draft report and the final report must be sealed by a professional engineer licensed in the state of Texas.

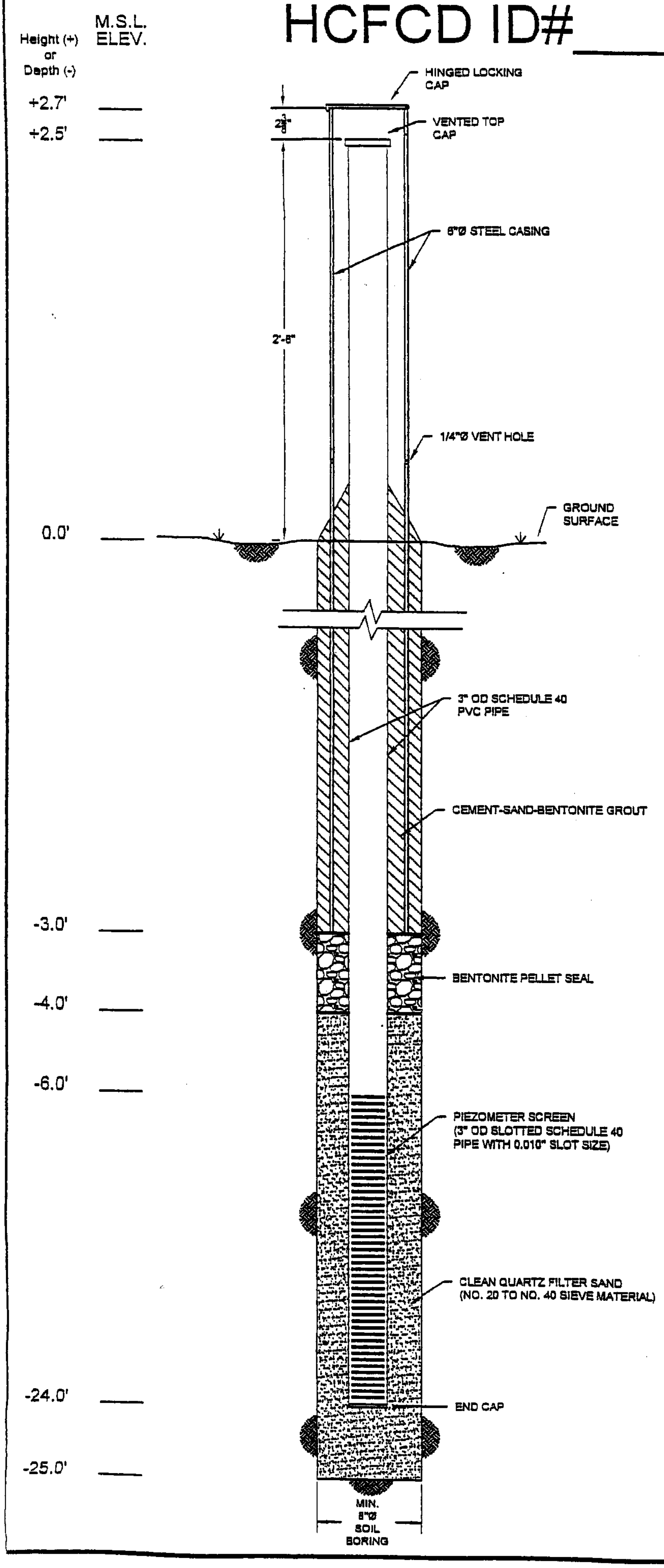
The preliminary draft report may be spiral bound and the final report should be submitted with one copy in a white 3-ring binder labeled on the front and spine and two copies that are spiral bound**.** The final report shall also be submitted in its entirety on a compact disk. The final report will incorporate responses to the HCFCD's review comments on your draft submittal and should be provided to the HCFCD within two weeks after your receipt of the HCFCD's comments.

On each Friday during the progress of the work, the consultant must provide a weekly progress report to the HCFCD in order to assure timely completion of the project and to provide timely feedback to the HCFCD project manager. The weekly progress report may be e-mailed or faxed to the HCFCD. The weekly progress reports should be entitled "Weekly Progress Report, Week Ending …, Geotec Investigation for HCFCD Project ID#..............". The weekly progress reports are a part of each project and should be issued by the licensed professional engineer in charge of the project. The weekly progress reports are to be submitted for the duration of the project until the consultant has received the completion letter for the project.

APPENDIX

PIEZOMETER INSTALLATION DIAGRAM

HCFCD ID# ______________________



Installation and Development Details

Piezometer No.: ______________________

Location: ______________________

Installation Date: ______________________

Drilling Method:

- Dry Auger ☐
- Wet Rotary ☐

Development Date: ______________________

Development Method: ______________________

Water Level Data	Depth below grade, ft.	Elevation
During Drilling	________	________
After Installation	________	________
Before Development	________	________
After Development	________	________
Before Development	________	________
After Development	________	________
	________	________
	________	________
	________	________
	________	________

Harris County Flood Control District

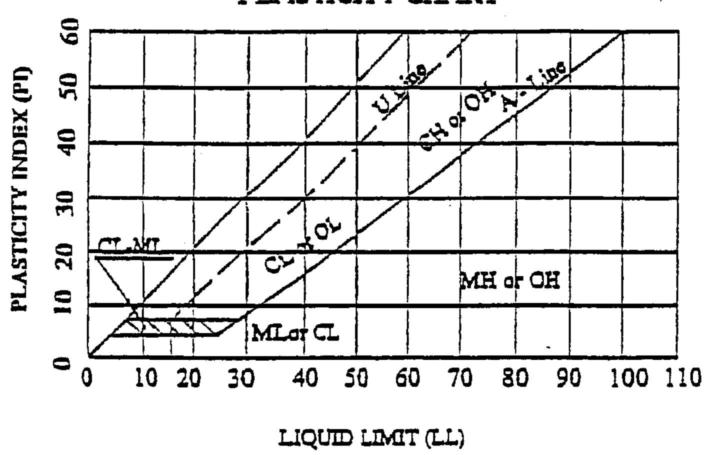
CLASSIFICATION OF SOILS FOR ENGINEERING PURPOSES

ASTM Designation D-2487

MAJOR DIVISIONS				GROUP SYMBOL	TYPICAL NAMES
COARSE-GRAINED SOILS (Less than 50% passes No. 200 sieve)	GRAVELS (Less than 50% of coarse fraction passes No. 4 sieve)	CLEAN GRAVELS (less than 5% passes No. 200 sieve)		GW	Well-graded gravel, well-graded gravel with sand
				GP	Poorly ~~graded gravel~~, poorly graded gravel with sand
		GRAVELS WITH FINES More tan 12% passes No. 200 sieve)	Limits plot below "A" line & hatched zone on plasticity chart	GM	Silty gravel, silty gravel with sand
			Limits plot above "A" line & hatched zone on plasticity chart	GC	Clayey gravel, clayey gravel with sand.
	SANDS (50% or more of coarse fraction passes No. 4 sieve)	CLEAN SANDS (less than 5% passes No. 200 sieve)		SW	Well-graded sand, well-graded sand with gravel
				SP	Poorly graded sand, poorly graded sand with gravel
		SANDS WITH FINES More than 12% passes No. 200 sieve)	Limits plot below "A" line & hatched zone on plasticity chart	SM	Silty sand, silty sand with gravel
			Limits plot above "A" line & hatched zone on plasticity chart	SC	Clayey sand, clayey sand with gravel
FINE-GRAINED SOILS (50% or more passes No. 200 sieve)		SILTS AND CLAYS (Liquid Limit Less Than 50%)		ML	Silt, silt with sand, silt with gravel, sandy silt, gravelly silt
				CL	Lean clay, lean clay with sand, lean clay with gravel, sandy lean clay, gravelly lean clay
				OL	Organic clay, organic clay with sand, sandy organic clay, organic silt, sandy organic silt
		SILTS AND CLAYS (Liquid Limit 50% or More)		MH	Elastic silt, elastic silt with sand, sandy elastic silt, gravelly elastic silt
				CH	Fat clay, fat clay with sand fat clay with gravel, sandy fat clay, gravelly fat clay
				OH	Organic clay, organic clay with sand, sandy organic clay organic silt, sandy organic silt

NOTE: Coarse soils with between 5% & 12% passing the No. 200 sieve and fine grained soils with limits plotting in the hatched zone of the plasticity chart are to have dual symbols.

PLASTICITY CHART



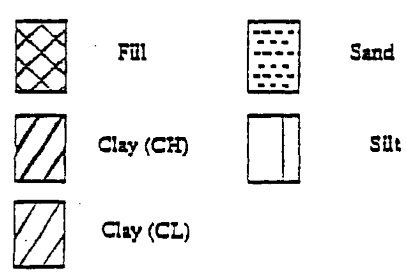
Equation of A-Line Horizontal at PI=4 to LL=25.5, then PI=0.73(LL-20)

Equation of U-Line: Vertical at LL=16 to PI=7, then PI=0.9(LL-8)

DEGREE OF PLASTICITY OF COHESIVE SOILS

Degree of Plasticity	Plasticity Index
None	0 - 4
Slight	5 - 10
Medium	11 - 20
High	21 - 40
Very High	> 40

SOIL SYMBOLS



TERMS USED ON BORING LOGS

SOIL GRAIN SIZE

U.S. STANDARD SIEVE

	6"	3"	3/4"	#4	#10	#40	#200	
BOULDERS	COBBLES	GRAVEL		SAND			SILT	CLAY
		COARSE	FINE	COARSE	MEDIUM	FINE		
	152	76.2	19.1	4.76	2.00	0.420	0.074	0.002

SOIL GRAIN SIZE IN MILLIMETERS

STRENGTH OF COHESIVE SOILS

Consistency	Undrained Shear Strength, Kips per Sq. ft
Very Soft	less than 0.25
Soft	0.25 to 0.50
Firm	0.50 to 1.00
Stiff	1.00 to 2.00
Very Stiff	2.00 to 4.00
Hard	greater than 4.00

RELATIVE DENSITY OF COHESIONLESS SOILS FROM STANDARD PENETRATION TEST

Very Loose	< 4 bpf
Loose	5-10 bpf
Medium Dense	11-30 bpf
Dense	31-50 bpf
Very Dense	>50 bpf

(bpf = blow per foot, ASTM D 1586)

SPLIT-BARREL SAMPLER DRIVING RECORD

Blows per Foot	Description
25	25 blows driving sampler 12 inches, after initial 6 inches of seating.
50/7"	50 blows driving sampler 7 inches, after initial 6 inches of seating.
Ref/3"	50 blows driving sampler 3 inches during initial 6-inch seating interval.

Note: To avoid change to sampling tools, driving is limited to 50 blows during or after seating interval.

DRY STRENGTH ASTM D2488

None	Dry Specimen crumbles into powder with mere pressure of handling
Low	Dry specimen crumbles into powder with some finger pressure
Medium	Dry specimen breaks into pieces or crumbles with considerable pressure
High	Dry specimen cannot be broken with finger pressure, it can be broken between thumb and hard surface
Very High	Dry Specimen cannot be broken between the thumb and hard surface

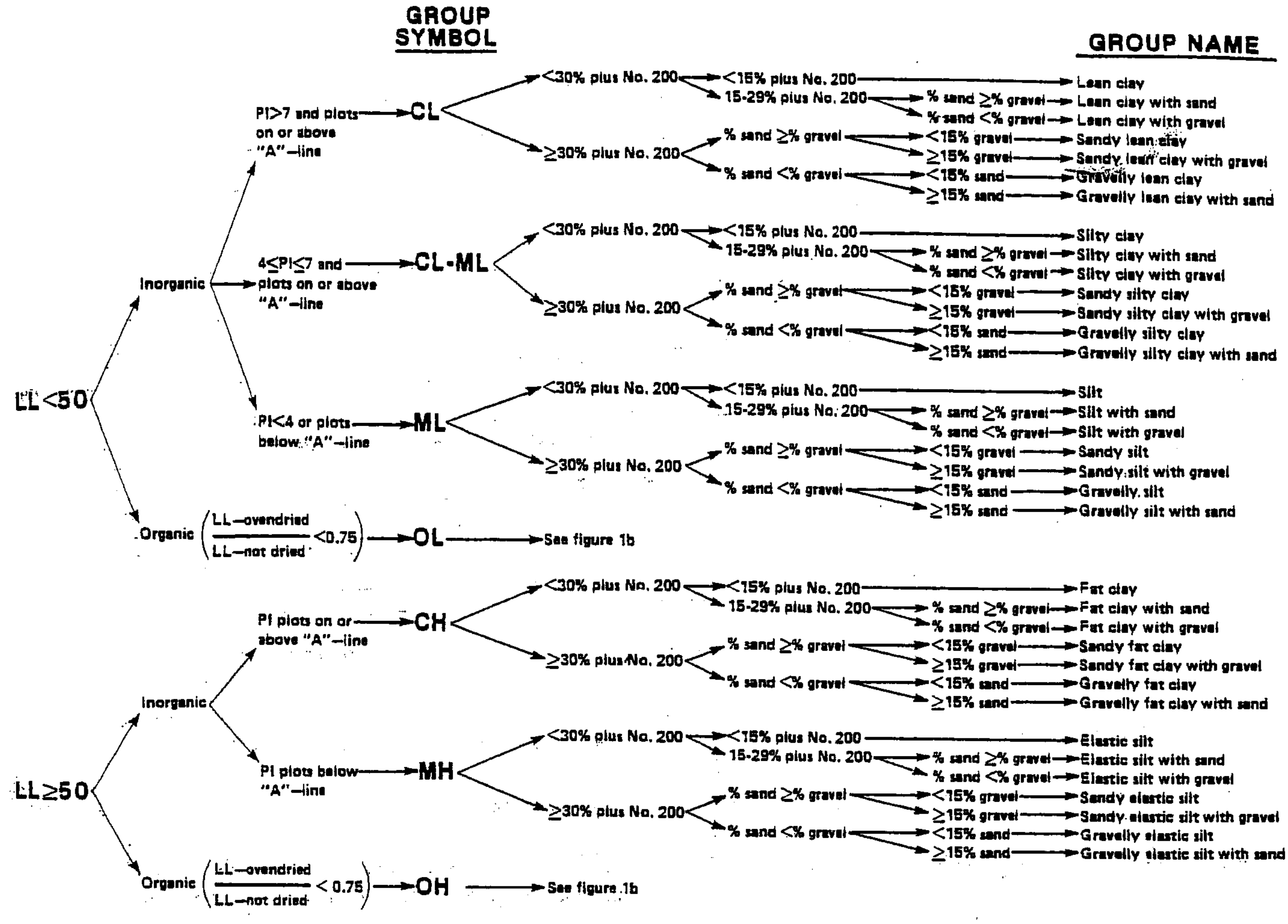
MOISTURE CONDITION ASTM D2488

Dry	Absence of moisture, dusty, dry to the touch
Moist	Damp but no visible water
Wet	Visible free water

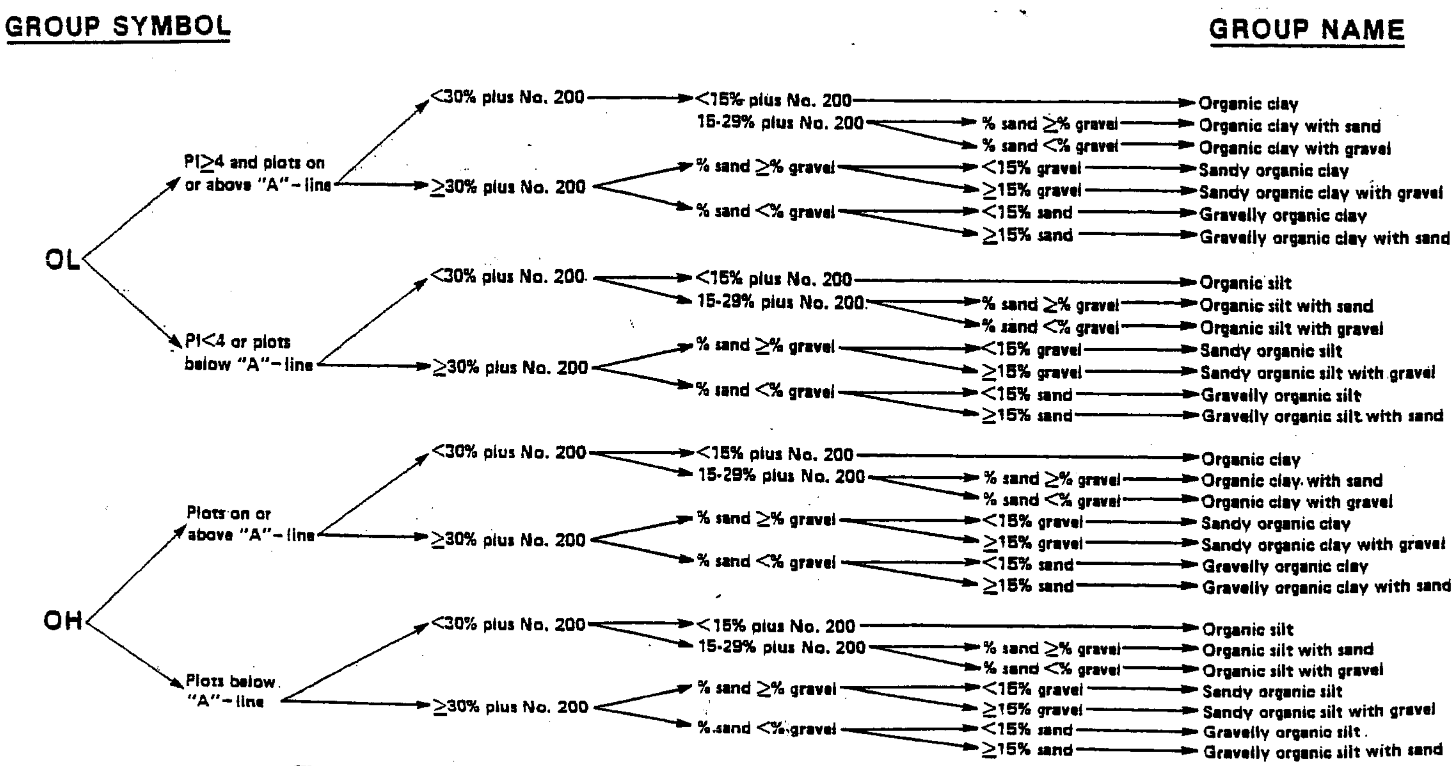
SOIL STRUCTURE

Slickensided	Having planes of weakness that appear slick and glossy. The degree of slickensidedness depends upon the spacing of slickensides and the easiness of breaking along these planes.
Fissured	Containing shrinkage or relief cracks, often filled with fine sand or silt; usually more or less vertical.
Pocket	Inclusion of material of different texture that is smaller than the diameter of the sample.
Parting	Inclusion less than 1/8 inch thick extending through the sample.
Seam	Inclusion 1/8 inch to 3 inches thick extending through the sample.
Layer	Inclusion greater than 3 inches thick extending through the sample.
Laminated	Soil sample composed of alternating partings or seams of different soil types.
Interlayered	Soil sample composed of alternating layers of different soil types.
Intermixed	Soil sample composed of pockets of different soil types and layered or laminated structure is not evident.
Calcareous	Having appreciable quantities of calcium material.

CLASSIFICATION OF ORGANIC AND FINE GRAINED SOILS
ASTM Designation D 2487

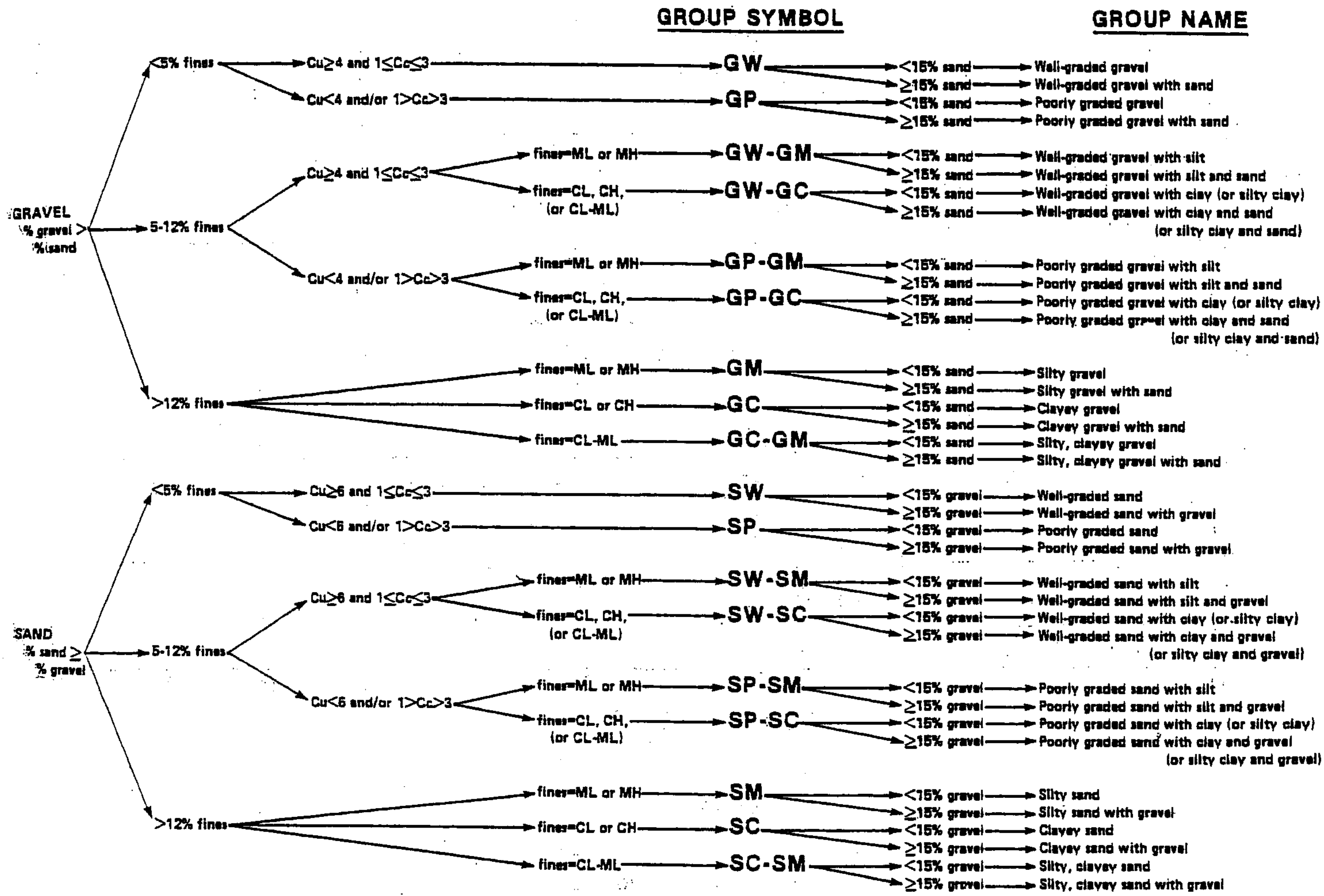


Flow Chart for Classifying Fine-Grained Soil (50 % or More Passes No. 200 Sieve)



Flow Chart for Classifying Organic Fine-Grained Soil (50 % or More Passes No. 200 Sieve)

CLASSIFICATION OF COARSE GRAINED SOILS
ASTM Designation D 2487



Flow Chart for Classifying Coarse-Grained Soils (More Than 50 % Retained on No. 200 Sieve)

HCFCD HCFT101.GPJ ... CD.GDT 11/24/99

LOG OF BORING NO.

PAGE OF

PROJECT:

PROJECT NO.: BORING TYPE:

DATE

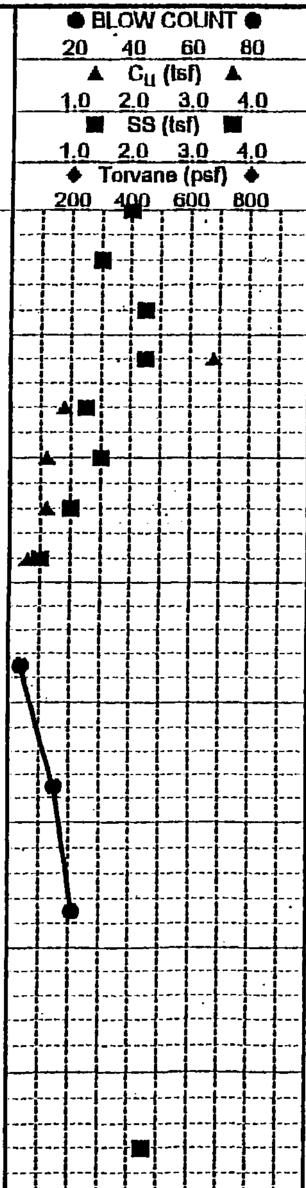
SURFACE ELEVATION + MSL

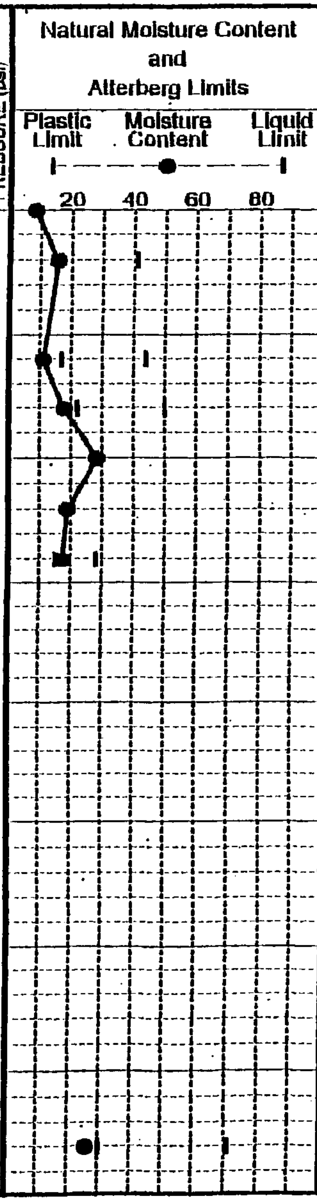
LOCATION

Northing: Easting:

See Figure

DEPTH (ft.)	SAMPLES	USC	WATER LEVEL	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	FIELD STRENGTH DATA	DRY DENSITY (pcf)	SHEAR STRENGTH (tsf)	FAILURE STRAIN (%)	CONFINING PRESSURE (psi)	MOISTURE CONTENT (%)	LIQUID LIMIT LL	PLASTIC LIMIT PL	PLASTICITY INDEX PI	PASSING #200 SIEVE (%)	ESTIMATED ANGLE OF INTERNAL FRICTION (°), OTHER TESTS & REMARKS
0				**SILT** (ML), FILL, medium dense, slight plasticity, gray and light gray, moist w/ ferrous nodules and roots	P = 4.0					8.3					
		CL		2'	P = 3.0					15.7	41	16	25	77.9	
5				**LEAN CLAY WITH SAND** (CL), very stiff to hard, high plasticity, gray, light gray, and brown, moist w/ ferrous nodules and sand fissures	P = 4.5										
					P = 4.5	127.4	3.5	4.6	0	11.1	44	17	27		
		CH	▼	- light gray and light tan w/ sand fissures and sand pockets at 5'	P = 2.5	108.3	1.0	5.2	0	18.0	50	22	28	89.1	
10			∇		P = 3.0	99	0.6	5.9	0	28.3					
		SC		8'	P = 2.0	110.8	0.6	6.4	0	18.9					
15				**FAT CLAY** (CH), stiff to very stiff, high plasticity, light gray, light tan, and reddish brown, moist w/ sand fissures, sand pockets, slickensides, calcareous nodules	P = 1.0	110.7	0.3	5.9	0	17.3	28	15	13	38.1	
		SM		12'											
		CH		**CLAYEY SAND** (SC), loose to medium dense, medium plasticity, light gray, light tan, and reddish brown, moist	N = 4										
20		SM		- sample wet w/ silt seams and silt pockets at 14'											
25				16'	N = 15										
				SILTY SAND (SM), loose non plastic, light gray and reddish brown, wet	N = 21										
30		CH		18'											
				FAT CLAY (CH), soft, high plasticity, light gray and reddish brown, moist w/ calcareous nodules and slickensides											
35				21'											
				SILTY SAND (SM), medium dense, non plastic, light gray and reddish brown, moist	P = 4.5	100.6				26.0 43.9	71	30	41	99.9	





Water Level Est.: ∇ Measured: ▼ Perched: ▼

Water Observations: Ground water level was measured at 11.2' drilling. 24 hours after drilling was completed, water level was measured at 9' and the boring was open to 10'.

Sample Key: SPT Shelby Tube Disturbed No Recovery

Key to Abbreviations:
N - SPT Data (Blows/Ft)
P - Pocket Penetrometer (tsf)
T - Torvane (psf)
C_U - Undrained Cohesion (tsf)
SS - Shear Strength (P/2, tsf)

Notes:

HCFCD HCFT101.GPJ ...CD.GDT 11/24/09

LOG OF BORING NO.

PAGE OF

DATE

SURFACE ELEVATION + MSL

PROJECT:

PROJECT NO.: BORING TYPE:

DEPTH (ft.)	SAMPLES	USC	WATER LEVEL	LOCATION Northing: Easting: See Figure MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	FIELD STRENGTH DATA	● BLOW COUNT ● 20 40 60 80 ▲ C_u (tsf) ▲ 1.0 2.0 3.0 4.0 ■ SS (tsf) ■ 1.0 2.0 3.0 4.0 ◆ Torvane (psf) ◆ 200 400 600 800	DRY DENSITY (pcf)	SHEAR STRENGTH (tsf)	FAILURE STRAIN (%)	CONFINING PRESSURE (psi)	Natural Moisture Content and Atterberg Limits Plastic Limit, Moisture Content, Liquid Limit 20 40 60 80	MOISTURE CONTENT (%)	ATTERBERG LIMITS(%) LIQUID LIMIT LL	PLASTIC LIMIT PL	PLASTICITY INDEX PI	PASSING #200 SIEVE (%)	ESTIMATED ANGLE OF INTERNAL FRICTION (°), OTHER TESTS & REMARKS
40				29' **FAT CLAY** (CH), very stiff to hard, very high plasticity, light gray and reddish brown, moist - w/ siltstone fragments and sandstone fragments at 31' - w/ calcareous nodules at 36' 40' Boring terminated at 40'													

Water Level Est.: ▽ Measured: ▼ Perched: ▼

Water Observations: Ground water level was measured at 11.2' drilling. 24 hours after drilling was completed, water level was measured at 9' and the boring was open to 10'.

Sample Key: ☒ SPT ◫ Shelby Tube ☐ Disturbed ☐ No Recovery

Key to Abbreviations:
N - SPT Data (Blows/Ft)
P - Pocket Penetrometer (tsf)
T - Torvane (psf)
C_u - Undrained Cohesion (tsf)
SS - Shear Strength (P/2, tsf)

Notes:

APPENDIX E – TERMINOLOGY

E.1 General Terminology

Introduction	Terminology and definitions used in this manual and flood control community are included in this appendix.
Policy	A written strategy intended to obtain a goal or result in a prudent, practical, and expedient manner. Policies are adopted by Harris County Commissioners Court.
Criteria	An established standard, principle, or measure used to accomplish the goal(s) or result of the policy.
Flood Damage Reduction or Flood Reduction	Due to practical limitations, structural and nonstructural measures can only reduce flood damages by lowering flood levels or removing houses and businesses from flood prone areas. Floods can neither be prevented nor controlled.
Owner	The individual or entity who is responsible for the design and construction of the project submitted to the HCFCD for review, approval, and acceptance
Area-Wide Drainage	A drainage area covering multiple property owners.
Flooding Threshold	The elevation at which floodwaters on a channel or detention basin enter a home or business.
Existing	Current conditions in a watershed, channel, or detention basin.
Interim	Conditions in a watershed, channel, or detention basin between existing and ultimate. Typically, a design condition with the proposed development or project in place.

Continued on next page

E.1 General Terminology, Continued

Ultimate	100% development conditions in a watershed.
New Development	Any increase in impervious cover or change in land condition that affects the amount or rate of runoff from a property. New development acreage as used to calculate detention volume or impact fees is determined using the entire property, not just the area of impervious cover or drainage improvement, unless a substantial portion is left undisturbed.
Berm	The area between the top of bank and right-of-way line. Also referred to as the maintenance berm.

E.2 Channel Terminology

Main Channel	A principle stream, creek, or bayou. Examples are Cypress Creek (K100-00-00), Brays Bayou (D100-00-00), and Hunting Bayou (H100-00-00).
Primary Tributary	A stream, creek, or bayou that flows into a main channel. Examples are Faulkey Gully (K142-00-00), Halls Bayou (P118-00-00), and Berry Bayou (C106-00-00).
Secondary Tributary	A stream, creek, or bayou that flows into a primary tributary. Examples: K142-07-00, P118-09-00, C106-03-08
Channel Modification or Conveyance Improvement	Activities in a channel such as widening, deepening, enlarging, straightening, or smoothing that increases channel conveyance. The term channel improvement is not recommended because improvement depends on one's perspective.
Channel Rehabilitation	Re-establishing the design cross-section or conveyance in a defined reach.
Maintenance Project	Repair of a specific problem or site.
Bypass	A partial flow realignment that leaves and enters on the same channel.
Diversion	Interception of a partial or full flow that takes the water to a different channel across a watershed or subarea divide.
Interconnect	A channel that connects two different channels and allows flow in either direction.

E.3 Detention Terminology

Detention	The temporary storage of storm water.
Retention	The storage of storm water for an indefinite period of time. A retention basin does not have an outlet structure.
Detention Basin	A facility that temporarily detains stormwater with an outlet that restricts the outflow to a pre-project development rate.
Regional Detention Basin	A stormwater detention basin that is part of a HCFCD regional plan or flood damage reduction project, is located on a main channel or primary tributary, is within a HCFCD right-of-way, and is managed by HCFCD.
Site-Specific or Onsite Detention Basin	A detention basin built specifically for a new land development and receives runoff only from the new land development. It can be a private or public detention basin.
Off-Stream Detention Basin	A detention basin that receives runoff primarily from the development project it serves and the tailwater is determined primarily by the outflow from the detention basin.
On-Stream Detention Basin	A detention basin whose tailwater is determined by the outflow from the detention basin <u>and</u> areas outside the development project. An on-stream detention basin is usually adjacent to a channel and can be inundated by the overflow from the open channel.
In-Line Detention Storage	Detention storage provided within a channel right-of-way by either over sizing the channel and/or by elevating the water surface by the use of a control structure in the channel or increasing the roughness in a channel. See Section 6.1.3 – In-Line Detention Storage.
Maximum Allowable Outflow	The existing condition runoff or flow from the site to be developed used to design the detention basin volume and outflow structure.

Continued on next page

E.3 Detention Terminology, Continued

Tailwater The water surface elevation in the outfall channel at the outflow structure which varies with time. The tailwater affects both the outflow structure design and the stage-outflow relationship of the detention basin.

E.4 Project Review Terminology

Drainage Plan	Plan for an existing or proposed development or roadway showing the topography, stormwater flow patterns, internal drainage system, outfall channels, detention facilities, offsite impacts, and other applicable stormwater management components.
Construction Drawing	Drawings prepared by a licensed professional civil engineer used to construct a proposed development or roadway, drainage facilities, and features in a HCFCD maintained facility.
Prints	Paper copies made from original construction drawings.
Mark-ups	Construction drawings or reports that have comments from a HCFCD review written on them. Note: Mark-ups must be returned with the next submittal. The HCFCD does not keep copies of mark-ups.
Record Drawing	A construction drawing that indicates how the project was actually constructed, including changes made during construction. The seal and signature of a Texas Licensed Professional Engineer is required. Note: Field surveys, laboratory tests, frequency of inspection, and other related activities are at the discretion of the Engineer sealing the record drawings.
Owner's Engineer	The civil engineer representing the owner of the project.

E.5 Technical Terminology

1% Chance Exceedance Probability

An event that has a 1% chance of being equaled or exceeded in any one year at a given location. This can refer to both rainfall and flood events. It is shortened to 1% exceedance in this manual.

Below is a table showing the comparison of the more commonly used exceedance probabilities and frequencies.

FREQUENCY	EXCEEDANCE PROBABILITY
500-year	0.2% chance
100-year	1% chance
50-year	2% chance
25-year	4% chance
10-year	10% chance
5-year	20% chance
3-year	33% chance
2-year	50% chance

Base Flood Elevation

A FEMA term that means the water surface elevation at a location produced by the 1% exceedance probability flood event.

Normal Water Surface

The water surface in a channel the majority of the time produced by normal flow when there is no direct rainfall runoff or drought conditions.

The normal water surface is usually at or near the vegetation line. Secondary tributaries usually have a normal water surface at or near the channel bottom. Main channels and primary tributaries usually have normal water surfaces 1'-3' above the channel flowline, excluding areas of erosion or deposition.

Adverse Impact

An increase in water surface elevation in a channel or detention basin that results in increased water surface elevations on a property, on a road, or in a building.

E.6 Right-of-Way Terminology

Right-of-Way	An interest in real property, either in fee or easement.
Fee or Fee Simple	Full ownership of real property by an individual or entity.
Easement	A limited interest in real property for a specific purpose, usually designated in the granting instrument or plat. Another entity or individual has fee title to the property.
HCFCD Right-of-Way	Implies HCFCD has property rights to manage a HCFCD facility. It includes: 1. Property owned in fee by HCFCD. 2. HCFCD drainage or flooding easement conveyed to and accepted by HCFCD through Commissioners Court. 3. A public drainage easement accepted by HCFCD through Commissioners Court into the HCFCD Stormwater Management System. 4. A channel's bed and banks as defined in the HCFCD's enabling legislation.
Ultimate Right-of-Way	The maximum right-of-way necessary to construct and maintain a channel or detention facility, assuming full upstream development, under stormwater management policies in effect for that watershed.
Dedication	The act of a property owner who sets aside a portion of his property for the use of the public for a specific purpose. A dedication may be accomplished by plat or separate instrument and always creates an easement. Dedications create public drainage easements that HCFCD can use to maintain open channel and detention facilities.
Conveyance	Transfer of a real property interest from one party to another in fee simple or easement. The conveyance can be a sale or a donation. A written instrument must be used and it must be reviewed and accepted by HCFCD. Conveyances can create HCFCD fee properties or HCFCD easements.

APPENDIX F – MAIN STEM LIST

Definition and Criteria

Main Stem - the primary river, stream, bayou, creek, or channel within the watershed or sub-watershed as listed below. The selection criteria is

- Drainage area greater than 20 square miles,
- Federal project channels, or
- Management plan for the watershed.

List

The list of main stem channels is in the table below.

Unit Number	Watershed or Subwatershed Name
A100-00-00	Clear Creek U/S of Armand Bayou
B100-00-00	Armand Bayou
B104-00-00	Horsepen Bayou
C100-00-00	Sims Bayou
D100-00-00	Brays Bayou
E100-00-00	White Oak Bayou
E101-00-00	Little White Oak Bayou
G103-00-00	San Jacinto River
H100-00-00	Hunting Bayou
I100-00-00	Vince Bayou
I101-00-00	Little Vince Bayou
J100-00-00	Spring Creek
K100-00-00	Cypress Creek
K166-00-00	Mound Creek
L100-00-00	Little Cypress Creek
M100-00-00	Willow Creek
N100-00-00	Carpenters Bayou
O100-00-00	Goose Creek
P100-00-00	Greens Bayou
P118-00-00	Halls Bayou
P130-00-00	Garners Bayou
Q100-00-00	Cedar Bayou
R100-00-00	Jackson Bayou
S100-00-00	Luce Bayou
T101-00-00	Mason Creek
U100-00-00	Langham Creek
U101-00-00	South Mayde Creek
U102-00-00	Bear Creek
U106-00-00	Horsepen Creek
W100-00-00	Buffalo Bayou

APPENDIX G - REFERENCES

Introduction

This appendix provides the source of documents referenced in this manual.

Harris County Regulations

"Regulations of Harris County, Texas for Storm Water Quality Management": http://www.eng.hctx.net/permits/pdf/swq/SWQ_total2001.pdf

"Harris County Public Infrastructure Department Engineering Division-Permit Office Storm Water Quality Guidance Document for New Development/Redevlopment Projects", December 1, 2003: http://www.eng.hctx.net/permits/pdf/swq/GM_resdev.pdf

"Regulations of Harris County, Texas for the Approval and Acceptance of Infrastructure": http://www.eng.hctx.net/permits/

"Regulations of Harris County, Texas for Flood Plain Management.": http://www.eng.hctx.net/permits/

Storm Water Quality

"Storm Water Quality Management Guidance Manual Prepared by City of Houston, Harris County, & HCFCD", 2001 edition: http://www.cleanwaterclearchoice.org/downloads.html

High Tide Information

One possible sources is

http://www.texasprimetimes.com/Texas_Tidal_Predictions/texas_tidal_predictions.html